



THINK PROJECT NUMBER: 24-077

# PROJECT MANUAL & SPECIFICATIONS

Specification Divisions 0,3-11

## LAKE HAVASU CITY WATER QUALITY LABORATORY:

360 Cypress Drive  
Lake Havasu City, AZ. 86403

Construction Documents Submittal



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

### PROJECT ADMINISTRATION SUBGROUP TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### **DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

000101	PROJECT TITLE PAGE
	Lake Havasu City: New Laboratory Building – B25-PW-107032-500638
	Invitation to Bid
	Contract Documents
	Technical Specifications
003132-A	GEOTECHNICAL DATA
003132-B	GEOTECHNICAL REPORT
	Agreement For Use of Digital Data - Form
	AIA Document E203 – 2013      Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit

#### **DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

011000	SUMMARY
012100	ALLOWANCES
012200	UNIT PRICES
012500	SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES
012600	CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES
012900	PAYMENT PROCEDURES
013100	PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION
013200	CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION
013300	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
014000	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS
014200	REFERENCES
015000	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS
016000	PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS
017300	EXECUTION
017700	CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES
017823	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA
017839	PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

**FACILITY CONSTRUCTION SUBGROUP TABLE OF CONTENTS****DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE**

033000 CAST IN PLACE CONCRETE

**DIVISION 04 – MASONRY**

042200 CONCRETE MASONRY UNIT (CMU)

**DIVISION 05 – METALS**

051200 STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

054000 COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

055000 METAL FABRICATIONS

055400 METAL FLOOR PLATES

**DIVISION 06 – WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES**

061000 ROUGH CARPENTRY

061325 TIMBER CONSTRUCTION

061600 SHEATHING

062023 INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

064116 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

**DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

071000 FLUID-APPLIED DAMPPROOFING

072100 THERMAL INSULATION

072500 WEATHER BARRIERS

074113 FORMED METAL ROOFING PANELS

074213 FORMED METAL WALL PANELS AND SOFFIT

075423 THERMOPLASTIC-POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

076200 SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

077100 ROOF SPECIALTIES

077200 ROOF ACCESSORIES

078413 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

079200 JOINT SEALANTS

079219 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

**DIVISION 08 – OPENINGS**

081113 HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

081416 FLUSH WOOD DOORS

083113 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

084113 ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

084532 FIBERGLASS-SANDWICH-PANEL ASSEMBLIES

087100 DOOR HARDWARE

088000 GLAZING

**DIVISION 09 – FINISHES**

090561	MOISTURE VAPOR EMISSION CONTROL
092216	NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING
092900	GYPSUM BOARD
093013	CERAMIC TILING
095123	ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS
096513	RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES
096813	TILE CARPETING
099113	EXTERIOR PAINTING
099123	INTERIOR PAINTING
099600	HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS
099656	EPOXY FLOOR COATINGS

**DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES**

101423	ROOM-IDENTIFICATION PANEL SIGNAGE
102800	TOILET, BATH, AND JANITORIAL ACCESSORIES
104413	FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS
104416	FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

**DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT**

113013	RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES
--------	------------------------

**DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS**

123653	LABORATORY WORK SURFACES (SOLID PHENOLIC COMPACT)
--------	---

**END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS**



DOCUMENT 00 0101 - PROJECT TITLE PAGE

Lake Havasu City Water Quality Laboratory – Public Works

Lake Havasu City, Arizona

Architect Project No. 24-077



Architect:

Jered Plouzek – Project Architect-Partner in Charge  
Jim Poloncic – Senior Project Manager  
Think Architecture, Inc  
7927 High Point Parkway  
Suite 300  
Sandy, Utah 84094

CONTACT:

Phone: (801) 269-0055, extension 232 (Jim Poloncic)  
E-mail address: jpoloncic@thinkaec.com

Web Site: [www.thinkaec.com](http://www.thinkaec.com)

Issued: April 21<sup>st</sup>, 2023 Copyright © 2019 THINK Architecture, Inc., All rights reserved.

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 0101**



**LAKE HAVASU CITY**

**INVITATION TO BID**

**CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

**AND**

**TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**

**New Laboratory Building**  
**B25-PW-107032-500638**

**LAKE HAVASU CITY**  
**CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**  
**VOLUME 1**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**DIVISION I – BID AND CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

SECTION 00020	-	NOTICE INVITING BIDS
SECTION 00040	-	INTENT TO BID NOTIFICATION
SECTION 00100	-	INFORMATION FOR BIDDERS
SECTION 00300	-	BID PROPOSAL
SECTION 00310	-	BID SCHEDULE
SECTION 00400	-	ARIZONA STATUTORY BID BOND
SECTION 00420	-	BIDDER’S STATEMENT OF QUALIFICATIONS
SECTION 00430	-	AFFIDAVIT OF CONTRACTOR CERTIFYING NO COLLUSION IN BIDDING
SECTION 00450	-	HAZARD COMMUNICATION PROGRAM
SECTION 00460	-	EMPLOYMENT ELIGIBILITY VERIFICATION FORM
SECTION 00500	-	AGREEMENT
SECTION 00500A	-	INDEMNIFICATION & INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS
SECTION 00500B	-	CONTRACTOR CLAIM HANDLING PROCEDURE
SECTION 00510	-	ARIZONA STATUTORY PERFORMANCE BOND
SECTION 00520	-	ARIZONA STATUTORY PAYMENT BOND
SECTION 00670	-	NOTICE OF AWARD
SECTION 00685	-	CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION
SECTION 00690	-	CERTIFICATION OF COMPLETION

**DIVISION II – GENERAL CONDITIONS**

SECTION 00700	-	GENERAL CONDITIONS
---------------	---	--------------------

**DIVISION III – SPECIAL PROVISIONS**

SECTION 00800 - SPECIAL PROVISIONS

**DIVISION IV – TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**

**The following specifications are contained within this Invitation For Bids:**

LHC 1210 - MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

**The remaining applicable specifications can be accessed at:**

**<https://www.lhcaz.gov/public-works/engineering>**

***Please scroll down to the bottom of the webpage and notice there are clickable page numbers to access all specification documents.***

SECTION 00020  
**NOTICE INVITING BIDS**  
Lake Havasu City

**PROJECT NO.: B25-PW-107032-500638**

**PROJECT NAME:**                **New Laboratory Building**

**PRE-BID MEETING:**        A **NON-MANDATORY Pre-Bid Meeting** will be held at the Public Works Administration Building, 900 London Bride Road Avenue, Lake Havasu City, AZ at 10:00 am, Arizona Time, on May 22, 2025.

**BID DUE DATE:**                **June 4, 2025**

**BID DUE TIME:**                **3:00 p.m., ARIZONA TIME**

**PROJECT DESCRIPTION:**

This project consists of constructing a new laboratory building to be located at 360 Cypress Drive two locations and accompanying sitework per plans and specifications.

**QUESTIONS:** All questions that arise relating to this solicitation shall be directed in writing to [purchasing@lhcaz.gov](mailto:purchasing@lhcaz.gov) with a copy to [cummingsb@lhcaz.gov](mailto:cummingsb@lhcaz.gov). To be considered, written inquiries shall be received at the above-referenced email address by May 26, 2025, 3:00 p.m. Arizona Time. Inquiries received will then be answered in an Addendum.

Sealed bids for the project specified will be received by the **City Clerk's Office, 2330 N. McCulloch Boulevard, Lake Havasu City, Arizona, 86403** until the time and date stated. **Bids received by the correct time and date will be opened and read aloud immediately thereafter in Room 109 of Lake Havasu City Hall.** Public openings may be attended virtually by accessing the following video conferencing system:

To join the meeting on a computer or mobile phone:

<https://tinyurl.com/3f94b2ww>

Meeting ID: 270 366 031 956

Passcode: jcVbxK

Join with a video conferencing device

[160264325@teams.bjn.vc](https://160264325@teams.bjn.vc)

Video Conference ID: 112 219 692 0

**Bids must be clearly addressed to the City Clerk's Office, 2330 McCulloch Blvd. N, Lake Havasu City, Arizona, 86403,** and received no later than the exact time and date indicated above. Late bids will not be considered under any circumstances.

Bids must be submitted in a sealed envelope with the Project Number and the bidder's name and address clearly indicated on the envelope. All bids must be completed in ink or typewritten on a form to be obtained from the specifications and a complete Invitation for Bid returned along with the offer no later than the time and date cited above.

Bidders interested in taking advantage of the streamlined e-Bid and e-Bond process shall submit their bids electronically via the City's DemandStar Network at <https://www.demandstar.com/app/buyers/bids/497160>. Paper bids and paper bid bonds will continue to be accepted. Bidders submitting e-Bids will be required to scan and enclose their paper bid bond/cashier's check with their electronic bid submission. The apparent low bidder shall submit their original bid bond/cashier's check within three (3) business days following the Bid opening.

Bid documents and specifications are available on Lake Havasu City's website at [www.lhcaz.gov](http://www.lhcaz.gov) or on DemandStar at [www.demandstar.com](http://www.demandstar.com). For documents obtained outside of DemandStar please contact [purchasing@lhcaz.gov](mailto:purchasing@lhcaz.gov) to be added to the planholders' list.

For technical information, contact Phil Porter, Project Manager, at [porterp@lhcaz.gov](mailto:porterp@lhcaz.gov) with a copy to [purchasing@lhcaz.gov](mailto:purchasing@lhcaz.gov).

**BONDS:**

Bid Bond:	<u>10%</u>
Labor and Material Bond:	<u>100%</u>
Faithful Performance Bond:	<u>100%</u>

**Project Completion Date:** **150 calendar days** after Notice to Proceed.

Lake Havasu City reserves the right to accept or reject any or all bids or any part thereof and waive informalities deemed in the best interest of the City.

*Pursuant to the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Lake Havasu City endeavors to ensure the accessibility of all of its programs, facilities and services to all persons with disabilities. If you need an accommodation for this meeting, please contact the City Clerk's office at (928) 453-4142 at least 24 hours prior to the meeting so that an accommodation may be arranged.*

Publication Dates: TODAY'S NEWS HEARLD – May 7, 2025, and May 14, 2025  
ARIZONA BUSINESS GAZETTE – May 8, 2025, and May 15, 2025

**\*\* END OF SECTION \*\***

SECTION 00040  
**INTENT TO BID NOTIFICATION**

**ITB NO.: B25-PW-107032-500638**

**ITB TITLE: New Laboratory Building**

**CLOSING DATE & TIME: June 4, 2025 at 3:00 PM, Arizona Time**

**LETTER OF INTENT TO BID SUBMITTAL**

This is notification that it is our present intent to submit a bid in response to the above referenced ITB. Please add our company to your planholders list.

The individual to whom all information regarding this ITB should be transmitted is:

Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City, State, & Zip: \_\_\_\_\_

Phone Number: Fax Number: \_\_\_\_\_

E-Mail Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Submit this Letter of Intent by the deadline for requests for clarification and protests, which must be physically received by **May 20, 2025 at 3:00 p.m., Arizona Time.**

Clarification/Protest/Question/Letter of Intent to Bid  
ITB No.: B25-PW-107012-500644Lake Havasu City  
Administrative Services Department, Procurement  
Email to: [purchasing@lhcaz.gov](mailto:purchasing@lhcaz.gov)

\*\* END OF SECTION \*\*

SECTION 00100  
**INFORMATION FOR BIDDERS**

**1. RECEIPT AND OPENING OF BIDS**

The City of Lake Havasu City, Arizona, (hereinafter called the "Owner") invites Bids on the form attached hereto. All blanks must be appropriately filled in. The Bidder shall also complete and submit a form listing proposed subcontractors as enclosed herein. Any subcontractors proposed to be used on the project but not listed on this form shall not be considered when evaluating the Contractor's qualifications and ability to perform the work. Bids **New Laboratory Building, Project No. B25-PW-107032-500638** will be received by the **City Clerk's office, 2330 N. McCulloch Boulevard, Lake Havasu City, Arizona 86403 no later than 3:00 P.M., Arizona Time, June 4, 2025**, where said Bids will be publicly opened and virtually read aloud immediately thereafter in the Room 109 of Lake Havasu City Hall.

The Owner may consider informal any Bid not prepared and submitted in accordance with the provisions hereof and may waive any informalities or reject any and all Bids. Any Bid may be withdrawn prior to the above scheduled time for the opening of Bids or authorized postponement thereof. Any Bid received after the time and date specified shall not be considered. No Bidder may withdraw a Bid within ninety (90) days after the actual date of the opening thereof.

Bidders interested in taking advantage of the streamlined e-Bid and e-Bond process shall submit their bids electronically via the City's DemandStar Network at <https://www.demandstar.com/app/buyers/bids//details>. Paper bids and paper bid bonds will continue to be accepted.

Bidders submitting e-Bids will be required to scan and enclose their paper bid bond/cashier's check with their electronic bid submission. The apparent low bidder shall submit their original bid bond/cashier's check within three (3) business days following the Bid opening.

**2. PREPARATION OF BID**

Each Bid must be submitted on the prescribed Form. Each Document must be submitted with an original signature of the Bidder, as well as all witnesses indicated therein. All blank spaces for Bid prices must be filled in, in ink or typewritten, in both words and figures.

Each Bid must be submitted in a sealed envelope bearing on the outside the name of the Bidder, the Bidder's address, and the name and number of the project for which the Bid is submitted. If forwarded by mail, the sealed envelope containing the Bid must be enclosed in another envelope addressed as specified in the Bid form.

**3. FACSIMILE BIDS OR MODIFICATIONS**

No facsimile ("FAX") Bids or bid modifications will be accepted. Any modifications to the Bid shall be made by an authorized representative of the bidding company in person.



#### **4. QUALIFICATIONS OF BIDDER**

The Owner may make such investigations as he deems necessary to determine the qualifications of and the ability of the Bidder to perform the Work, and the Bidder shall furnish the Owner such information and data for this purpose as the Owner may request. The Owner may request that the Bidder provide a list of key people for the project with their related work experience.

The Owner reserves the right to reject any Bid if the evidence submitted by or investigation of such Bidder fails to satisfy the Owner that such Bidder is properly qualified to carry out the obligations of the Contract and to complete the work contemplated therein in a timely manner. Conditional Bids will not be accepted.

All Bidders and listed subcontractors must be valid Arizona Licensed Contractors at the time of Bidding, approved by the Arizona State Registrar of Contractors to do the type and amount of work specified in these documents. In accordance with the Arizona State Registrar of Contractors, the Bidder must possess a minimum of a Class A Arizona Contractor's License to perform the type and amount of work specified in these documents. **Failure of any bidder to possess all contractors' licenses as listed in the bid packet, at the time of bidding, shall result in the bid being considered non-responsive and not in substantial compliance, and any such bid shall not be considered.** Refer to Section 00420, page 3, item 13.

#### **5. ARITHMETIC DISCREPANCIES IN THE BID**

- A. For the purpose of the evaluation of Bids, the following will be utilized in resolving arithmetic discrepancies found on the face of the Bid Schedule as submitted by Bidders:
1. Obviously misplaced decimal points will be corrected;
  2. In case of discrepancy between unit price and extended price, the unit price will govern;
  3. Apparent errors in extension of unit prices will be corrected;
  4. Apparent errors in addition of lump sums and extended prices will be corrected; and
  5. In case of discrepancy between words and figures in unit prices, the amount shown in words shall govern.
- B. For the purpose of Bid evaluation, the Owner will evaluate the bids on the basis of the unit prices, extensions, and totals arrived at by resolution of arithmetic discrepancies as provided above.

#### **6. INCOMPLETE BIDS**

Failure to submit a Bid on all items in the Schedule will result in an incomplete Bid and the Bid may be rejected. **UNIT OR LUMP SUM PRICES MUST BE SHOWN FOR EACH BID ITEM WITHIN THE SCHEDULE.**

**NOTE: FAILURE TO INDICATE UNIT OR LUMP SUM PRICES IN THE APPROPRIATE COLUMN, WITH THE EXTENSION OF THE PRICES IN THE FAR RIGHT COLUMN, WILL CAUSE THE BID TO BE "NON-RESPONSIVE".**

**All forms indicated in the Bid Proposal, Section 00300, must be completely filled out, executed, and submitted with the Bid. Failure to do so will render the bid "non-responsive" and the bid will not be accepted.**

**7. BID SECURITY**

Each Bid must be accompanied by certified check, cashier's check, or a Bid Bond prepared on the form attached hereto or on a similar form acceptable to the Owner, duly executed by the Bidder as principal and having as surety thereon a surety company approved by the Owner, in the amount of ten percent (10%) of the Bid. Bid Bonds shall be valid for at least ninety (90) days after the date of the receipt of Bids. Such cash, check or Bid Bond will be returned to all except the three (3) lowest Bidders within fifteen (15) business days after the opening of Bids. The remaining checks, or Bid Bonds will be returned promptly after the Owner and the accepted Bidder have executed the Contract, or if no award has been made within ninety (90) days after the date of the opening of Bids, upon demand of the Bidder at any time thereafter, so long as he has not been notified of the acceptance of his Bid.

**8. LIQUIDATED DAMAGES FOR FAILURE TO ENTER INTO CONTRACT**

The successful Bidder, upon his failure or refusal to execute and deliver the Contract, Bonds, and certificates required within ten (10) calendar days from the date of the Notice of Award, shall forfeit to the Owner, as liquidated damages for such failure or refusal, the difference between his bid and the amount of the contract actually entered into with another party should he not enter into a contract at the bid price and provide the required payment and performance bonds and certificates of insurance. Liquidated damages for failure to enter into the contract shall not exceed the amount of the Bid Bond.

**9. SECURITY FOR FAITHFUL PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT**

Simultaneously with his delivery of the executed Contract, the Bidder shall furnish **on the forms provided herein**, in 100% of the amount of this Contract, 1) a surety bond as security for faithful performance of this Contract, and 2) a surety bond as security for the payment of all persons performing labor on the project under this Contract and persons furnishing materials in connection with this Contract, and 3) a listing of all subcontractors who will be performing or providing more than one-half percent (0.50%) of the contract work, as specified in the General Conditions included herein. The surety on such bond or bonds shall be a duly authorized surety company satisfactory to the Owner, listed on the Treasury Department's most current list (Circular 570 as amended), and authorized to transact business in the State of Arizona.

**10. POWER OF ATTORNEY**

Attorneys-in-fact who sign Bid Bonds or Contract bonds must file with each bond a certified

and effectively dated copy of their power-of-attorney.

## **11. LAWS AND REGULATIONS**

The Bidder's attention is directed to the fact that all applicable Federal Laws, State Laws, municipal ordinances, and the rules and regulations of all authorities having jurisdiction over construction of the project shall apply to the Contract throughout, and they will be deemed to be included in the Contract the same as though herein written out in full.

## **12. METHOD OF AWARD**

A. The City will award the Contract on the basis of the Bid or Bids most advantageous to the City. In determining whether a Bid is most advantageous, in addition to price, the City may consider the following:

1. The ability, capacity, and skill of the Bidder to perform the Contract or provide the service indicated;
2. Whether the Bidder can perform the Contract or provide the service promptly, and within the time specified without delay or interference;
3. The character, integrity, reputation, judgment, experience, and efficiency of the Bidder;
4. The quality of performance on previous contracts;
5. The previous compliance with laws and ordinances by the Bidder;
6. The financial responsibility of the Bidder to perform under the Contract or provide the service;
7. The limitations of any license the Bidder may be required to possess;
8. The quality, availability, and adaptability of the product or service;
9. The ability of the Bidder to provide future maintenance and/or service;
10. The number and scope of any conditions attached to the Bid; and;
11. The life cycle, maintenance, and performance of the equipment or product being offered.

## **13. OBLIGATION OF THE BIDDER**

At the time of the opening of Bids, each Bidder will be presumed to have inspected the site and to have read and to be thoroughly familiar with the Plans and Contract documents (including all Addenda, if applicable). The failure or omission of the Bidder to examine any form, instrument or document, or site changes due to natural causes, shall in no way relieve any Bidder from any obligation in respect to his Bid. Site changes due to natural causes prior to Bid opening shall not be cause for Bid alteration or withdrawal.

## **14. TIME OF COMPLETION AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES**

The Bidder must agree to commence work on or before a date to be specified in a written "Notice to Proceed" from the Owner, and to complete the work within **150 calendar days** of the date of the Notice to Proceed.

The Bidder further agrees to pay as liquidated damages, the sum indicated in the following Schedule of Liquidated Damages for each consecutive calendar day thereafter, plus any additional costs incurred by the Engineer as provided in Section 17 of the General Conditions, that the Contract remains incomplete. For the purposes of determining the Liquidated Damages for the project, the Original Contract Amount shall be that which is included in the Contract between the Owner and the Contractor for the project.

<b>SCHEDULE OF LIQUIDATED DAMAGES</b>		
Original Contract Amount		Daily Charges
From More Than	To and Including	Calendar Day or Fixed Rate
0	25,000	210
25,000	50,000	250
50,000	100,000	280
100,000	500,000	430
500,000	1,000,000	570
1,000,000	2,000,000	710
From More Than	To and Including	Calendar Day or Fixed Rate
2,000,000	5,000,000	1,070
5,000,000	10,000,000	1,420
10,000,000	---0---	1,780

## **15. CONDITIONS OF WORK**

Each Bidder must inform himself fully of the conditions relating to the construction of the project and the employment of labor thereon. Failure to do so will not relieve a successful Bidder of his obligation to furnish all material and labor necessary to carry out the provisions of his Contract. Insofar as possible, the Contractor, in carrying out his work, must employ such methods or means as will not cause any interruption of or interference with the work of any other Contractor.

## **16. ADDENDA AND INTERPRETATIONS**

All questions that arise relating to this solicitation shall be directed in writing to: [purchasing@lhcaz.gov](mailto:purchasing@lhcaz.gov) with a copy to [engineeringinfo@lhcaz.gov](mailto:engineeringinfo@lhcaz.gov).

Administrative Services Department, Procurement Division  
Lake Havasu City  
2330 McCulloch Blvd. North  
Lake Havasu City, AZ 86403

To be considered, written inquiries shall be received by the above-referenced contact by **May 26, 2025, 3:00 p.m. Arizona Time**. Inquiries received will then be answered in an Addendum. Any and all such interpretations and any supplemental instructions will be in the form of written Addenda to the Specifications which, if issued, will be available to all prospective Bidders, not later than five (5) calendar days prior to the date fixed for the opening of Bids. Failure of any Bidder to incorporate any such Addendum or interpretation shall not relieve such Bidder from any obligation under his/her Bid as submitted. All Addenda so issued shall become part of the Contract documents.

No informal contact initiated by offerors on this solicitation will be allowed with members of City staff from the date of distribution of this solicitation until after the closing date and time for the submissions of quotations. All questions or issues related to this solicitation shall be submitted in writing.

**17. CONFLICT OF INTEREST**

Pursuant to A.R.S. Section 38-511, this Contract is subject to cancellation by Buyer if any person significantly involved initiating, negotiating, securing, drafting or creating the Contract on behalf of Lake Havasu City is, at any time while the Contract is in effect, an employee of any other party to the Contract in any capacity or a consultant to any other party of the Contract with respect to the subject matter of the Contract.

**18. NO COLLUSION**

The bidder will be required to complete, notarize and submit as part of this bid package the "No Collusion Affidavit" form, as attached herein. Failure of the bidder to submit a properly executed affidavit may be grounds for rejection of the bid.

**19. EMPLOYMENT ELIGIBILITY VERIFICATION**

The bidder will be required to complete, notarize and submit as part of this bid package the "Employer Verification of Employment Eligibility" form, as attached herein. Failure of the bidder to submit a properly executed verification of eligibility form may be grounds for rejection of the bid.

**20. EXAMINATION OF THE PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS**

Each Bid shall be made in accordance with the Plans and Specifications which may be examined at the following locations:

- A. Lake Havasu City, 2330 N. McCulloch Boulevard, Lake Havasu City, AZ 86403, 928.855.2116
- B. Dodge Data & Analytics, 3315 Central Avenue, Hot Springs, AR, 71913,

871.375.2946, FAX 501.625.3544, [www.construction.com](http://www.construction.com),  
[dodge.bidding@construction.com](mailto:dodge.bidding@construction.com)

- C. Colorado River Building Industry Association, 2182 McCulloch Blvd, Suite 3, Lake Havasu City AZ 86403, 928.453.7755, FAX 928.453.3175, [www.crbia.org](http://www.crbia.org), [frontdesk@criba.org](mailto:frontdesk@criba.org)
- D. Northern AZ Home Builders, 1500 E. Cedar Avenue, Suite 86, Flagstaff AZ 86004, 928.779.3071, FAX 928.779.4211, [www.nazba.org](http://www.nazba.org), [info@nazba.org](mailto:info@nazba.org)
- E. Performance Graphics Blueprinting, 4140 Lynn Drive, Suite 107, Fort Mohave, AZ, 86426, 928.763.6860, FAX 928.763.6835, [prints@pgblueprinting.net](mailto:prints@pgblueprinting.net)
- F. Construction Market Data, 30 Technology Parkway South, Suite 500, Norcross, GA 30092-2912, 800.876.4045, FAX 800.303.8629, [www.cmdgroup.com](http://www.cmdgroup.com), [projects@cmdgroup.com](mailto:projects@cmdgroup.com)
- G. ISqFt, 3301 N 24<sup>th</sup> Street, Phoenix, AZ, 85016, 800.364.2059, FAX 800.792.7508, [www.isqft.com](http://www.isqft.com), [arizonaplanroom@isqft.com](mailto:arizonaplanroom@isqft.com)
- H. Integrated Digital Technologies, LLC, 4633 E Broadway Blvd., Tucson, AZ 85711, PO Box 13086, Tucson AZ, 85732, 520.319.0988, FAX, 520.319.1430, [www.contractorsplanroom.com](http://www.contractorsplanroom.com), [content@idtplans.com](mailto:content@idtplans.com)
- I. Yuma/Southwest Contractors Association, 350 W. 16<sup>th</sup> Street, Suite 207, Yuma, AZ 85364, Phone: 928-539-9035, Fax: 928-539-9036, [www.yswca.com](http://www.yswca.com), [plans@yswca.com](mailto:plans@yswca.com)
- J. Arizona Builders Exchange, 1700 N. McClintock Drive, Tempe, AZ, 85281, (480) 227-2620, [www.azbex.com](http://www.azbex.com), [rkettenhofen@azbex.com](mailto:rkettenhofen@azbex.com)
- K. Construction Reports.com, 4110 N Scottsdale Road, Suite 335, Scottsdale, AZ, 85251, 480.994.0020, FAX 480.994.0030, [www.constructionreports.com](http://www.constructionreports.com), [jess@constructionreports.com](mailto:jess@constructionreports.com)
- L. Construction Reporter, 1609 2<sup>nd</sup> Street NW, Albuquerque, NM, 87102, 505.243.9793, FAX 505.242.4758, [www.constructionreporter.com](http://www.constructionreporter.com), [jane@constructionreporter.com](mailto:jane@constructionreporter.com)
- M. PlanRoom Central at A&E Reprographics, 1030 Sandretto Drive, Suite F, Prescott, AZ, 86305, 928.442.9116, [www.a-erepro.com](http://www.a-erepro.com), [planroom1@a-erepro.com](mailto:planroom1@a-erepro.com)
- N. Shirley's Plan Service, 425 S. Plumer Ave, Tucson, AZ, 85719, 520.791.7436, FAX 520.882.9208, [www.shirleysplanservice.com](http://www.shirleysplanservice.com), [bids@shirleysplanservice.com](mailto:bids@shirleysplanservice.com)
- O. Construction Notebook Nevada, 3131 Meade Ave, Suite B, Las Vegas, NV, 89102-7885, 702.876.8660, FAX 702.876.5683, [www.constructionnotebook.com](http://www.constructionnotebook.com)

- P. The Blue Book Building & Construction Network, Jefferson Valley, NY 10535,  
800.431.2584, [www.thebluebook.com](http://www.thebluebook.com), [info@thebluebook.com](mailto:info@thebluebook.com),  
[tdizon@mail.thebluebook.com](mailto:tdizon@mail.thebluebook.com)
- Q. Integrated Marketing Systems (IMS), 945 Hornblend Street, Suite G, San Diego, CA  
92109, 888.467.3151, FAX 858.490.8811, [www.imsinfo.com](http://www.imsinfo.com) , [ims@imsinfo.com](mailto:ims@imsinfo.com)

**\*\* END OF SECTION \*\***

SECTION 00300  
**BID PROPOSAL**

Lake Havasu City, Arizona

The undersigned, as bidder, declares that we have received and examined the documents entitled "**New Laboratory Building, Project No. B25-PW-107032-500638**" and will contract with the Owner, on the form of Contract provided herewith, to do everything required for the fulfillment of the contract for the construction of the **New Laboratory Building, Project No. B25-PW-107032-500638** at the prices and on the terms and conditions herein contained.

We agree that the Contract Documents include Volumes I and II of the Contract Documents as well as the referenced documents.

**We agree that the following shall form a part of this proposal and are included herein as our submittal:**

**Enclosed**

<u><b>Section</b></u>	<u><b>Title</b></u>	<u><b>✓</b></u>
<b>00300</b>	<b>Bid Proposal</b>	_____
<b>00310</b>	<b>Bid Schedule</b>	_____
<b>00400</b>	<b>Arizona Statutory Bid Bond</b>	_____
<b>00420</b>	<b>Bidder's Statement of Qualifications</b>	_____
<b>00430</b>	<b>Affidavit of Contractor Certifying That There Was No Collusion In Bidding For Contract</b>	_____
<b>00450</b>	<b>Hazard Communication Program</b>	_____
<b>00460</b>	<b>Employment Eligibility Verification</b>	_____

**We acknowledge that addenda numbers \_\_\_\_\_ through \_\_\_\_\_ have been received and have been examined as part of the Contract Documents.**

We certify that our proposal is genuine, and not sham or collusive, nor made in the interest or behalf of any undisclosed person, organization, or corporation, and that we have not directly or indirectly induced or solicited any other bidder to put in a sham bid, or directly or indirectly induced or solicited any other potential bidder to refrain from bidding, and that we have not in any manner sought by collusion to secure an advantage over any other bidder.

The bidder agrees that this Bid shall be good and may not be withdrawn for a period of ninety (90) calendar days after the scheduled closing time for receiving Bids.

Upon receipt of written notice of the acceptance of this bid, Bidder shall execute the formal Contract attached within 10 days and deliver a Performance Bond, Payment Bond, and Certificates of Insurance as required by Paragraph 25 of the General Conditions and the Special Provisions.

We hereby declare that we have visited the site and have carefully examined the Contract Documents relating to the work covered by the above bid or bids.

Enclosed herewith is a certified or cashier's check or bid bond, payable to Lake Havasu City, Arizona,



in the amount of ten percent (10%) of the total bid. This check or bond is submitted as a guarantee that we will enter into a Contract, and furnish the required bonds in the event a contract is awarded us. The bid security attached, without endorsement, is to become the property of Lake Havasu City, Arizona, in the event the Contract and Bonds are not executed within the time set forth, as liquidated damages for delay and additional work caused thereby.

We understand that Lake Havasu City, Arizona reserves the right to reject any and/or all bids, or to waive any informalities in any bid, deemed by them to be for the best interests of Lake Havasu City, Arizona.

Dated in \_\_\_\_\_ this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.

Respectfully Submitted By:

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Firm: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Phone: \_\_\_\_\_ FAX: \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Seal - If bid by a Corporation:

Arizona Contractor's License No.: \_\_\_\_\_ Type: \_\_\_\_\_

Federal Tax ID No.: \_\_\_\_\_

\*\* END OF SECTION \*\*

**BID SCHEDULE**  
**LAKE HAVASU CITY**

New Laboratory Building  
B25-PW-107032-500638

Lake Havasu City Council  
Lake Havasu City  
2330 N. McCulloch Boulevard  
Lake Havasu City, AZ 86403

The City Council:

Pursuant to request for bids to be opened the 16<sup>th</sup> of April, 2025, at 3:00 P.M., Arizona Time, at Room 109 of Lake Havasu City Hall, for the above project, the Contractor proposes to complete work, including furnishing all labor and materials, per the Specifications and Plans at the Following prices.

This Schedule of Items and Prices shall be completed in ink or typed by the Bidding Contractor. In case of discrepancy between the word and figure amount description, the word description shall control extensions.

Prices must be entered for each item and the appropriate subtotal and total blank shall be filled out. Bid prices shall include sales tax and all other applicable taxes and fees.

Bidder agrees to perform all the necessary work to complete the **New Laboratory Building, Project No. B25-PW-107032-500638.**

## SECTION 310

**BID SCHEDULE – New Laboratory Building, Project No. B25-PW-107032-500638**

<b>ITEM NO.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>EST QTY</b>	<b>UNIT OF MEASURE</b>	<b>UNIT PRICE<sup>1</sup> (Word)</b>	<b>UNIT PRICE (Figure)</b>	<b>ITEM TOTAL<sup>2</sup> COSTS</b>
<b><u>BASE BID</u></b>						
1	Mobilization, Bonds & Insurance	1	L.S.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
<b>Civil Portion:</b>						
2	Quality Control & Structural Inspections	1	L.S.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
3	Environmental Controls and BMP's	1	L.S.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
4	Sewer Line & Connections	80	L.F.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
5	Utility Trench per Standard Detail 200	30	L.F.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
6	1.5 Inch Water Service	1	Each	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
7	4" Fire Line & Misc. Connections	106	L.F.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
8	Install Double Detector Check	1	Each	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
9	2" Asphalt on 3" Base Material	1,155	S.Y.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
10	Graded Swell	262	L.F.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
11	Retention Pond	1,054	S.F.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
12	8 Inch Curb	150	L.F.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
13	4 Inch Sidewalk	2,020	S.F.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____

<sup>1</sup> The "Unit Price" column shall indicate unit or lump sum prices for each bid item and shall be indicated in written and numerical form.

<sup>2</sup> The "Item Total Costs" column shall indicate the extension of the unit prices, which is obtained by multiplying the "Estimated Quantity" column by the "Unit Price" column.

<sup>2</sup> The "Bid Total" amount shall be the sum of all costs listed in the "Item Total Costs" column.

14	Curb Stop	9	S.F.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
15	Single Trash Enclosure	1	Each	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
16	Earthwork	398	C.Y.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____

**Architectural Portion:**

17	New Laboratory Building - Structural	1	L.S.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
18	New Laboratory Building - Mechanical	1	L.S.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
19	New Laboratory Building – Plumbing	1	L.S.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
20	New Laboratory Building - Electrical	1	L.S.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
21	New Laboratory Building – All Other Work	1	L.S.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
22	Force Account Work	1	L.S.	_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
				Eighty Thousand Dollars	\$ 80,000.00	\$ 80,000.00

**BID TOTAL<sup>3</sup> + FORCE ACCOUNT**

_____	\$ _____	\$ _____
-------	----------	----------

Above line items and totals shall include all work shown on the plans and specified herein, including taxes, insurance and bonding.

<sup>1</sup> The “Unit Price” column shall indicate unit or lump sum prices for each bid item and shall be indicated in written and numerical form.  
<sup>2</sup> The “Item Total Costs” column shall indicate the extension of the unit prices, which is obtained by multiplying the “Estimated Quantity” column by the “Unit Price” column.  
<sup>3</sup> The “Bid Total” amount shall be the sum of all costs listed in the “Item Total Costs” column.

The unit prices for **New Laboratory Building, Project No. B25-PW-107032-500638** shall include all labor, materials, water disposal, bailing, shoring, removal, disposal, overhead, profit, insurance, and all other related costs and work to cover the finished work of the several kinds called for. Changes in the Contract shall be processed in accordance with Paragraph 16 of the General Conditions.

Bidder understands that the Owner reserves the right to reject any or all Bids, or portions thereof, and to waive any informalities in the bidding.

The Bidder agrees that this Bid shall be good and may not be withdrawn for a period of ninety (90) calendar days after the scheduled closing time for receiving Bids.

Upon receipt of written notice of the acceptance of this Bid, Bidder shall execute the formal Contract attached within 10 days and deliver a Performance Bond, Payment Bond, and Certificates of Insurance as required by Paragraph 25 of the General Conditions and the Special Provisions.

The Bid security attached in the sum of \$\_\_\_\_\_ is to become the property of the Owner in the event the Contract and Bond(s) are not executed and provided within the time above set forth, as liquidated damages for the delay and additional expense to the Owner caused thereby.

Bidder hereby acknowledges receipt of the following Addenda: \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.

RESPECTFULLY SUBMITTED BY:

BY: \_\_\_\_\_

TITLE: \_\_\_\_\_

FIRM: \_\_\_\_\_

ADDRESS: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

PHONE: \_\_\_\_\_ FAX \_\_\_\_\_

EMAIL: \_\_\_\_\_

Seal - if Bid by a corporation

AZ Contractor's License No: \_\_\_\_\_ Type \_\_\_\_\_

**\*\* END OF SECTION \*\***

SECTION 00400  
**ARIZONA STATUTORY BID BOND**

PURSUANT TO TITLES 28, 34 AND 41, ARIZONA REVISED STATUTES  
(Penalty of this bond must not be less than 10% of the bid amount)

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS:

That, \_\_\_\_\_(hereinafter "Principal"), as Principal, and \_\_\_\_\_, (hereinafter "Surety"), a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_, with its principal offices in the City of \_\_\_\_\_, holding a certificate of authority to transact surety business in Arizona issued by the Director of the Department of Insurance pursuant to Title 20, Chapter 2, Article 1, as Surety, are held and firmly bound unto Lake Havasu City, Arizona, (hereinafter "Obligee"), as Obligee, in the amount of Ten Percent (10%) of the amount of the bid of Principal, submitted by Principal to the Obligee for the work described below, for the payment of which sum, the Principal and Surety bind themselves, and their heirs, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, the Principal has submitted a bid for

**New Laboratory Building,  
Project No. B25-PW-107032-500638**

NOW, THEREFORE, if the Obligee shall accept the proposal of the Principal and the Principal shall enter into a contract with the Obligee in accordance with the terms of the proposal and give the bonds and certificates of insurance as specified in the standard specifications with good and sufficient surety for the faithful performance of the contract and for the prompt payment of labor and materials furnished in the prosecution of the contract, or in the event of the failure of the Principal to enter into the contract and give the bonds and certificates of insurance, if the Principal pays to the Obligee the difference not to exceed the penalty of the bond between the amount specified in the proposal and such larger amount for which the Obligee may in good faith contract with another party to perform the work covered by the proposal then this obligation is void. Otherwise it remains in full force and effect provided, however, that this bond is executed pursuant to the provisions of Section 34-201, Arizona Revised Statutes, and all liabilities on this bond shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of that section to the extent as if it were copied at length herein.

Witness our hands this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
PRINCIPAL

\_\_\_\_\_  
SEAL

\_\_\_\_\_  
SURETY

\_\_\_\_\_  
SEAL

By: \_\_\_\_\_ By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Principal Attorney-in-Fact

Its: \_\_\_\_\_  
Principal's Title Agency of Record

\_\_\_\_\_  
Agency Address

SECTION 00420  
BIDDER'S STATEMENT OF QUALIFICATIONS

The Undersigned certifies the truth and correctness of all statements and of all answers to questions made hereinafter.

SUBMITTED TO: Lake Havasu City, Arizona  
2330 N. McCulloch Boulevard  
Lake Havasu City, AZ 86403

SUBMITTED BY: NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ ☐ Corporation  
ADDRESS: \_\_\_\_\_ ☐ Partnership  
PRINCIPAL OFFICE: \_\_\_\_\_ ☐ Individual  
☐ Joint Venture  
☐ Other

(NOTE: Attach separate sheets as required)

1. How many years has your organization been in business as a Contractor?
2. How many years has your organization been in business under its present business name?

3. If a Corporation, answer the following:

Date of Incorporation: \_\_\_\_\_  
State of Incorporation: \_\_\_\_\_  
President: \_\_\_\_\_  
Vice President(s): \_\_\_\_\_  
Secretary: \_\_\_\_\_  
Treasurer: \_\_\_\_\_

4. If a Partnership, answer the following:

Date of organization: \_\_\_\_\_  
Type of Partnership: \_\_\_\_\_  
(General/Limited/Assoc.)  
Name and Address of all partners.

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. If other than a Corporation or Partnership, describe Organization and name Principals:

\_\_\_\_\_



What percent of the work do you normally perform with your own forces?

List trades:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Have you ever failed to complete any work awarded to you? If so, indicate when, where and why:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. Has any Officer or Partner of your Organization ever been an Officer or Partner of another Organization that failed to complete a construction contract? \_\_\_\_\_ If so, state circumstances:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. List major construction projects your Organization has under contract on this date:

<b>Project Name</b>	<b>Name, Email Address &amp; Telephone Number of Owner</b>	<b>Project Location</b>	<b>Contract Amount</b>	<b>Contract Date</b>	<b>Percent Complete</b>	<b>Scheduled Completion</b>

10. List similar construction projects your Organization has completed in the past five years:

<b>Project Name</b>	<b>Name, Email Address &amp; Telephone Number of Owner</b>	<b>Project Location</b>	<b>Contract Amount</b>	<b>Date Awarded</b>	<b>Date Completed</b>	<b>Percent with Own Forces</b>

11. List the construction experience of the principal individuals in your Organization:

Individual's Name	Construction Experience - Years	Within Your Organization		
		Present Position & Years Experience	Dollar Volume Responsibility	Previous Position & Years Experience

12. List states and categories in which your Organization is legally qualified to do business:

---



---



---

13. List all Arizona Contractor licenses currently held by your Organization; the status of each license; and provide a photocopy of each license with your bid proposal.

License Class / #                      Status

1.	<hr/>	<hr/>
2.	<hr/>	<hr/>
3.	<hr/>	<hr/>
4.	<hr/>	<hr/>

Please attach a list of additional Arizona Contractor licenses, if any.

14. Bank References:

---



---



---

15. Trade References:

---



---



---

16. Name of Bonding and Insurance Companies and Name and Address of Agents: Maximum Bonding Capacity \_\_\_\_\_

17. The Undersigned agrees to furnish, upon request by the Owner, within seven days after

the Bid Opening, a current Statement of Financial Conditions, including Contractor's latest regular dated financial statement or balance sheet which must contain the following items:

Current Assets: (Cash, joint venture accounts, accounts receivable, notes receivable, accrued interest on notes, deposits, and materials and prepaid expenses), net fixed assets and other assets.

Current Liabilities: (Accounts payable, notes payable, accrued interest on notes, provision for income taxes, advances received from owners, accrued salaries, accrued payroll taxes), other liabilities, and capital (capital stock, authorized and outstanding shares par values, earned surplus).

Date of statement or balance sheet: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of firm preparing statement: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Agent and Capacity)

18. List of Subcontractors. In accordance with paragraph 1.0 of Instructions to Bidders, the following is a breakdown of all subcontractors anticipated to be used for completing this project and their approximate percentage of work to be performed.

The Bidder certifies that all Subcontractors listed are eligible to perform Work on public works projects pursuant to ARS 34-241.

<u>Subcontractor</u>	<u>Description of Work</u>	<u>% of Total Project</u>
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
Total % of all Subcontractor's work on project		_____
Total % for Prime Contractor		_____

19. Dated at \_\_\_\_\_ this \_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Organization: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

\*\* END OF SECTION \*\*

STATE OF )  
 ) ss  
CITY OF )

BEING DULY SWORN, DEPOSES AND SAYS:

OF \_\_\_\_\_  
(NAME OF BUSINESS)

THAT NEITHER HE NOR ANYONE ASSOCIATED WITH SAID

HAS DIRECTLY, OR INDIRECTLY, ENTERED INTO ANY CONTRACT, PARTICIPATED IN ANY COLLUSION OR OTHERWISE TAKEN ANY ACTION IN RESTRAINT OF FREE COMPETITIVE BIDDING IN CONNECTION WITH THIS PROJECT.

NAME OF BUSINESS

MY COMMISSION EXPIRES: \_\_\_\_\_

NOTARY PUBLIC:

00430-1

**SECTION 00450**  
**HAZARD COMMUNICATION PROGRAM**  
**Lake Havasu City**  
**SECTION 00440**  
**COMPLIANCE WITH FAIR SHARE POLICY**

This project is funded in whole or in part with funds provided by Water Infrastructure Finance Authority of Arizona (WIFA). WIFA provides financial assistance from the state and federally funded Clean Water Revolving Fund (CWRF) and the Drinking Water Revolving Fund (DWRF). As a recipient of benefits from state or federal funds through WIFA, the CITY must comply with the requirements of the Fair Share Policy.

The Fair Share Policy helps ensure that recipients of WIFA financial assistance award a fair share of contracting opportunities to minority business enterprises (MBEs), woman business enterprises (WBEs), and small businesses in rural areas (SBRA). This Fair Share Policy is a requirement of the State of Arizona and the federal government. The Fair Share Policy applies to all prime contracts and sub-contracts for construction, equipment, supplies, and services.

The CONTRACTOR must document their meaningful actions to comply with the “Good Faith Effort” requirements. The CONTRACTOR will not be penalized if actual participation is below the set goals nor will they be relieved of continuing to make “Good Faith Efforts” if the goal is reached.

In order to comply with the Good Faith Effort, the CONTRACTOR must:

- Place qualified MBE/WBE/SBRA enterprises on solicitation lists.
- Assure that MBE/WBE/SBRA enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources.
- Divide project tasks, when economically feasible, into small tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by MBE/WBE/SBRA enterprises.
- Establish delivery schedules when the requirements of the work permit, which will encourage participation by MBE/WBE/SBRA enterprises.
- Use the services and assistance of the Small Business Administration, the Minority Business Development Agency, and the Department of Commerce as resources to locate and contact MBE/WBE/SBRA enterprises.

A business qualifies as a MBE or WBE if it is:

- Certified as MBE or WBE by the Small Business Administration or other federal agency or certified by a State or State agency or
- An independent business concern that, although not certified, is at least 51 percent owned by one or more minority group members or women and whose daily business operations are managed and directed by one or more of the minority or women owners or
- In the case of a publicly owned business, at least 51 percent of the stock is owned by one or more minority group members or women and whose daily business operations are managed and directed by one or more of the minority or women owners.

A business qualifies as a SBRA if it is:

- A business concern that is physically located outside any standard metropolitan statistical area (SMSA) within Arizona.

SECTION 00450  
HAZARD COMMUNICATION PROGRAM  
Lake Havasu City

**CERTIFICATION OF POSITIVE EFFORT - MBE/WBE/SBRA ENTERPRISE  
PARTICIPATION**

Name of Prime Contractor:-

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ has made a Good Faith Effort to facilitate  
MBE/WBE/SBRA  
*(Contractor)*

participation in this construction contract by satisfactorily following the affirmative action steps:

- Place qualified MBE/WBE/SBRA enterprises on solicitation lists.
- Assure that MBE/WBE/SBRA enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources.
- Divide project tasks, when economically feasible, into small tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by MBE/WBE/SBRA enterprises.
- Establish delivery schedules when the requirements of the work permit, which will encourage participation by MBE/WBE/SBRA enterprises.
- Use the services and assistance of the Small Business Administration, the Minority Business Development Agency, and the Department of Commerce as resources to locate and contact MBE/WBE/SBRA enterprises.

CONTRACTOR shall maintain documentation related to MBE/WBE/SBRA Good Faith Effort, sub-contractor selection, and MBE/WBE/SBRA participation, in the project files and make available upon request by the CITY.

I, the undersigned representative of \_\_\_\_\_ hereby  
*(Contractor)*

certify that all of the information provided herein is correct to the best of my knowledge and belief.

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Signature of Authorized Representative)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Date)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Type or Print Name of Authorized Representative)*

Please list any MBE/WBE/SBRA enterprises selected to provide services, equipment, or supplies for this project on the following sheet (if any).

SECTION 00450  
HAZARD COMMUNICATION PROGRAM  
Lake Havasu City

The following MBE/WBE/SBRA enterprises have been selected to provide services, equipment, or supplies for the listed project:

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		

<hr/>	MBE	WBE	SBRA
<i>(Name of Company)</i>	<i>(Circle if applicable)</i>		



SECTION 00450  
HAZARD COMMUNICATION PROGRAM  
Lake Havasu City

MBE WBE SBRA

**HAZARD COMMUNICATION PROGRAM FOR \_\_\_\_\_**  
(Name of Company)

The purpose of this program is to ensure that potential hazards and hazard control measures for chemicals used by this company are understood by company employees.

The written program is available for employee review at any time. It is located \_\_\_\_\_. A copy of the program will be provided to any employee or employee representative, upon request.

**CONTAINER LABELING:**

\_\_\_\_\_ will verify that all containers received for use by this company will: (name/title of individual)

- \* be clearly labeled as to the contents, matching identification on MSDS;
- \* note the appropriate hazard warnings;
- \* List the name and address of the manufacturer.

No containers will be released for use until the above data is verified.

**MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEETS:**

Copies of MSDS's for all hazardous chemicals to which employees may be exposed will be kept

\_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_ will be responsible for ensuring that:  
(name/title of individual)

- \* MSDS's for the new chemicals are available;
- \* MSDS's will be available for review to all employees during each work shift;
- \* Copies will be available on request.

**EMPLOYEE TRAINING AND INFORMATION:**

Each employee will be provided the following information and training before working in areas where hazardous chemicals exist. In addition, if a new hazardous material is introduced into the workplace, affected employees will be given new information and training concerning that material.

SECTION 00450  
HAZARD COMMUNICATION PROGRAM  
Lake Havasu City

**A. Minimum Information Provided:**

(1) All operations and locations in the work area where hazardous chemicals are present.

**GENERAL INDUSTRY**

**A. Minimum Information Provided:**

- (1) The location and availability of the written hazard communication program, including list(s) of hazardous chemicals used and related material safety data sheets;
- (2) The method the company will use to inform employees of potential hazards of non-routine tasks (jobs that are not routine for an individual because of infrequency, location or type.)

**B. Minimum Training Provided:**

- (1) Methods and observations used to detect the presence or release of a hazardous chemical in the work area (such as company monitoring programs, continuous monitoring device, visual appearance, odor or to other characteristics of hazardous chemicals;
- (2) The physical and health hazards of chemicals in the assigned work area;
- (3) The measures to take to protect against such hazards, including specific company procedures concerning work practices, emergencies and care and use of protective equipment.
- (4) Details of the company hazard communication program, including explanation of the labeling system, the material safety data sheets, and how to obtain and use the appropriate hazard information.

(OPTIONAL) Upon completion of the training, each employee will sign a form acknowledging receipt of the written hazard communication program and related training.

**HAZARDOUS NON-ROUTINE TASKS:** (If applicable.)

If company employees are required to do hazardous non-routine tasks, such as welding in confined spaces, or cleaning of tanks, the employer must address how the employees doing the work will be informed about the specific hazards to which they will be exposed, what personal protective equipment will be provided and who will be responsible to oversee the operation or operations. If the company does not have any hazardous non-routine tasks, line through this section and state "NO HAZARDOUS NON-ROUTINE TASKS".

**CHEMICALS IN UNLABELED PIPES:** (If applicable.)

If the company has chemicals in unlabeled pipes, the company must inform the employees of the hazards associated with those chemicals. If the company does not have any chemicals in unlabeled pipes, line through this section and state "NO CHEMICALS IN UNLABELED PIPES".

**INFORMING CONTRACTORS:**

Providing contractors and their employees with the following information is the responsibility of \_\_\_\_\_.

SECTION 00450  
HAZARD COMMUNICATION PROGRAM  
Lake Havasu City  
(Name/title of individual)

- (1) Hazardous chemicals to which they may be exposed while on the job site;
- (2) Measures the employees may take to lessen the possibility of exposure;
- (3) Steps the company has taken to lessen the risks;
- (4) Where the MSDS's are for chemicals to which they may be exposed;
- (5) Procedures to follow if they are exposed.

**CONTRACTORS INFORMING EMPLOYERS:**

Contractors entering this workplace with hazardous materials will supply this employer with MSDS's covering those particular products the contractor may expose this company's employees to while working at this site.

LIST OF HAZARDOUS CHEMICALS IN THIS WORKPLACE

---

---

---

---

**CONTRACTOR:**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\*\*END OF SECTION\*\*

**LAKE HAVASU CITY**  
**EMPLOYMENT ELIGIBILITY VERIFICATION & FORM**

**INSTRUCTIONS FOR COMPLETION OF EMPLOYMENT ELIGIBILITY VERIFICATION FORM**

**WHO MUST COMPLETE THIS FORM:**

In accordance with Lake Havasu City Code Chapter 3.30, Employment of Unauthorized Aliens, all contractors and subcontractors furnishing labor, time, or effort for construction or maintenance of any structure, building, transportation facility, or improvements of real property must complete this form.

Contractors or subcontractors, as described above, must certify that they have complied, in good faith, with the applicable requirements of the Federal Immigration Control and Reform Act with respect to the hiring of covered employees. This certification must be executed by an authorized representative.

**WHEN THIS FORM MUST BE COMPLETED:**

This form must be completed by all contractors and subcontractors and submitted to the City department awarding the contract, license agreement, or lease no later than notification of successful direct selection, bid, request for proposals, request for qualification, or any similar competitive or noncompetitive procurement or bidding process.

**LAKE HAVASU CITY**  
**EMPLOYMENT ELIGIBILITY VERIFICATION & FORM**

**LIST OF ACCEPTABLE DOCUMENTS:**

<b>LIST A</b>		<b>LIST B</b>		<b>LIST C</b>
<b>Documents that Establish Both</b>		<b>Documents that Establish</b>		<b>Documents that Establish</b>
U.S. Passport (unexpired or expired)	<b>OR</b>	Driver's license or ID Card issued by a state or outlying possession of the United States provided it contains a photograph or information such as name date of birth	<b>AND</b>	U.S. social security card issued by the Social Security Administration
Certificate of U.S. Citizenship		ID card issued by a federal, state or local government agencies or entities, provided it contains a photograph or information		Certification of Birth Abroad issued by the Department of State
Certificate of Naturalization		School ID card with photograph		Original or certified copy of a birth certificate issued by a state, county, municipal authority or outlying Native American tribal document
Unexpired foreign passport with I-551 stamp or attached federal Form I-94		Voter's registration card		U.S. Citizen ID Card
Permanent Resident Card or Alien		U.S. Military card or draft record		ID Card for the use of Resident Citizen in the
Unexpired Temporary		Military dependent's ID card		Unexpired employment authorization document issued by DHS
Unexpired Employment		U.S. Coast Guard Merchant Mariner Card		
Unexpired Reentry		Native American tribal		
Unexpired Refugee Travel Document		Driver's license issued by a		
Unexpired Employment Authorization Document issued by DHS that contains a		<b>For persons under age 18 who are unable to present a document listed above:</b> School record or report card; Clinic,		

**EMPLOYER VERIFICATION OF EMPLOYMENT ELIGIBILITY & FORM**

The undersigned attests under penalty of perjury, that they have reviewed the documents presented to them by their employees, and that the documents provided to the undersigned by their employees, as more particularly identified in the attached exhibit entitled "list of acceptable documents" appear to be genuine and appear to relate to the employee name, and to the best of the undersigned's knowledge, the employee is eligible to work in the United States based upon the undersigned's review of the documents presented.

<b>Signature of Authorized Representative of Covered Employer/Contractor/ Subcontractor</b>	<b>Print Name</b>	<b>Title</b>
<b>Business or Organization Name</b>	<b>Business Phone Number</b>	<b>Date (month/date/year)</b>
<b>Address (Street Name and Number)</b>		
<b>City, State, Zip Code</b>		

SECTION 00500  
CONTRACT

THIS CONTRACT is entered into by and between LAKE HAVASU CITY, ARIZONA, a municipal corporation ("OWNER"), and \_\_\_\_\_a(n) ARIZONA corporation, **Federal I.D. #** ("CONTRACTOR").

WHEREAS, OWNER has developed plans for and desires to commence the South Intake Influent Screen B25-PW-107012-500644 ("PROJECT"); and

WHEREAS, CONTRACTOR represents that it possesses the experience, competence, equipment and financing to properly complete the PROJECT, and has formally proposed to do so, and to furnish all necessary labor, materials, and equipment and services therefore in accordance with said plans, and subject to the terms and conditions hereof.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of these promises and the mutual covenants herein, it is hereby agreed as follows:

1. CONTRACTOR shall commence and complete the construction of the PROJECT;
2. CONTRACTOR shall furnish all of the material, supplies, tools, equipment, labor and other services necessary for the construction and completion of the PROJECT.
3. CONTRACTOR shall commence the PROJECT in accordance with the CONTRACT DOCUMENTS within TEN (10) calendar days after the date of the Notice to Proceed. Final completion of the PROJECT shall occur within **[XXX] calendar days** of the date of the Notice to Proceed. The period for completion may be extended through the authorized and approved change order process.
4. Liquidated Damages: OWNER and CONTRACTOR recognize that time is of the essence of this CONTRACT and that OWNER will suffer financial loss if the PROJECT is not completed within the time specified in paragraph 3 above, plus any extensions thereof allowed in accordance with the General Conditions. They also recognize the delays, expense and difficulties involved in proving in a legal or arbitration proceeding the actual losses or damages (including special, indirect, consequential, incidental and any other losses or damages) suffered by OWNER if a complete acceptable PROJECT is not delivered on time.

Accordingly, and instead of requiring proof of such losses or damages, OWNER and CONTRACTOR agree that as liquidated damages for delay (but not as a penalty) CONTRACTOR shall pay the OWNER **\$XXX** for each calendar day that expires after the time specified in paragraph 3 for delivery of acceptable Bid Items, plus any costs incurred by the Engineer as provided in Section 17 of the General Conditions.

5. CONTRACTOR agrees to complete the PROJECT in accordance with all of the terms and conditions of the CONTRACT DOCUMENTS for the sum of **\$XXXXX** as shown

in the Bid Schedule.

6. CONTRACTOR shall submit a completed Section 00450 entitled Hazard Communication Program with the executed copy of this CONTRACT.
7. The term "CONTRACT DOCUMENTS" means and includes the following:
  - 00020 Notice Inviting Bids
  - 00100 Information for Bidders
  - 00300 Bid Proposal
  - 00310 Bid Price Schedule
  - 00400 Bid Bond
  - 00420 Bidder's Statement of Qualifications
  - 00430 Bidder's Affidavit of No Collusion
  - 00450 Hazard Communication Program
  - 00460 Employment Eligibility Verification
  - 00500 CONTRACT
  - 00500A Indemnification and Insurance Requirements
  - 00500B Contractor Claim Handling Procedure
  - 00510 Arizona Statutory Performance Bond
  - 00520 Arizona Statutory Payment Bond
  - 00670 Notice of Award
  - 00680 Notice to Proceed
  - 00685 Certificate of Substantial Completion
  - 00690 Certificate of Final Completion
  - 00700 General Conditions
  - 00800 Special Provisions
    - Technical Specifications and Details
    - Construction Contract Drawings
    - Change Orders
    - Lien Releases (Conditional and Final)
    - Addenda
8. OWNER shall pay CONTRACTOR in the manner and at such times as set forth in the General Conditions and in such amounts as required by the CONTRACT DOCUMENTS.
9. In the event CONTRACTOR fails to perform any portion of the PROJECT or satisfy any term or condition of the CONTRACT DOCUMENTS, OWNER may at its sole discretion file notice and/or claim of such failure with CONTRACTOR'S surety.
10. Israel. If applicable, Contractor certifies that it is not currently engaged in, and agrees for the duration of this Contract that it will not engage in, a boycott of goods and services from Israel, as defined in A.R.S. § 35-393.
11. Conflict of Interest. The Contract may be cancelled in accordance with Arizona Revised Statutes Section 38-511.



12. Forced Labor of Ethnic Uyghurs Certification. If applicable, Contractor certifies that it does not currently, and agrees for the duration of the Contract that it will not, use: (1) the forced labor of ethnic Uyghurs in the People's Republic of China; (2) any goods or services produced by the forced labor of ethnic Uyghurs in the People's Republic of China; or (3) any contractors, subcontractors, or suppliers that use the forced labor or any goods or services produced by the forced labor of ethnic Uyghurs in the People's Republic of China. If Contractor becomes aware it is not in compliance with this certification, it shall notify the City within five business days after becoming aware. This Contract will terminate upon failure to remedy the noncompliance within 180 days of the notification. (A.R.S. § 35-394)
13. Export Administration Act. The CONTRACTOR warrants compliance with the Export Administration Act.
14. Recyclable Products. The CONTRACTOR shall use recyclable products and products which contain recycled content to the maximum extent economically feasible in the performance of the work set forth in the CONTRACT.
15. Asbestos License. The CONTRACTOR shall possess an asbestos abatement license if required under A.R.S. Title 32 or 49.
16. Assignment. No right or interest in this CONTRACT shall be assigned by CONTRACTOR without prior, written permission of the OWNER signed by the City Manager; and no delegation of any duty of CONTRACTOR shall be made without prior written permission of the OWNER signed by the City Manager. Any attempted assignment or delegation by CONTRACTOR in violation of this provision shall be a breach of this CONTRACT by CONTRACTOR.

[SIGNATURES ON FOLLOWING PAGE]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have executed, or caused to be executed by their duly authorized officials, this CONTRACT in two (2) copies, each of which shall be deemed an original. The last date of signature shall be the effective date of this CONTRACT.

OWNER:

Lake Havasu City, Arizona

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

Lake Havasu City Attorney's Office

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**CONTRACTOR:**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Name/Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

ATTEST:

BY: \_\_\_\_\_

Name/Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**\*\* END OF SECTION \*\***

LAKE HAVASU CITY CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT  
INDEMNIFICATION AND INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS  
(long form)

I. INDEMNIFICATION

CONTRACTOR agrees to indemnify, defend, save, and hold harmless the CITY, its departments, agencies, boards, commissions, officers, officials, agents, volunteers, and employees from and against any and all claims, actions, liabilities, damages, losses, or expenses (including court costs, attorney's fees, and costs of claim processing, investigation, and litigation) ("Claims") for bodily injury or personal injury (including death), or loss or damage to tangible or intangible property caused, or alleged to be caused, in whole or in part, by the CONTRACTOR or any of its owners, officers, directors, agents, employees, or contractors. This Indemnity includes any claim or amount arising out of or recovered under Workers' Compensation law or arising out of the failure of the CONTRACTOR to conform to any federal, state, or local law, statute, ordinance, rule, regulation, or court decree. It is the specific intention of the parties that the CITY shall, in all instances, except for Claims arising solely from the negligent or willful acts or omissions of the CITY, be indemnified by CONTRACTOR from and against any and all claims. It is agreed that CONTRACTOR will be responsible for primary loss investigation, defense, and judgment costs where this indemnification is applicable. The amount and type of insurance coverage requirements required by this Agreement will in no way be construed as limiting the scope of indemnity in this Section.

II. INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS

A.CONTRACTOR and its subcontractors shall procure and maintain until all of their obligations have been discharged, including any warranty periods under this CONTRACT, are satisfied, insurance against claims for injury to persons or damage to property which may arise from or in connection with the performance of the work hereunder by the CONTRACTOR, its agents, representatives, employees or subcontractors.

B.The insurance requirements herein are minimum requirements for this CONTRACT and in no way limit the indemnity covenants contained in this CONTRACT. City in no way warrants that the minimum limits contained herein are sufficient to protect the CONTRACTOR from liabilities that might arise out of the performance of the work under this CONTRACT by the CONTRACTOR, its agents, representatives, employees or subcontractors, and CONTRACTOR is free to purchase additional insurance.

C.MINIMUM SCOPE AND LIMITS OF INSURANCE: CONTRACTOR shall provide coverage with limits of liability not less than those stated below.

1. Commercial General Liability

– Occurrence Form

Policy shall include bodily injury, property damage, personal injury and broad form contractual liability coverage.

General Aggregate \$4,000,000

Products – Completed Operations Aggregate \$1,000,000

Personal and Advertising Injury	\$1,000,000
Blanket Contractual Liability – Written and Oral	\$1,000,000
Fire Legal Liability	\$ 50,000
Each Occurrence	\$2,000,000

i. The policy shall be endorsed to include the following additional insured language: "Lake Havasu City, its departments, agencies, boards, commissions, and its officers, officials, agents, volunteers and employees shall be named as additional insureds with respect to liability arising out of the activities performed by or on behalf of the CONTRACTOR".

Policy shall contain a waiver of subrogation against Lake Havasu City, its departments, agencies, boards, commissions, and its officers, officials, agents, volunteers and employees for losses arising from work performed by or on behalf of the CONTRACTOR.

Completed operations coverage shall remain effective for at least two years following expiration of CONTRACT.

2. Business Automobile Liability

a. Bodily Injury and Property Damage for any owned, hired, and/or non-owned vehicles used in the performance of this CONTRACT.

Combined Single Limit (CSL)

\$1,000,000

The policy shall be endorsed to include the following additional insured language: "Lake Havasu City, its departments, agencies, boards, commissions, and its officers, officials, agents, volunteers and employees shall be named as additional insureds with respect to liability arising out of the activities performed by or on behalf of the CONTRACTOR, involving automobiles owned, leased, hired or borrowed by the CONTRACTOR."

Policy shall contain a waiver of subrogation against Lake Havasu City, its departments, agencies, boards, commissions, and its officers, officials, agents, volunteers and employees for losses arising from work performed by or on behalf of the CONTRACTOR.

3. Workers' Compensation and Employers' Liability

a. Workers' Compensation Statutory

b. Employers' Liability Each Accident \$ 500,000

Disease – Each Employee \$ 500,000

Disease – Policy Limit \$1,000,000

i. Policy shall contain a waiver of subrogation against Lake Havasu City, its departments, agencies, boards, commissions, and its officers, officials, agents, volunteers and employees for losses arising from work performed by or on behalf of the CONTRACTOR.

ii. This requirement shall not apply if exempt under A.R.S. Section 23-901.

4. Professional Liability (Errors and Omissions Liability)\*

\*If Applicable

a. Each Claim \$1,000,000

b. Annual Aggregate \$2,000,000

In the event that the professional liability insurance required by this CONTRACT is written on a claims-made basis, CONTRACTOR warrants that any retroactive date under the policy shall precede the effective date of this CONTRACT; and that either continuous coverage will be maintained or an extended discovery period will be exercised for a period of two (2)

years beginning at the time work under this CONTRACT is completed.

ii. The policy shall cover professional misconduct or lack of ordinary skill for those positions defined in the Scope of Work of this CONTRACT.

#### 5. Builders' Risk (Property) Insurance (Vertical Construction Only)

a. CONTRACTOR shall purchase and maintain, on a replacement cost basis Builders' Risk insurance in the amount of the initial CONTRACT amount as well as subsequent modifications thereto, including modifications through Change Order, for the entire work at the site. Such Builders' Risk insurance shall be maintained until final payment has been made or until no person or entity other than CITY has an insurable interest in the property required to be covered, whichever is earlier. This insurance shall include interests of CITY, CONTRACTOR and any tier of CONTRACTOR's subcontractors in the work during the life of the CONTRACT and course of construction, and shall continue until the work is completed and accepted by CITY. For new construction projects, CONTRACTOR agrees to assume full responsibility for loss or damage to the work being performed and to the buildings or structures under construction. For renovation construction projects, CONTRACTOR agrees to assume responsibility for loss or damage to the work being performed at least up to the full CONTRACT amount, unless otherwise required by the Contract documents or amendments thereto.

b. Builders' Risk insurance shall be on an all-risk policy form and shall also cover false work and temporary buildings or structures and shall insure against risk of direct physical loss or damage from external causes including debris removal, demolition occasioned by enforcement of any applicable legal requirements and shall cover reasonable compensation for architects' and engineers' services and expenses, and other "soft costs," required as a result of such insured loss.

c. Builders' Risk insurance must provide coverage from the time any covered property falls within CONTRACTOR's control and/or responsibility and continue without interruption during construction or renovation or installation, including any time during which covered property is being transported to the construction or installation site, and while on the construction or installation site awaiting installation. The policy will provide coverage while the covered premises or any part thereof is occupied. Builders' Risk insurance shall be primary and not contributory.

d. If the CONTRACT requires testing of equipment or materials or other similar operations, at the option of CITY, CONTRACTOR will be responsible for providing property insurance for these exposures under a Boiler Machinery insurance policy.

#### 6. Contractor's Personal Property

CONTRACTOR and each of its subcontractors and suppliers shall be solely responsible for any loss or damage to its or their personal property and that of their employees and workers, including, without limitation, property or materials created or provided pursuant to this CONTRACT, any subcontract or otherwise, its or their tools, equipment, clothing, fencing, forms, mobile construction equipment, scaffolding, automobiles, trucks, trailers or

semi-trailers including any machinery or apparatus attached thereto, temporary structures and uninstalled materials, whether owned, used, leased, hired or rented by CONTRACTOR or any subcontractor, consultant or supplier or employee or worker (collectively, "Personal Property"). CONTRACTOR and its subcontractors, consultants and suppliers, at its or their option and own expense, may purchase and maintain insurance for such Personal Property and any deductible or self-insured retention in relation thereto shall be its or their sole responsibility. Any such insurance shall be CONTRACTOR's and the subcontractors', suppliers' volunteers and employees' and workers' sole source of recovery in the event of loss or damage to its or their Personal Property. Any such insurance purchased and maintained by CONTRACTOR and any subcontractor, consultant or supplier shall include a waiver of subrogation as to Owner. CONTRACTOR waives all rights of recovery, whether under subrogation or otherwise, against all such parties for loss or damage covered by CONTRACTOR's property insurance. CONTRACTOR shall require the same waivers from all subcontractors and suppliers and from the insurers issuing property insurance policies relating to the Work or the Project purchased and maintained by all subcontractors and suppliers. The waivers of subrogation referred to in this subparagraph shall be effective as to any individual or entity even if such individual or entity (a) would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (b) did not pay the insurance premium, directly or indirectly, and (c) whether or not such individual or entity has an insurable interest in the property which is the subject of the loss or damage.

## 7. Theft, Damage, or Destruction of Work

In the event of theft, damage or destruction of the Work, CONTRACTOR will re-supply or rebuild its Work without additional compensation and will look to its own resources or insurance coverages to pay for such re-supply or rebuilding. CONTRACTOR will promptly perform, re-supply or rebuild, regardless of the pendency of any claim by CONTRACTOR against any other party, including Owner, that such party is liable for damages, theft or destruction of CONTRACTOR's Work. This subparagraph shall apply except to the extent that the cost of re-supply or rebuilding is paid by Owner's builder's risk insurance; in such event, Owner waives (to the fullest extent permitted by the builder's risk policy) all rights of subrogation against CONTRACTOR and each of its subcontractors to the extent of such payment by Owner's builder's risk insurer.

D.ADDITIONAL INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS: The policies shall include, or be endorsed to include, the following provisions:

- 1.Lake Havasu City, its departments, agencies, boards, commissions and its officers, officials, agents, volunteers and employees wherever additional insured status is required. Such additional insured shall be covered to the full limits of liability purchased by the CONTRACTOR, even if those limits of liability are in excess of those required by this CONTRACT.
- 2.The Contractor's insurance coverage shall be primary insurance with respect to all other available sources.
- 3.Coverage provided by the Contractor shall not be limited to the liability assumed under the indemnification provisions of this CONTRACT.

E.NOTICE OF CANCELLATION: Each insurance policy required by the insurance provisions

of this CONTRACT shall not be suspended, voided, cancelled, reduced in coverage or in limits without ten (10) business days written notice to City. Such notice shall be mailed directly to Lake Havasu City, Community Investment Department, Procurement Division, 2330 McCulloch Blvd. North, Lake Havasu City, AZ, 86403 and shall be sent by certified mail, return receipt requested.

F.ACCEPTABILITY OF INSURERS: Insurance is to be placed with duly licensed or approved non-admitted insurers in the state of Arizona with an "A.M. Best" rating of not less than A-VII. CITY in no way warrants that the above-required minimum insurer rating is sufficient to protect the CONTRACTOR from potential insurer insolvency.

G. VERIFICATION OF COVERAGE:

1.CONTRACTOR shall furnish CITY with certificates of insurance as required by this CONTRACT. The certificates for each insurance policy are to be signed by a person authorized by that insurer to bind coverage on its behalf and the Project/contract number and project description shall be noted on the certificate of insurance.

2.All certificates and endorsements are to be received and approved by CITY at least ten (10) days before work commences. Each insurance policy required by this CONTRACT must be in effect at or prior to commencement of work under this CONTRACT and remain in effect for the duration of the Project. Failure to maintain the insurance policies as required by this CONTRACT, or to provide evidence of renewal, is a material breach of contract.

3.All renewal certificates required by this CONTRACT shall be sent directly to Lake Havasu City, Community Investment Department, Procurement Division, 2330 McCulloch Blvd. North, Lake Havasu City, AZ, 86403. The Project/contract number and project description shall be noted on the certificate of insurance. CITY reserves the right to require complete, certified copies of all insurance policies required by this CONTRACT at any time.

H.SUBCONTRACTORS: CONTRACTOR's certificate(s) shall include all subcontractors as insureds under its policies or CONTRACTOR shall furnish to CITY separate certificates and endorsements for each subcontractor. All coverages for subcontractors shall be subject to the minimum requirements identified above.

I.APPROVAL: Any modification or variation from the insurance requirements in this CONTRACT must have prior approval from the CITY's Human Resources/Risk Management Division, whose decision shall be final. Such action will not require a formal CONTRACT amendment, but may be made by administrative action.

J.EXCEPTIONS: In the event the CONTRACTOR or sub-contractor(s) is/are a public entity, then the Insurance Requirements shall not apply. Such public entity shall provide a Certificate of Self-Insurance.

**SECTION 00500B**  
**CONTRACTOR Claim Handling Procedure**

1. Claimant is to submit in writing to the OWNER or their REPRESENTATIVE the details of the claim to include the where, when, and how of the claim, and an estimate of damage, if applicable.
2. OWNER or their REPRESENTATIVE will forward the claim directly to the CONTRACTOR for handling. The CONTRACTOR is to respond to the claimant, in writing, within 30 calendar days of receipt with copies to:

Lake Havasu City Human Resources/Risk Management Division  
Lake Havasu City Administrative Services Department  
OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE, if applicable

If the CONTRACTOR denies the claim, the reasons for such denial must be included in the response to the claimant.



SECTION 00510  
ARIZONA STATUTORY PERFORMANCE BOND

PURSUANT TO TITLES 28, 34, AND 41, ARIZONA REVISED STATUTES  
(Penalty of this bond must be 100% of the Contract amount)

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS THAT: \_\_\_\_\_  
(hereinafter "Principal"), as Principal, and \_\_\_\_\_  
(hereinafter "Surety"), a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_  
with its principal office in the City of \_\_\_\_\_, holding a certificate of authority to  
transact surety business in Arizona issued by the Director of Insurance pursuant to Title 20,  
Chapter 2, Article 1, as Surety, are held and firmly bound unto Lake Havasu City, Arizona  
(hereinafter "Obligee") in the amount of **WRITTEN AMOUNT AND 00/100** (Dollars)  
**(\$#,###,###.##-NUMERIC AMOUNT)**, for the payment whereof, Principal and Surety bind  
themselves, and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and  
severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, the Principal has entered into a certain written contract with the Obligee, dated  
the \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, to furnish all of the material, supplies, tools,  
equipment, labor and other services necessary for the construction and completion of

**New Laboratory Building, Project No. B25-PW-107032-500638**

which contract is hereby referred to and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if  
copied at length herein.

NOW, THEREFORE, THE CONDITION OF THE OBLIGATION IS SUCH, that if the Principal  
faithfully performs and fulfills all of the undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions and  
agreements of the contract during the original term of the contract and any extension of the  
contract, with or without notice of the Surety, and during the life of any guarantee required under  
the contract, and also performs and fulfills all of the undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions  
and agreements of all duly authorized modifications of the contract that may hereafter be made,  
notice of which modifications to the Surety being hereby waived, the above obligation is void.  
Otherwise it remains in full force and effect.

PROVIDED, HOWEVER, that this bond is executed pursuant to the provisions of Title 34,  
Chapter 2, Article 2, Arizona Revised Statutes, and all liabilities on this bond shall be determined  
in accordance with the provisions of Title 34, Chapter 2, Article 2, Arizona Revised Statutes, to  
the same extent as if it were copied at length in this agreement.

The prevailing party in a suit on this bond shall recover as part of the judgment reasonable  
attorney fees that may be fixed by a judge of the court.

Witness our hands this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ , \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
PRINCIPAL

\_\_\_\_\_  
SEAL

\_\_\_\_\_  
AGENCY OF RECORD

BY: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
AGENCY ADDRESS

\_\_\_\_\_  
SURETY

\_\_\_\_\_  
SEAL

BY: \_\_\_\_\_

**\*\* END OF SECTION \*\***

SECTION 00520  
ARIZONA STATUTORY PAYMENT BOND  
PURSUANT TO TITLES 28, 34, AND 41, ARIZONA REVISED STATUTES  
(Penalty of this bond must be 100% of the Contract amount)

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS THAT: \_\_\_\_\_

(hereinafter "Principal"), as Principal, and \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
(hereinafter Surety), a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_  
with its principal office in the City of \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
holding a certificate of authority to transact surety business in Arizona issued by the Director of the Department of Insurance pursuant to Title 20, Chapter 2, Article 1, as Surety, are held and firmly bound unto Lake Havasu City, Arizona (hereinafter "Obligee") in the amount of **WRITTEN AMOUNT AND 00/100 (Dollars) ((\$#,###,###.##-NUMERIC AMOUNT)** for the payment whereof, Principal and Surety bind themselves, and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, the Principal has entered into a certain written contract with the Obligee, dated the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, to furnish all of the material, supplies, tools, equipment, labor and other services necessary for the construction and completion of

**New Laboratory Building, Project No. B25-PW-107032-500638**

which contract is hereby referred to and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied at length herein.

NOW, THEREFOR, THE CONDITION OF THE OBLIGATION IS SUCH, that if the Principal promptly pays all monies due to all persons supplying labor or materials to the Principal or the Principal's subcontractors in the prosecution of the work provided for in the contract, this obligation is void. Otherwise it remains in full force and effect.

PROVIDED, HOWEVER, that this bond is executed pursuant to the provisions of Title 34, Chapter 2, Article 2, Arizona Revised Statutes, and all liabilities on this bond shall be determined in accordance with the provisions, conditions and limitations of Title 34, Chapter 2, Article 2, Arizona Revised Statutes, to the same extent as if it were copied at length in this agreement.

The prevailing party in a suit on this bond shall recover as part of the judgment reasonable attorney fees that may be fixed by a judge of the court.

Witness our hands this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
PRINCIPAL

\_\_\_\_\_  
SEAL

\_\_\_\_\_  
BY: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
AGENCY OF RECORD

\_\_\_\_\_  
AGENCY ADDRESS

\_\_\_\_\_  
SURETY

\_\_\_\_\_  
SEAL

\_\_\_\_\_  
BY: \_\_\_\_\_

\*\* END OF SECTION \*\*

SECTION 00670  
**NOTICE OF AWARD**

**TO:**

**DATE:**

**PROJECT DESCRIPTION:** New Laboratory Building

The OWNER has considered the BID submitted by you for the above described WORK in response to its Advertisement for BIDS dated [DATE BID FIRST ADVERTISED], and Information for Bidders.

You are hereby notified that your BID has been accepted for items in the amount of \$, to include: [LIST BID ITEMS AWARDED]

You are required by the Information for Bidders to execute the Contract and furnish the required CONTRACTOR'S Performance Bond, Payment Bond, and Certificates of Liability, Vehicular, and Workmen's Compensation Insurance within ten (10) calendar days from the postmark date when this notice was sent by U.S. Mail.

If you fail to execute said Contract and to furnish said BONDS within ten (10) days from the date of this Notice, said OWNER will be entitled to consider all your rights arising out of the OWNER'S acceptance of your BID as abandoned and as a forfeiture of your BID BOND. The OWNER will be entitled to such other rights as may be granted by law.

You are required to return an acknowledged copy of this NOTICE OF AWARD to the OWNER.

Dated this [DATE] day of [MONTH], 20##.

Lake Havasu City, Arizona

BY: \_\_\_\_\_

NAME: Lynette Singleton

TITLE: Procurement Official

**Acceptance of Notice**

(NOTE: The contractor shall return a signed copy of this notice to the owner.)

Receipt of this NOTICE OF AWARD is hereby acknowledged by:

Contractor

This the \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20##.

BY: \_\_\_\_\_

TITLE: \_\_\_\_\_

\*\* END OF SECTION \*\*

REV 3/30/16

**SECTION 00685  
CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

I hereby state that the degree of completion of:

**New Laboratory Building, Project No. B25-PW-107032-500638**

Provides the full-time use of the project, or defined portion of the project, for the purposes for which it was intended and is the commencement of the Guarantee Period.

"Substantial Completion" shall not be considered as final acceptance.

**Lake Havasu City, Arizona**

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**ACCEPTANCE OF NOTICE**

(NOTE: The Contractor shall return a signed copy of this Notice to the Owner)

Receipt of the above **CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION** is hereby acknowledged this the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

E-original: [CONTRACTOR]

E-copy: Procurement ([Purchasing@lhcaz.gov](mailto:Purchasing@lhcaz.gov))

Lake Havasu City, City Clerk ([CityClerk@lhcaz.gov](mailto:CityClerk@lhcaz.gov))

## CERTIFICATE OF COMPLETION

I hereby state that all goods and services required by:

### **New Laboratory Building, Project No. B25-PW-107032-500638**

have been delivered in conformance with the Contract, and all activities required by the Contractor under the Contract were completed as of \_\_\_\_\_.  
(Date)

### **Lake Havasu City, Arizona**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

E-original: [CONTRACTOR]

E-copy: Procurement ([Purchasing@lhcaz.gov](mailto:Purchasing@lhcaz.gov))

City Clerk ([CityClerk@lhcaz.gov](mailto:CityClerk@lhcaz.gov))

SECTION 00700  
**GENERAL CONDITIONS**

This section of the Contract Documents is pre-printed. Any modifications to the following Articles, as may be required for this Project, are made in the Special Provisions.

**1.0 DEFINITIONS**

Wherever in the Contract Document the following terms are used, the intent and meaning shall be interpreted as follows:

**1.1 Addenda**

Written or graphic instruments issued prior to the opening of Bids which modify or interpret the Contract Documents, Drawings and Specifications, by additions, deletions, clarifications or corrections.

**1.2 As Approved**

The words "as approved," unless otherwise qualified, shall be understood to be followed by the words "by the Owner."

**1.3 As Shown, and as Indicated**

The words "as shown" and "as indicated" shall be understood to be followed by the words "on the Drawings" or "in the Specifications."

**1.4 Award**

The acceptance, by the Owner, of the successful Bidder's proposal.

**1.5 Bid**

The offer or proposal of the Bidder submitted on the prescribed form setting forth the prices for the Work to be performed.

**1.6 Bidder**

Any individual, firm partnership or corporation, or combination thereof submitting a proposal for the Work contemplated, acting directly or through a duly authorized representative.

**1.7 Bonds**

Bid, Performance, and Payment Bonds and other instruments of security, furnished by the Contractor and its surety in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**1.8 Calendar Day**

Every day shown on the calendar, measured from midnight to the next midnight.

### **1.9 Change Order**

A written order to the Contractor, signed by the Owner, covering changes in the Plans, Specifications, or proposal quantities and establishing the basis of payment and contract time adjustment, if any, for the Work affected by such changes.

If the Change Order increases the existing Contract Amount, the Builder's Risk Insurance limit must be increased to the adjusted Contract Amount.

### **1.10 Contract**

The "Contract" is the written Contract covering the performance of the Work and the furnishing of labor, materials, incidental services, tools, and equipment in the construction of the Work. It includes Supplemental Contracts amending or extending the Work contemplated in the manner hereinafter described and which may be required to complete the Work in a substantial and acceptable manner to the Owner. The Contract may include Contract Change Orders.

### **1.11 Contract Documents**

The "Contract Documents" consist of the Bidding Requirements, Contract Forms, Conditions of the Contract including General and/or Supplemental General Conditions, Special Provisions, the Technical Specifications, and the Drawings, including all Addenda and modifications thereafter incorporated into the Documents before execution and including all other requirements incorporated by specific reference thereto.

### **1.12 Contract Price**

The total monies payable by Owner to the Contractor under the terms and conditions of the Contract Documents.

### **1.13 Contract Time**

The number of calendar days stated in the Contract Documents for the completion of the Work.

### **1.14 Contractor**

The individual, partnership, firm, or corporation primarily liable for the acceptable performance of the Work contracted for and the payment of all legal debts pertaining to the Work who acts directly or through lawful agents or employees to complete the Contract Work.

### **1.15 Days**

Unless otherwise specifically stated, the term "days" will be understood to mean calendar days.



### **1.16 Drawings**

The term "Drawings," also described as "Plans," refers to the official drawings, profiles, cross sections, elevations, details, and other working drawings, and supplementary drawings, or reproductions thereof, which show the locations, character, dimensions, and details of the Work to be performed. Drawings may either be bound in the same book as the balance of the Contract Documents or bound in separate sets, and are a part of the Contract Documents, regardless of the method of binding.

### **1.17 Engineer**

The individual, partnership, firm, or corporation duly authorized by the Owner (sponsor) to be responsible for the Engineering of the contract Work and acting directly or through an authorized representative.

### **1.18 Field Order**

A written order effecting a change in the Work not involving an adjustment in the Contract Price or an extension of the Contract Time, issued by the Engineer to the Contractor during construction.

### **1.19 Final Acceptance**

Upon due notice from the Contractor of presumptive completion of the entire project, the Owner will make an inspection. If all construction provided for and contemplated by the contract is found completed to the Owner's satisfaction and all requirements of the contract have been met, that inspection shall constitute the final inspection and the Owner will make the final acceptance and issue the Certificate of Completion.

If, however, the inspection discloses any work, in whole or in part, as being unsatisfactory or that all requirements of the contract have not been met, the Owner will give the Contractor the necessary instructions for correction or completion, and the Contractor shall immediately comply with and execute the instructions. Upon correction of the work, completion of contract requirements, and notification to Owner, another inspection will be made which shall constitute the final inspection provided the work has been satisfactorily completed and all requirements of the contract met. In such event, the Owner will make the final acceptance and issue the Certificate of Completion.

### **1.20 Inspector**

An authorized representative of the Owner assigned to make all necessary inspections and/or tests of the Work performed or being performed, or of the materials furnished or being furnished by the Contractor.

### **1.21 Methodology and Quality of Workmanship**

The manner and sequence of construction which considered to be the acceptable standard in which to perform the Work.

### **1.22 Notice**

The term "notice" or the requirement to notify, as used in the Contract Documents or applicable State or Federal statutes, shall signify a written communication delivered in person or by certified or registered mail to the individual, or to a member of the firm, or to an officer of the corporation for whom it is intended. Certified or registered mail shall be addressed to the last business address known to him who gives the notice.

### **1.23 Notice of Award**

The written notice of the acceptance of the Bid from the Owner to the successful Bidder.

### **1.24 Notice to Proceed**

Written communication issued by the Owner to the Contractor authorizing him to proceed with the Work and establishing the date of commencement of the Work.

### **1.25 Or Equal**

The phrase "or equal" shall be understood to indicate that the "equal" product is the same or better than the product names in function, performance, reliability, quality, and general configuration. Determination of equality in reference to the project design requirements will be made by the Owner.

### **1.26 Owner**

The term "Owner" shall be understood to be Lake Havasu City, Arizona.

### **1.27 Payment Bond**

The approved form of security furnished by the Contractor and its surety as a guaranty that it will pay in full all bills and accounts for materials and labor used in the construction of Work.

### **1.28 Performance Bond**

The approved form of security furnished by the Contractor and its surety as a guarantee that the Contractor will complete the Work in accordance with the terms of the Contract and guarantee the Work for a period of one (1) year after the date of Certificate of Substantial Completion.

### **1.29 Plans**

Plans shall have the same meaning as "Drawings," see Section 1.16.

### **1.30 Project**

The undertaking to be performed as provided in the Contract Documents, see Section 1.11.

### **1.31 Proposal**

The offer of the Bidder for the Work when made out and submitted on the prescribed proposal form, properly signed and guaranteed.

### **1.32 Proposal Guarantee**

The cash, or cashier's check or certified check, or bidder's bond accompanying the Proposal submitted by the Bidder, as a guarantee that the Bidder will enter into a contract with the Owner for the construction or doing of the Work, if it is awarded to it, and will provide the contract bonds and insurance required.

### **1.33 Shop Drawings**

All drawings, diagrams, illustrations, brochures, schedules and other data which are prepared by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier or distributor, which illustrate how specific portions of the Work shall be fabricated or installed.

### **1.34 Specifications**

The directions, provisions and requirements pertaining to the method and manner of performing the Work or to the quantities and qualities of the materials to be furnished under the Contract, together with all other directions, provisions and requirements, plus such amendments, deletions from or additions which may be provided for by Supplemental Contract or Change Orders.

### **1.35 Subcontractor**

A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Contractor to perform any of the Work at the site. For convenience, the term Subcontractor is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and masculine in gender but includes the plural and feminine gender and includes a Sub-Subcontractor or an authorized representative thereof. The term Subcontractor does not include any separate Contractor or its Subcontractors.

### **1.36 Substantial Completion**

"Substantial Completion" shall be that degree of completion of the project or a defined portion of the project, sufficient to provide the Owner, at its discretion, the full-time use of the project or defined portion of the project for the purposes for which it was intended. "Substantial Completion" shall not be considered as final acceptance.

### **1.37 Supplemental General Conditions**

Modifications to General Conditions required by a Federal Agency for participation in the Project and approved by the agency for participation in the Project and approved by the agency in writing prior to inclusion in the Contract Documents and such requirements that may be imposed by applicable state laws. The term also includes modifications or additions to the General Conditions required by the Owner or Engineer.

### **1.38 Supplier**

Any person or organization who supplies materials or equipment for the Work, including that fabricated to a special design, but who does not perform labor at the site.

### **1.39 Surety**

The corporation, partnership, or individual, other than the Contractor, executing Payment, or Performance Bonds which are furnished to the Owner by the Contractor.

### **1.40 Work**

The word "Work" within these Contract Documents shall include all material, labor, tools, utilities, and all appliances, machinery, transportation, and appurtenances necessary to perform and complete the Contract, and such additional items not specifically indicated or described which can be reasonably inferred as belonging to the item described or indicated and as required by good practice to provide a complete and satisfactory system or structure.

### **1.41 Working Day**

A working day shall be any day, other than a legal holiday, Saturday or Sunday, on which the normal working forces of the Contractor may proceed with regular work.

## **2.0 NOTICE TO PROCEED**

**2.1** After the Owner has issued the Notice Of Award, the Contractor shall provide the Performance Bond, the Payment Bond, the Certificate Of Insurance, the Work Schedule, the monthly cash flow, and a signed Contract within ten (10) calendar days. The Owner's attorney will review each document and, if they are found to be acceptable, the Owner will sign and

execute the Contract. Within a period of sixty (60) calendar days after executing the Contract, the Owner will issue the Notice To Proceed. Within ten (10) calendar days of the postmark date of the Notice To Proceed, the Work shall commence. The Contractor shall not commence any Work until such time that the Notice To Proceed has been issued.

### **3.0 ADDITIONAL INSTRUCTIONS AND DETAIL DRAWINGS**

**3.1** The Engineer may furnish additional instructions to the Contractor by means of Drawings or otherwise, during the progress of the Work as necessary to make clear or to define in greater detail the intent of the Specifications and Contract Drawings.

The additional drawings and instruction thus supplied will become a part of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall carry out the Work in accordance with the additional detail drawings and instructions.

### **4.0 SCHEDULES, REPORTS AND RECORDS**

**4.1** The Contractor shall submit to the Owner payrolls, reports, estimates, records and other data where applicable as are required by the Contract Documents for the Work to be performed.

**4.2** The Contractor, after the Contract award and prior to the Pre-Construction Conference, shall prepare for submittal to the Engineer for review, a detailed progress schedule. The progress schedule shall be brought up to date and submitted to the Engineer prior to each progress payment request, and at such other time intervals as the Engineer may request.

#### **A. Progress Schedule**

The schedule shall be a time-scaled critical path progress schedule showing in detail the proposed sequence of activity. The critical path analysis shall consist of a graphic network diagram and shall clearly show start and completion dates and percentage of work completed.

**4.3** The Contractor shall also forward to the Engineer, prior to each progress payment request, an itemized report of the delivery status of major and critical items of purchased equipment and material, including Shop Drawings and the status of shop and field fabricated work. These progress reports shall indicate the date of the purchase order, the current percentage of completion, estimated delivery, and cause of delay, if any.

**4.4** If the completion of any part of the Work or the delivery of materials is behind the approved schedule, the Contractor shall submit in writing a plan acceptable to the Engineer for bringing the Work up to schedule.

**4.5** The Owner shall have the right to withhold progress payments for the Work if the Contractor fails to update and submit the progress schedule and reports as specified, and such withholding shall not constitute grounds for additional claims by the Contractor against the Owner.

**4.6** The Contractor shall submit an estimated monthly cash flow, based upon the progress schedule with the bonds, schedules, and Certificate Of Insurance.

## **5.0 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATONS**

**5.1** The intent of the Drawings and Specifications is that the Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, tools, equipment, utilities, and transportation necessary for the proper execution of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and all incidental work necessary to complete the Project in an acceptable quality and manner, ready for use, occupancy or operation by the Owner.

**5.2** In case of conflict between the Drawings and Specifications, the Specifications shall govern. Figure dimensions on Drawings shall govern over scale dimensions, and detailed Drawings shall govern over general Drawings.

**5.3** Any discrepancies found between the Drawings and Specifications and site conditions or any inconsistencies or ambiguities in the Drawings or Specifications shall be immediately reported verbally and within 24 hours of such a discovery, in writing to the Engineer, who shall promptly correct such inconsistencies or ambiguities in writing. Work done by the Contractor after his discovery of such discrepancies, inconsistencies or ambiguities shall be done at the Contractor's risk, and the Contractor shall assume full responsibility therefor and shall bear all costs attributable thereto, if not acceptable to the Owner.

## **6.0 SHOP DRAWINGS**

**6.1** The Contractor shall provide seven (7) copies of the Shop Drawings as specified or as may be necessary for the prosecution of the Work as required by the Contract Documents. All drawings and schedules shall be submitted sufficiently in advance to allow the Engineer not less than 20 regular working days for checking the submittal. The Engineer's approval of any Shop Drawings shall not release the Contractor from responsibility for deviations from the Contract Documents.

**6.2** When submitted for the Engineer's review, Shop Drawings shall bear the Contractor's certification by means of a signed Stamp, that he has reviewed, checked and approved the Shop Drawings and that they are in conformance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. Shop Drawings, which in the opinion of the Engineer are incomplete or unchecked by the Contractor, will be returned to the Contractor for resubmission in the proper form.

If Shop Drawings or submittals are rejected by the Engineer, all costs incurred by the Engineer Or The Owner for reviewing the resubmittals shall be charged to the Contractor, and the Owner has the right to deduct such costs from any monies owed the Contractor by the Owner.

**6.3** When Shop Drawings have been reviewed by the Engineer, two sets of submittals will be returned to the Contractor appropriately stamped. If major changes or corrections are necessary, the Shop Drawing may be rejected and one set will be returned to the Contractor with such

changes or corrections indicated, and the Contractor shall correct and resubmit the Shop Drawings. No changes shall be made by the Contractor to resubmitted Shop Drawings other than those changes indicated by the Engineer, unless such changes are clearly described in a letter accompanying the resubmitted Shop Drawings.

**6.4** The review of such Shop Drawings and catalog cuts by the Engineer shall not relieve the Contractor from responsibility for corrections of dimensions, fabrication details, and space requirements, or for deviations from the Contract Drawings or Specifications, unless the Contractor has called attention to such deviations in writing by a letter accompanying the Shop Drawings and the Engineer approves the change or deviation in writing at the time of submission; nor shall review by the Engineer relieve the Contractor from the responsibility for errors in the Shop Drawings. When the Contractor does call such deviations to the attention of the Engineer, the Contractor shall state in his letter whether or not such deviations involve any deduction or extra cost adjustment.

**6.5** Portions of the Work requiring a Shop Drawing or sample submission shall not begin until the Shop Drawing or submission has been approved by the Engineer. A copy of each approved Shop Drawing and each approved sample shall be kept in good order by the Contractor at the site and shall be available to the Engineer.

## **7.0 RECORD DRAWINGS**

**7.1** During construction, the Contractor shall keep an accurate record of the following:

- A. Deviations between the Work as shown on the Plans and the Work as actually installed.
- B. The specific locations of piping, valves, electric conduits, duct work, equipment, and other such work which was not located on the Plans. The Record Drawings shall show distances to these locations from known points on the Plans.
- C. Equipment schedules indicating manufacturer's names and model numbers. When all revisions showing work as installed are made, the corrected set of plans shall be delivered to the Engineer before the final pay request is processed. These plans shall be clearly marked "Record Drawings."

**7.2** Nothing contained in this section shall be construed as authorizing any deviation in the Work as shown on the Contract Drawings without a written Change Order or written authority to the Contractor from the Engineer.

## **8.0 MATERIALS, SERVICES, AND FACILITIES**

**8.1** It is understood that, except as otherwise specifically stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for all materials, labor, tools, equipment, water, light, power, transportation, supervision, temporary construction of any nature, and all other services and facilities of any nature whatsoever necessary to execute, complete, and deliver the Work within

the specified time.

**8.2** The Contractor shall furnish the Owner a list of materials and the source of supply of each of the materials on the list. The source of supply of each of the materials shall be approved by the Owner before the delivery of said materials is started. Only materials conforming to these Specifications and approved by the Owner shall be used in the Work. All materials proposed for use may be inspected or tested at any time during their preparation and use. After trial, if it is found that sources of supply which have been approved do not furnish a uniform product, or if the product from any source proves unacceptable at any time, the Contractor shall furnish approved material from other approved sources. No material which, after approval, has in any way become unfit for use shall be used in the Work.

**8.3** The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Engineer that the materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be new and of a quality equal to that specified or approved and, that all Work will be of good quality, free from faults and defects and in conformance with the Contract Documents. Mechanical and electrical equipment shall be the products of manufacturers of established good reputations and regularly engaged in the fabrication of such equipment. Unless otherwise noted, any equipment offered shall be current models which have been in successful regular operation under comparable conditions for a period of at least two years. This time requirement, however, does not apply to minor details nor to thoroughly demonstrated improvements in design or in material of construction. Work shall be done and completed in a thorough and workmanlike manner and if required by Engineer, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment used.

**8.4** All materials which the Engineer or its authorized Inspector has determined do not conform to the requirements of the Plans and Specifications will be rejected. They shall be removed immediately from the vicinity of the Work by the Contractor at his own expense, unless otherwise permitted by the Engineer. No rejected material, the defects of which have been subsequently corrected, shall be used in the Work, unless approval in writing has been given by the Engineer. Upon failure of the Contractor to comply promptly with any order of the Engineer made under the provisions in this section, the Engineer shall have authority to cause the removal and replacement of rejected material and to deduct the cost thereof from any monies due or to become due the Contractor.

**8.5** If any part or portions of the Work done or material furnished under this Contract shall prove defective or non-conforming with the Drawings and Specifications, and if the imperfection in the same shall not be of sufficient magnitude or importance as to make the Work dangerous or unsuitable, or if the removal of such Work will create conditions which are dangerous or undesirable, the Engineer shall have the right and authority to retain such Work but shall make such deductions in the final payment therefor as may be just and reasonable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

**8.6** Materials and equipment shall be so stored as to insure the preservation of their quality and fitness for the Work. Stored materials and equipment to be incorporated in the Work shall



be located so as to facilitate prompt inspection.

**8.7** Manufactured articles, materials and equipment shall be applied, installed, connected, erected, used, cleaned and conditioned as directed by the manufacturer.

**8.8** Materials, supplies or equipment to be incorporated into the Work shall not be purchased by the Contractor or the Subcontractor subject to a chattel mortgage or under a conditional sale contract or other Contract by which an interest is retained by the seller.

## **9.0 INSPECTION AND TESTING**

**9.1** All material and equipment used in the construction of the Project shall be subject to adequate inspection and testing in accordance with generally accepted standards, as required and defined in the Contract Documents.

**9.2** The Owner shall provide all inspection and testing services not required by the Contract Documents.

**9.3** The Contractor shall provide at its expense the testing and inspection services required by the Contract Documents.

**9.4** If the Contract Documents, laws, ordinances, rules, regulations or orders of any public authority having jurisdiction require any Work to specifically be inspected, tested, or approved by someone other than the Contractor, the Contractor will give the Engineer timely notice of readiness, the minimum of which shall be forty-eight (48) hours. The Contractor will then furnish the Engineer the required certificates of inspection, testing or approval.

**9.5** Inspections, tests or approvals by the Engineer or others shall not relieve the Contractor from its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**9.6** The Engineer and its representatives will at all times have access to the Work. In addition, authorized representatives and agents of any participating Federal or State agency shall be permitted to inspect all Work, materials, payrolls, records of personnel, invoices of materials, and other relevant data and records. The Contractor will provide proper facilities for such access and observation of the Work and also for any inspection, or testing thereof.

**9.7** If any Work is covered contrary to the written instructions of the Engineer or prior to inspection, if must, if requested by the Engineer, be uncovered for his observation and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

**9.8** If the Engineer considers it necessary or advisable that Work that has already been approved be inspected or tested by the Engineer or others, the Contractor, at the Engineer's request, will uncover, expose or otherwise make available for observation, inspection or testing as the Engineer may require, that portion of the Work in question, furnishing all necessary labor,

materials, tools, and equipment. If it is found that such Work is defective, the Contractor will bear all the expenses of such uncovering, exposure, observation, inspection and testing and of satisfactory reconstruction. If, however, such Work is not found to be defective, the Contractor will be allowed an increase in the Contract Price or an extension of the Contract Time, or both, directly attributable to such uncovering, exposure, observation, inspection, testing and reconstruction and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued.

## **10.0 SUBSTITUTIONS**

**10.1** Whenever a material, article or piece of equipment is identified on the Drawings or Specifications by reference to brand name or catalogue number, it shall be understood that this is referenced for the purpose of defining the performance or other salient requirements and that other products of equal capacities, quality and function shall be considered. The Contractor may recommend the substitution of a material, article, or piece of equipment of equal substance and function for those referred to in the Contract Documents by reference to brand name or catalogue number, and if, in the opinion of the Engineer, such material, article, or piece of equipment is of equal substance and function to that specified, the Engineer may approve its substitution and use by the Contractor. Any cost differential shall be deductible from the Contract Price and the Contract Documents shall be appropriately modified by Change Order. The Contractor warrants that if substitutes are approved, no major changes in the function or general design of the Project will result. Incidental changes or extra component parts required to accommodate the substitute will be made by the Contractor without a change in the Contract Price or Contract Time. Any substitutions not properly approved and authorized by the Engineer may be considered defective and the Engineer may require the Contractor to remove the substituted material, article or piece of equipment and the Contractor shall bear any and all costs associated with the removal of the substituted item, including all engineering, inspection, testing or surveying costs incurred by the Owner or the Engineer.

**10.2** Determination of equality in reference to the project design requirements will be made by the Owner. "Equal" products shall not be purchased or installed by the Contractor without the Owner's written approval. Contractor shall have fourteen (14) days after issuance of Notice to Proceed for submission of data substantiating a request for substitution of an "or equal" item.

## **11.0 PATENTS**

**11.1** The Contractor shall pay all applicable royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend all suits or claims for infringement of any patent rights and indemnify and hold the Owner and Engineer harmless from loss on account thereof, except that the Owner shall be responsible for any such loss when a particular process, design, or the product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is specified, however if the Contractor has reason to believe that the design, process or product specified is an infringement of a patent, it shall be responsible for such loss unless it promptly gives such information to the Engineer.

## **12.0 SURVEYS, PERMITS, REGULATIONS**

**12.1** The Owner shall furnish all boundary surveys and establish all base lines for locating the principal component parts of the Work together with a suitable number of bench marks adjacent to the Work as shown in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall satisfy itself as to the accuracy of all measurements before constructing any permanent structure and shall not take advantage of any errors which may have been made in laying out the Work. From the information provided by the Owner, unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall develop and make all detail surveys needed for construction such as slope stakes, batter boards, stakes for pile locations and other working points, lines, elevations and cut sheets.

**12.2** Such stakes and markings as the Engineer may set for either its own or the Contractor's guidance shall be scrupulously preserved by the Contractor. In the event the Contractor, or its employees, destroy or otherwise remove or obliterate such stakes or markings, an amount equal to the cost of replacing the same may be deducted from subsequent estimates due the Contractor at the discretion of the Owner.

**12.3** Permits and licenses of a temporary nature necessary for the prosecution of the Work shall be secured and paid for by the Contractor unless otherwise stated in the Supplemental General Conditions. Permits, licenses and easements for permanent structures or permanent changes in existing facilities shall be secured and paid for by the Owner, unless otherwise specified. The Contractor shall give all notices and comply with all laws, ordinances, rules and regulations bearing on the conduct of the Work as drawn and specified. If the Contractor perceives that the Contract Documents are at variance therewith, he shall promptly notify the Engineer in writing, and any necessary changes shall be adjusted as provided in Section 16. Changes In The Work. If the Contractor performs and works knowing it to be contrary to such laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, and without such notice to the Engineer, he shall assume full responsibility therefore and shall bear all costs attributable thereto.

### **13.0 PROTECTION OF WORK, PROPERTY AND PERSONS**

**13.1** The Contractor shall have sole responsibility for initiating, maintaining and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work. The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions for the safety of, and shall provide the necessary protection to prevent damage, injury or loss to, all employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby, all the Work and all materials or equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, and other property at the site or adjacent thereto, including trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, utilities and other items not designated for removal, relocation or replacement in the course of construction.

**13.2** The Contractor shall comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules, regulations and orders of any public body having jurisdiction. The Contractor shall erect and maintain, as required by the conditions and progress of the Work, all necessary safeguards for safety and protection. The Contractor shall notify Owners of adjacent utilities when prosecution of the Work may affect them. The Contractor shall remedy all damage, injury or loss to any property caused, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, by the Contractor, any Subcontractor or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them or anyone for whose acts any of them be liable, except damage or loss

attributable to the fault of the Contract Documents or to the acts or omissions of the Owner or the Engineer or anyone employed by either of them or anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, to the fault or negligence of the Contractor.

**13.3** In emergencies affecting the safety of persons or the Work or property at the site or adjacent thereto, the Contractor, without special instruction or authorization from the Engineer or Owner, shall act to prevent threatened damage, injury or loss. He shall give the Engineer prompt Written Notice of any significant changes in the Work or deviations from the Contract Documents caused thereby, and a Change Order shall thereupon be negotiated and issued covering the changes and deviations involved, as provided in Section 16.0, Changes in the Work.

**13.4** The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of its organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents and the safety of all those at the site. The person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and the Engineer. The Engineer will not be responsible for safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work or for the Contractor's failure to properly perform its responsibilities with respect to initiating, maintaining and supervising all safety precautions and programs.

#### **14.0 PUBLIC SAFETY**

**14.1** Whenever the Contractor's operations create a condition hazardous to traffic or to the public, it shall furnish at its own expense, and without cost to the Owner, such flagmen and guards as are necessary to give adequate warning to the public of any dangerous conditions to be encountered and he shall furnish, erect, and maintain such fences, barricades, lights, signs, and other devices as are necessary to prevent accidents and avoid damage or injury to the public.

**14.2** Should the Contractor appear to be neglectful or negligent in furnishing warning and protective measures as above provided, the Engineer may direct attention to the existence of a hazard and the necessary warning and protective measures shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor at its own expense without cost to the Owner. Should the Engineer point out the inadequacy of warning and protective measures, such action on the part of the Engineer shall not relieve the Contractor from responsibility for public safety or abrogate his obligation to furnish and pay for these devices.

**14.3** Should the Contractor fail to, be neglectful, or be negligent in furnishing or maintaining warning and protective facilities as required herein, the Owner may furnish or maintain such facilities and charge Contractor therefor by deducting the cost thereof from periodic progress payments due the Contractor as such costs are incurred by Owner.

**14.4** No material or equipment shall be stored where it will interfere with the free and safe passage of public traffic, and at the end of each day's Work and at other times when construction operations are suspended for any reason, the Contractor shall remove all equipment and other obstructions from that portion of the right-of-way open for use by public traffic.

## **15.0 SUPERVISION BY CONTRACTOR**

**15.1** The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using its best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for the means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures of construction. The Contractor shall employ and maintain on the Work a qualified supervisor or superintendent who shall have been designated in writing by the Contractor as the Contractor's representative at the site, and who shall have been approved by the Engineer, which approval shall not be unreasonably withheld. The supervisor shall have full authority to act on behalf of the Contractor and all communications given to and by the supervisor shall be as binding as if given to and by the Contractor. The supervisor shall be present on the site at all times. The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for the acts and omissions of the employees, subcontractors, and the agents and employees, and other persons performing any other Work under the Contract with the Contractor.

## **16.0 CHANGES IN THE WORK**

**16.1** The Owner may at any time, as the need arises, order changes within the scope of the Work without invalidating the Contract. If such changes increase or decrease the amount due under the Contract Documents, or in the time required for performance of the Work, an equitable adjustment shall be authorized by Change Order.

**16.2** The Engineer, also, may at any time, by issuing a Field Order, make changes in the details of the Work. The Contractor shall proceed with the performance of any changes in the Work so ordered by the Engineer unless the Contractor believes that such Field Order entitles him to a change in Contract Price or Time, or both, in which event he shall give the Engineer Written Notice thereof within seven (7) days after the receipt of the ordered change. Thereafter the Contractor shall document the basis for the change in Contract Price or Time within fourteen (14) days. The Contractor shall not execute such changes pending the receipt of an executed Change Order or further instruction from the Owner.

**16.3** If the Contractor wishes to make a claim for an increase in the Contract sum, it shall give the Engineer written notice thereof within fourteen (14) days after the occurrence of the event giving rise to such claim. This notice shall be given by the Contractor before proceeding to execute the Work, except in an emergency endangering life or property, in which case Contractor shall proceed in accordance with the provisions of the Contract. No such claim shall be valid unless so made. If the Owner and Contractor cannot agree on the amount of adjustment in the Contract sum, it shall be determined by the Engineer. Any change in the Contract sum resulting from such claim shall be authorized in a Change Order.

**16.4** The value of any Work covered by a Change Order shall be determined by one or more of the following methods in the order of precedence listed below:

- A. Unit prices previously approved.
- B. An agreed lump sum.

C. Cost plus percentage.

## **17.0 TIME FOR COMPLETION AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES**

**17.1** The date of beginning and the time for completion of the Work are essential conditions of the Contract Documents and the Work embraced shall be commenced on a date specified in the Notice To Proceed.

**17.2** The Contractor shall proceed with the Work at such rate of progress to insure full completion within the Contract Time. It is expressly understood and agreed, by and between the Contractor and the Owner, that the Contract Time for the completion of the Work described herein is a reasonable time, taking into consideration the average climatic and economic conditions and other factors prevailing in the locality of the Work.

**17.3** The Contractor shall only work an eight (8) hour day consisting of Monday through Friday, between 6:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m., and do not include local municipal holidays. If the Contractor desires to carry on Work more than eight (8) hours each day, or work at night or outside the regular hours, it shall give timely notice (72 hours) to the Engineer and receive the Owner's written approval to allow satisfactory arrangements to be made for inspecting the Work in progress. Should the prosecution of the Work be discontinued for any reason, the Contractor shall notify the Engineer at least 24 hours in advance of resuming operations. The Contractor shall be responsible for any extra compensation due or costs incurred as a result of Contractor's desire to carry out Work beyond an eight (8) hour day, or at night or outside regular hours, including but not limited to, any additional costs or compensation due the Engineer And Owner or its employees or agents as a result of having to be present at the site. The costs or extra compensation necessitated by the Contractor's Work beyond an eight (8) hour day, or at night or outside regular business hours may be deducted or withheld from progress payment or any other payments due to Contractor.

**17.4** If for any reason a suspension of the work should occur; the Contractor, at its own expense, shall do all the Work necessary to provide a safe, smooth and unobstructed passageway through construction for use by public traffic or to provide for the proper and efficient operation of sewer, drainage and other facilities within the site of the Work, during the period of such suspension. In the event that the Contractor fails to perform the Work specified in this Subsection, the Owner will perform such Work and the cost thereof will be deducted from periodic progress payments due the Contractor.

**17.5** During inclement weather and other conditions, the Contractor shall pursue only such portions of the Work as shall not be damaged thereby. No portions of the Work which satisfactory quality or efficiency will be affected by an unfavorable condition shall be constructed while these conditions remain, unless by special means or precautions, approved by the Engineer, the Contractor is able to overcome them.

**17.6** Delays in delivery of equipment or material purchased by the Contractor or its Subcontractor, including Engineer-selected equipment, shall not be considered as a just cause for

delay as this is not beyond the control of the Contractor. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for the timely ordering, scheduling, expediting, delivery, and installation of all equipment and materials.

**17.7** In case of failure on the part of the Contractor to complete the Work within the time affixed in the Contract, or such extension thereof as may be allowed by Engineer or Owner, the Contract shall by that fact be terminated by written notice. The Owner shall not thereafter pay or allow the Contractor any further compensation for any Work done by it under said Contract, and the Contractor and its sureties shall be liable to the Owner for all loss or damage which it may suffer by reason of his failure to complete the Contract within such time. Failure to prosecute the Work diligently shall be grounds for termination by the Owner pursuant to this paragraph.

In the event the Contract should be terminated, the Owner shall have the right to take over the Work and to proceed with the same until it is completed, either by performing said Work itself directly or by contracting it out to some other person or persons, and in such event the Owner may take possession of and utilize, in completing the Work, such materials, appliances and plant as may be on the site of the Work and necessary for its completion. Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to limit the right of the Owner in the event of any breach of Contract by the Contractor; but all rights herein given to the Owner are and shall be deemed to be additional to any other rights or remedies which the Owner shall have under any provision of law.

**17.8** Should the Contractor fail to complete the Work, or any part thereof, in the time agreed upon in the Contract or within such extra time as may have been allowed for delays by extensions granted as provided in the Contract, the Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the additional expense and damage for each calendar day that the Contract remains uncompleted after the Contract completion date. It is agreed that the amount of such additional expense and damage incurred by reason of failure to complete the Work is the per diem rate, as stipulated in Section 15, Information For Bidders, plus any costs incurred by the Engineer including, but not limited to: the Engineer's costs for additional inspection, testing or surveying as a result of the Contractor's failure to complete the Work in the time agreed upon. The said amounts are agreed upon as liquidated damages for the loss to the Owner on account of expense due to the employment of Engineers, inspectors, and other employees after the expiration of the time of completion, and on account of the value of the operation of the Works dependent thereon. It is expressly understood and agreed that this amount is not to be considered in the nature of a penalty, but as liquidated damages which have accrued against the Contractor. The Owner shall have the right to deduct such damages from any amount due, or that may become due the Contractor, or the amount of such damages shall be due and collectible from the Contractor or its Surety.

**17.9** The Contractor shall not be charged with liquidated damages or any excess costs when the delay in completion of the Work is due to any of the reasons set forth below provided the Contractor has given Written Notice of the delay within three (3) days of the occurrence of the cause of the delay to the Owner or Engineer. In the event notice is not given as provided, liquidated damages may be assessed.

A. To unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the

Contractor, including but not restricted to: acts of God, or of the public enemy, acts of the Owner, acts of another Contractor in the performance of a separate contract with the Owner, fires, floods, epidemics, quarantine restrictions, strikes, freight embargoes, and abnormal and unforeseeable weather.

## **18.0 CORRECTION OF WORK**

**18.1** The Contractor shall promptly correct all work rejected by the engineer as defective or as failing to conform to the contract documents, whether observed before or after substantial completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Contractor shall bear all costs of correcting such rejected work, including compensation for the engineer's additional services made necessary thereby. Contractor shall also bear the costs of making good all work of the Owner or separate Contractor destroyed or damaged by such correction or removal.

**18.2** All removal and replacement work shall be done at the Contractor's expense. If the Contractor does not take action to remove such rejected work within ten (10) days after receipt of Written Notice, the Owner may remove such work and store the materials at the expense of the Contractor, including compensation for the engineer's additional services made necessary thereby.

## **19.0 SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS**

**19.1** The Contractor shall promptly, and before such conditions are disturbed, except in the event of an emergency, notify the Owner by Written Notice of:

- A. Subsurface or latent physical conditions at the site differing materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents; or
- B. Unknown physical conditions at the site, of an unusual nature, differing materially from those ordinarily encountered and generally recognized as inherent in Work of the character provided for in the Contract Documents.

**19.2** The Owner shall promptly investigate the conditions, and if it finds that such conditions do so materially differ and cause an increase or decrease in the cost of, or in the time required for, performance of the Work, an equitable adjustment shall be made and the Contract Documents shall be modified by a Change Order. Any claim of the Contractor for adjustment hereunder shall not be allowed unless he has given the required Written Notice; provided that the Owner may, if he determines the facts so justify, consider and adjust any such claims asserted before the date of final payment.

## **20.0 SUSPENSION OF WORK, TERMINATION AND DELAY**

**20.1** The Owner may suspend the Work or any portion thereof for a period of not more than ninety (90) days or such further time as agreed upon by the Contractor, by Written Notice to the Contractor and the Engineer which notice shall fix the date on which Work shall be resumed. The



Contractor shall resume that Work on the date so fixed. The Contractor shall be allowed an increase in the Contract Price or an extension of the Contract Time, or both, directly attributable to any suspension.

**20.2** In addition to any other reasons for termination provided in the Contract, the Contractor shall be considered in default of the Contract and such default will be considered as cause for the Owner to terminate the Contract for any of the following reasons if the Contractor:

- A. Fails to begin the Work under the Contract within the time specified in the "Notice To Proceed," or
- B. Fails to perform the Work or fails to provide sufficient workers, equipment or materials to assure completion of Work in accordance with the terms of the Contract, or
- C. Performs the Work unsuitably or neglects or refuses to remove materials or to perform such new Work as may be rejected as unacceptable and unsuitable, or
- D. Discontinues the prosecution of the Work, or
- E. Fails to resume Work which has been discontinued within a reasonable time after notice to do so, or
- F. Becomes insolvent or is declared bankrupt, or commits any act of bankruptcy or insolvency, or
- G. Allows any final judgment to stand against him unsatisfied for a period of 10 days, or
- H. Makes an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or acceptable manner, or
- I. Is otherwise in breach of the Contract and has failed to remedy the breach within ten (10) days of written notice of the existence of such breach, or
- J. Fails to provide safe conditions for its workers and/or the general public.

Should the Owner consider the Contractor in default of the Contract for any reason above, he shall immediately give Written Notice to the Contractor and the Contractor's surety as to the reasons for considering the Contractor in default and the Owner's intentions to terminate the Contract.

If the Contractor or Surety, within a period of 10 days after Written Notice, does not proceed in accordance therewith, then the Owner shall have, upon written notification of the facts of such delay or neglect, the power and authority without violating the Contract, to take the prosecution of the Work out of the hands of the Contractor. The Owner may appropriate or use any or all

materials and equipment that have been mobilized for use in the Work and are acceptable and may enter into an Contract for the completion of said Contract according to the terms and provisions thereof, or use such other methods as in the opinion of the Owner will be required for the completion of said Contract in an acceptable manner.

All costs and charges incurred by the Owner, together with the cost of completing the Work under Contract, will be deducted from any monies due or which may come due the Contractor. If such expense exceeds the sum which would have been payable under the Contract, then the Contractor and the Surety shall pay to the Owner the amount of such excess.

**20.3** Where Contractor's services have been so terminated by Owner, the termination will not affect any rights or remedies of Owner against Contractor then existing or which may thereafter accrue. Any retention or payment of monies due Contractor by Owner will not release Contractor from liability.

**20.4** Upon seven days Written Notice to Contractor and Engineer, Owner may, without cause and without prejudice to any other right or remedy of Owner, elect to terminate the Contract. In such case, Contractor shall be paid (without duplication of any items):

**20.4.1** for completed and acceptable Work executed in accordance with the Contract Documents prior to the effective date of termination, including fair and reasonable sums for overhead and profit on such work;

**20.4.2** for expenses sustained prior to the effective date of termination in performing services and furnishing labor, materials or equipment as required by the Contract Documents in connection with uncompleted Work, plus fair and reasonable sums for overhead on such expenses;

**20.4.3** for reasonable costs incurred in settlement of terminated contracts with Subcontractors, Suppliers and others; and

**20.4.4** for reasonable expenses directly attributable to termination.

Contractor shall not be paid on account of loss of anticipated profits or revenue or other economic loss arising out of or resulting from such termination.

**20.5** If the Work should be stopped under an order of any court or other public authority for a period of more than ninety (90) days, through no act or fault of the Contractor or of anyone employed by him, or if the Owner should fail to pay the Contractor within 45 days after the time specified in the Payments To Contractor, Section 22.0, then the Contractor may, upon 15 days Written Notice to the Owner, stop Work until payment of the amount owing has been received.

**20.6** The Owner may terminate the Contract or a portion thereof if conditions encountered during the progress of the Work make it impossible or impracticable to proceed with the Work or a local or national emergency exists.

When Contracts, or any portion thereof, are terminated before completion of all Work in the Contract, adjustments in the amount bid for the pay items will be made on the actual quantity of Work performed and accepted, or as mutually agreed for pay items of Work partially completed or not started. No claim for loss of anticipated profits will be considered.

Termination of the Contract or any portion thereof shall not relieve the Contractor of its responsibilities for the completed work nor the surety of its obligation for and concerning any just claims arising out of the Work performed.

## **21.0 ISSUANCE OF NOTICE OF COMPLETION AND FINAL ACCEPTANCE BY OWNER**

**21.1** Upon completion of the Project, a Final Inspection shall be requested by the Contractor in writing and the Owner will make an inspection within seven (7) days. If all construction provided for and contemplated by the contract is found completed to his satisfaction, that inspection shall constitute the final inspection and the Owner will make the final acceptance and issue a Certificate Of Completion to the Contractor.

If, however, the inspection discloses any Work, in whole or in part, as being unsatisfactory, the Owner will give the Contractor the necessary instructions for correction of same, and the Contractor shall immediately comply with and execute such instructions. Upon correction of the Work, another inspection will be made which shall constitute the final inspection provided the Work has been satisfactorily completed. In such event, the Owner will make the final acceptance and issue a Certificate Of Completion to the Contractor.

## **22.0 PAYMENTS TO CONTRACTOR**

**22.1** In addition to any documents required by the Engineer to be submitted to Engineer at the time a partial pay estimate is submitted, including partial lien released as specified in Section 22.9 of the General Conditions, the Contractor shall, at least ten (10) days before each progress payment falls due (but not more often than once a month), submit to the Engineer a partial payment estimate filled out and signed by the Contractor covering the Work performed during the period covered by the partial payment estimate and supported by such data as the Engineer may reasonably require. If payment is requested on the basis of materials and equipment not incorporated in the Work, title to such materials and equipment shall vest in the Owner, and Contractor shall supply, at the time of submission of payment estimate, supporting documents satisfactory to the Owner, to establish and protect Owner's interest in the materials and equipment, and Contractor shall maintain appropriate insurance on same until such time as actual possession by the Owner of the materials and equipment shall occur. The Engineer will, within seven (7) days after receipt of each partial payment estimate, either indicate in writing his approval of payment and present the partial payment estimate to the Owner or return the partial payment estimate to the Contractor indicating in writing his reasons for refusing to approve payment. In the latter case, the Contractor may make the necessary corrections and resubmit the partial payment estimate. The Owner will, within fourteen (14) days of presentation to him of an approved partial payment estimate, pay the Contractor a progress payment on the basis of the approved partial payment estimate. The Owner shall retain ten (10) percent of the amount

of each payment until final completion and acceptance of all Work covered by the Contract Documents. When the Contract is fifty percent completed, one-half of the amount retained shall be paid to the Contractor provided the Contractor makes a written request for the payment and the Contractor is making satisfactory progress on the Contract and there is no specific cause or claim requiring a greater amount to be retained. After the Contract is fifty per cent completed, no more than five per cent of the amount of any subsequent progress payments made under the Contract may be retained providing the Contractor is making satisfactory progress on the project, except that if at any time the Owner determines satisfactory progress is not being made, ten per cent retention shall be reinstated for all progress payments made under the Contract subsequent to the determination.

**22.2** In lieu of ten percent (10%) retention provided for in paragraph 22.1, of this Article, the Owner shall, at the Contractor's option, accept as a substitute an assignment of any of the following:

- A. Time certificates of deposit of banks licensed by the State of Arizona; or
- B. Securities of or guaranteed by the United States of America; or
- C. Securities of the State of Arizona, or any county, municipality or school district thereof; or
- D. Shares of savings and loan institutions authorized to transact business in the State of Arizona.

Such assigned instruments shall have a face value in an amount equal to ten percent (10%) of the progress payment for which such instruments are tendered and shall be retained by the Owner as a guarantee for complete performance of the Contract.

In the event the Owner accepts substitute security as provided herein for the ten percent (10%) retention, the Contractor shall be entitled to all interest or income earned by such security, and all such security in lieu of retention shall be returned to the Contractor within sixty (60) days after final completion and acceptance of all material, equipment and work covered by the contract if the Contractor has furnished the Owner satisfactory receipts for all labor and material billed and waivers of liens from any and all persons holding claims against the work.

In no event shall the Owner accept a time certificate of deposit of a bank or shares of a savings and loan institution in lieu of the retention specified in paragraph 22.1 of this Article unless accompanied by a signed and acknowledged waiver of the bank or savings and loan institution of any right or power to set off against either the Owner or the Contractor in relationship to the certificates or shares assigned.

**22.3** The Contractor shall promptly pay each Subcontractor, upon receipt of payment from the Owner out of the amount paid to the Contractor on account of such Subcontractors' Work, the amount to which said Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting the percentage actually retained, if any,

from payments to the Contractor on account of such Subcontractors' Work. The Contractor shall, by an appropriate Contract with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to his Sub-subcontractors in similar manner.

**22.4** Prior to Substantial Completion, the Owner, with the approval of the Engineer and with the concurrence of the Contractor, may use any completed or substantially completed portions of the Work. Such use shall not constitute an acceptance of such portions of the Work.

**22.5** The Owner shall have the right to enter the premises for the purpose of doing Work not covered by the Contract Documents. This provision shall not be construed as relieving the Contractor of the sole responsibility for the care and protection of the Work, or the restoration of any damaged Work except such as may be caused by agents or employees of the Owner.

**22.6** Upon final completion and acceptance of the Work, the Engineer shall issue a certificate attached to the final payment request that the Work has been accepted under the conditions of the Contract Documents. No retention of payments may be delayed or retained without a specific written finding by the Engineer or Owner of the reasons justifying the delay in payment. The entire balance found to be due the Contractor, including the retained percentages, except the amount necessary to pay the expenses the Owner reasonably expected to incur in order to pay or discharge the expenses determined by the Engineer or Owner in the finding justifying the retention or delay, shall be paid to the Contractor, within sixty (60) days of completion or proper filing of the Notice of Completion.

**22.7** The Contractor shall indemnify and save the Owner or the Owner's agents harmless from all claims growing out of the lawful demands of Subcontractors, laborers, workmen, mechanics, materialmen, and furnishers of machinery and parts thereof, equipment, tools, and all supplies, incurred in the furtherance of the performance of the Work. The Contractor shall, at the Owner's request, furnish satisfactory evidence, in the form of lien releases or other documents deemed appropriate by the Owner, that all obligations of the nature designated above have been paid, discharged, or waived. If the Contractor fails to do so the Owner may, after having notified the Contractor, either pay unpaid bills or withhold from the Contractor's unpaid compensation a sum of money deemed reasonably sufficient to pay any and all such lawful claims until satisfactory evidence is furnished that all liabilities have been fully discharged whereupon payment to the Contractor shall be resumed, in accordance with the terms of the Contract Documents, but in no event shall the provisions of this sentence be construed to impose any obligations upon the Owner to either the Contractor, his Surety, or any third party. In paying any unpaid bills of the Contractor, any payment so made by the Owner shall be considered as a payment made under the Contract Documents by the Owner to the Contractor and the Owner shall not be liable to the Contractor for any such payments made in good faith.

**22.8** If any payment to Contractor is delayed after the date due, interest shall be paid at the rate of one percent per month or fraction of a month on such unpaid balance as may be due. If the Owner fails to make payment sixty (60) days after final completion and acceptance, in addition to other remedies available to the Contractor, interest shall be paid at the rate of one per cent per month or fraction of the month on such unpaid balance as may be due, except for that amount

necessary to pay the expenses the Owner reasonably expects to incur in order to pay or discharge the expense determined by the Engineer or Owner in the finding justifying the retention or delay.

**22.9** The Owner may require the Contractor to furnish partial releases or liens executed by all persons, firms and corporations who have furnished labor services or materials incorporated into the Work during the period of time for which the progress payment is due, releasing such lien rights as these persons, firms or corporations may have for that period.

### **23.0 ACCEPTANCE OF FINAL PAYMENT AS RELEASE**

**23.1** Following the Owner's acceptance of the Work, the Owner will issue a Notice of Completion to the Contractor. Sixty days after the issuing of the Notice of Completion, and upon receipt of the necessary Unconditional lien releases executed by all persons, firms and corporations who have furnished labor services or materials incorporated into the work evidencing that all liabilities have been fully discharged, the Owner will pay to the Contractor the entire sum so found to be due after deducting therefrom all previous payments and all amounts to be kept and all amounts to be retained under the provisions of the Contract. All previous prior partial estimates and payments shall be subject to correction in the final estimate and payment.

**23.2** The acceptance by the Contractor of final payment shall be and shall operate as a release to the Owner of all claims and all liability to the Contractor other than claims in stated amounts as may be specifically excepted by the Contractor for all things done or furnished in connection with this Work and for every act and neglect of the Owner and others relating to or arising out of this Work. Any payment, however, final or otherwise, shall not release the Contractor or his sureties from any obligations under the Contract Documents or the Performance Bond and Payment Bonds.

### **24.0 INSURANCE**

**24.1** The Contractor shall give special attention to Section 00500-A of the Bid Documents when preparing a bid, which outline the insurance requirements of Owner and the Contractor shall consider these insurance requirements part of the Bid/Contract documents.

The Contractor shall purchase and maintain such insurance as will protect him from claims set forth below which may arise out of or result from the Contractor's execution of the Work, whether such execution be by itself or by any Subcontractor or by anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable:

- A. Claims under worker's compensation, disability benefit and other similar employee benefit acts;
- B. Claims for damages because of bodily injury, occupational sickness or disease, or death of his employees;
- C. Claims for damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, or death of any

person other than his employees;

- D. Claims for damages insured by usual personal injury liability coverage which are sustained (1) by any person as a result of an offense directly or indirectly related to the employment of such person by the Contractor, or (2) by any other person; and
- D. Claims for damages because of injury to or destruction of tangible property, including loss of use resulting therefrom.

The Contractor is responsible to respond to claims arising as a result of its work. See Section 500-B for specific procedures.

**24.2** Certificates of Insurance acceptable to the Owner shall be filed with the Owner prior to commencement of the Work. These Certificates shall contain a provision that coverages afforded under the policies will not be canceled unless at least ten (10) days prior Written Notice has been given to the Owner, "Attention: Contract Administrator, 2330 McCulloch Boulevard North, Lake Havasu City, AZ, 86403".

**24.3** The Contractor shall procure and maintain, at its own expense, during the Contract Time, liability insurance as specified in Section 500-A, incorporated herein.

## **25.0 CONTRACT SECURITY**

**25.1** The Contractor shall within ten (10) days after the receipt of the Notice Of Award furnish the Owner with a Performance Bond and a Payment Bond in sums equal to the amount of the Contract PRICE, conditioned upon the performance by the Contractor of all undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions and Contracts of the Contract Documents, and upon the prompt payment by the Contractor to all persons supplying labor and materials in the prosecution of the Work provided by the Contract Documents. Such Bonds shall be executed by the Contractor and a corporate bonding company licensed to transact such business in the state in which the Work is to be performed and named on the current list of "Surety Companies Acceptable on Federal Bonds" as published in the Treasury Department Circular Number 570. The expense of these Bonds shall be borne by the Contractor. If at any time a surety on any such Bond is declared a bankrupt or loses its right to do business in the state in which the Work is to be performed or is removed from the list of Surety Companies accepted on Federal Bonds, Contractor shall within ten (10) days after notice from the Owner to do so, substitute an acceptable Bond (or Bonds) in such form and sum and signed by such other surety or sureties as may be satisfactory to the Owner. The premiums on such Bond shall be paid by the Contractor. No further payments shall be deemed due nor shall be made until the new surety or sureties shall have furnished an acceptable Bond to the Owner.

## **26.0 ASSIGNMENTS**

**26.1** Neither the Contractor nor the Owner shall sell, transfer, assign or otherwise dispose of the Contract or any portion thereof, or of his right, title or interest therein, or his obligations

thereunder, without written consent of the other party. Nor shall the Contractor assign any monies due or to become due to him hereunder without the previous written consent of the Owner.

**26.2** The Owner and Contractor each bind itself, its partners, successors and assigns and legal representatives to the other party hereto and to the partners, successors, assigns and legal representatives of such other party in respect to all covenants, Contracts and obligations contained in the Contract Documents.

**27.0 INDEMNIFICATION**



**27.1** Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless City, its officers and employees from and against any and all liabilities, damages, losses, and costs, including reasonable attorney's fees, but only to the extent caused by the negligence, recklessness, or intentional wrongful conduct of Contractor or other persons employed or used by the Contractor in the performance of this Contract. It is agreed that Contractor will be responsible for primary loss investigation, defense, and judgment costs where this indemnification is applicable.

**27.2** In any and all claims against the Owner or the Engineer, or any of their agents or employees, by any employee of the Contractor, any Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, the indemnification obligation shall not be limited in any way by any limitation on the amount or type of damages, compensation of benefits payable by or for the Contractor or any Subcontractor under worker's compensation acts, disability benefit acts or other employee benefits acts.

**27.3** The obligation of the Contractor under this paragraph shall not extend to the liability of the Engineer, his agents or employees arising out of the preparation or approval of maps, DRAWINGS, opinions, reports, surveys, Change Orders, designs or Specifications.

## **28.0 SEPARATE CONTRACTS**

**28.1** The Owner reserves the right to let other contracts in connection with this Project. The Contractor shall afford other Contractors reasonable opportunity for the introduction and storage of their materials and the execution of their Work, and shall properly connect and coordinate its Work with theirs. If the proper execution or results of any part of the Contractor's Work depends upon the Work of any other Contractor, the Contractor shall inspect and promptly report to the Engineer any defects in such Work that render it unsuitable for such proper execution and results.

**28.2** The Owner may perform additional Work related to the Project by itself, or it may let other contracts containing provisions similar to these. The Contractor shall afford the other Contractors who are parties to such Contracts (or the Owner, if he is performing the additional Work himself), reasonable opportunity for the introduction and storage of materials and equipment and the execution of Work, and shall properly connect and coordinate his Work with theirs.

**28.3** If the performance of additional Work by other Contractors or the Owner is not noted in the Contract Documents prior to the execution of the Contract, written notice thereof shall be given to the Contractor prior to starting any such additional Work. If the Contractor believes that the performance of such additional Work by the Owner or others involves it in additional expense or entitles him to an extension of the Contract Time, it may make a claim therefore as provided in Sections 16 and 17.

## **29.0 SUBCONTRACTING**

**29.1** The Contractor may utilize the services of specialty Subcontractors on those parts of the

Work which come under normal contracting practices or are typically performed by specialty Subcontractors, provided the Contractor, simultaneously with the delivery of the executed Contract, shall furnish to the Owner and the Engineer in writing the names of the persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for each of the principal portions of the Work. The engineer will promptly reply to the Contractor in writing stating whether or not the Owner or the Engineer, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity. Failure of the Owner or Engineer to promptly reply shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection. The Contractor shall not contract with any such proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Engineer has made reasonable objection and the Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom he has a reasonable objection. If the Owner or Engineer has a reasonable objection to any proposed person or entity, the Contractor shall submit a substitute to whom the Owner or the Engineer has no reasonable objection. The Contractor shall make no substitution for any Subcontractor, person or entity previously selected if the Owner or Engineer makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

**29.2** The Contractor shall not award Work to Subcontractor(s), in excess of forty-nine (49%) percent of the Contract Price, without prior written approval of the Owner.

**29.3** The Contractor shall be fully responsible to the Owner for the acts and omissions of its Subcontractors, and of persons either directly or indirectly employed by them, as it is for the acts and omissions of persons directly employed by it.

**29.4** The Contractor shall not employ any Subcontractors that are not properly licensed with Lake Havasu City and the State of Arizona. Changes of Subcontractors listed with the Proposal shall be made only with the approval of the Owner.

**29.5** Nothing contained in these Contract Documents shall be construed as creating any contractual relationship between any Subcontractor and the Owner; the Contractor shall be as fully responsible to the Owner for the acts and omissions of Subcontractors, and of persons employed by them, as he is for the acts and omissions of persons directly employed by him.

**29.6** The Contractor shall, without additional expense to the Owner, utilize the services of specialty Subcontractors on those parts of the Work which are specified or required by State or local laws to be performed by specialty Subcontractors.

**29.7** The Contractor shall be responsible for the coordination of all trades, Subcontractors, material and people engaged upon this Work. The Owner will not undertake to settle any differences between the Contractor and his Subcontractors or between Subcontractors.

**29.8** The Contractor shall cause appropriate provisions to be inserted in all subcontracts relative to the Work to bind Subcontractors to the Contractor by the terms of the Contract Documents insofar as applicable to the Work of Subcontractors and to give the Contractor the same power as regards terminating any subcontract that the Owner may exercise over the Contractor under any provision of the Contract Documents.

**29.9** Nothing contained in this Contract shall create any contractual relation between any Subcontractor and the Owner.

### **30.0 ENGINEER'S AUTHORITY**

**30.1** The Engineer shall act as the Owner's representative during the construction period. The Engineer shall decide questions which may arise as to quality and acceptability of materials furnished and Work performed and shall interpret the intent of the Contract Documents in a fair and unbiased manner. The Engineer will make periodic visits to the site and determine if the Work is proceeding in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**30.2** The Contractor will be held strictly to the intent of the Contract Documents in regard to the quality of materials, workmanship and execution of the Work. Inspections may be made at the factory or fabrication plant of the source of material supply.

**30.3** The Engineer shall not be responsible for the construction means, controls, techniques, sequences, procedures, or construction safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work and will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Engineer shall not be responsible or have control or charge over the acts or omissions of the Subcontractors, or any of their agents or employees, or any other person performing any of the Work.

**30.4** The Engineer shall promptly make decisions relative to interpretation of the Contract Documents.

**30.5** The Engineer will have the authority to reject Work which does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever, in its opinion, it is considered necessary or advisable for the implementation of the intent of the Contract Documents, the Engineer will have authority to require special inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with the other terms of this Contract whether or not such Work be then fabricated, installed or completed.

### **31.0 LAND AND RIGHTS-OF-WAY**

**31.1** Prior to issuance of Notice To Proceed, the Owner shall obtain all land and rights-of-way necessary for carrying out and for the completion of the Work to be performed pursuant to the Contract Documents, unless otherwise mutually agreed.

**31.2** The Owner shall provide to the Contractor information which delineates and describes the lands owned and rights-of-way acquired.

**31.3** The Contractor shall provide at its own expense and without liability to the Owner any additional land and access thereto that the Contractor may desire for temporary construction facilities, or for storage of materials.

## **32.0 GUARANTEE**

**32.1** Except as otherwise specified, all Work shall be guaranteed by the Contractor against defects resulting from the use of inferior materials, equipment, or workmanship for a period of one (1) year from the date the Certificate of Substantial Completion is issued by the Owner, or within such longer period of time as may be prescribed by law or by the terms of any applicable special guarantee required by the Contract Documents.

**32.2** If, within any guarantee period, repairs or changes are required in connection with guaranteed Work, which, in the opinion of the Owner, is rendered necessary as the result of the use of materials, equipment, or workmanship which are inferior, defective, or not in accordance with the terms of the Contract, the Contractor shall, promptly upon receipt of notice from the Owner, and without expense, (1) place in satisfactory condition in every particular all of such guaranteed Work, correcting all defects therein; (2) make good all damage to the building, site or Work, or equipment or contents thereof, which in the opinion of the Owner, is the result of the use of materials, equipment, or workmanship which are inferior, defective, or not in accordance with the terms of the contract; and (3) make good any Work or material, or the equipment and contents of said building, site or Work disturbed in fulfilling any such guarantee. If the Contractor, after notice, fails to proceed promptly to comply with the terms of the guarantee, the Owner may have the defects corrected and the Contractor and his surety shall be liable for all expense incurred. The Performance Bond shall remain in full force and effect through the guarantee period.

(THIS SPACE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK)

## **GUARANTEE**

The Contractor agrees to execute, and to cause each Subcontractor to execute, a written guarantee to the Owner, in substantially the following form:

GUARANTEE FOR:

We hereby guarantee, both jointly and severally, that the improvement which we have installed for the Owner of Project, specifically described as:

**New Laboratory Building, Project No. B25-PW-107032-500638**

has been done in accordance with the Contract Drawings and Specifications.

We agree, both jointly and severally, to repair and replace any or all Work included in said improvement, together with any other adjacent work which may be displaced or damaged by so doing, that may prove to be defective in its workmanship or material within a period of one year from date of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, ordinary wear and tear and unusual abuse or neglect accepted.

In the event of our failure to comply with the above mentioned conditions within a reasonable period of time (as determined by the Owner) after being notified in writing by the Owner, we both jointly and severally, do hereby authorize the Owner to proceed to have said defects repaired and made good at our expense, and we will honor and pay the costs and charges therefore upon demand.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_

Countersigned \_\_\_\_\_

Local Representative to be contacted for service:

Name \_\_\_\_\_

Address \_\_\_\_\_

Phone No. \_\_\_\_\_

FAX \_\_\_\_\_

The guarantee form(s) shall be completed and returned with the acknowledgement of the Certificate of Completion.

The failure of the Contractor or any Subcontractor to execute, such guarantee shall not affect the right of the Owner to rely on and enforce the guarantee and the obligations respectively assumed by the Contractor and each Subcontractor under Subparagraph 32.1 and 32.2 hereof.

### **33.0 ARBITRATION**

**33.1** Provided both parties mutually agree, all claims, disputes and other matters in question arising out of, or relating to, the Contract Documents or the breach thereof, except for claims which have been waived by the making and acceptance of final payment as provided by Section 23, may be decided by arbitration in accordance with the American Arbitration Association or any other similar body. The foregoing Contract to arbitrate shall be specifically enforceable under the prevailing arbitration law (Arizona Revised Statutes Sections 12-1501, *et seq.*) of the State of Arizona. The award rendered by the arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**33.2** Notice of the demand for arbitration shall be filed in writing with the other party to the Contract Documents and with the American Arbitration Association and a copy shall be filed with the Engineer. The party filing for arbitration may select which arbitration service to use. Demand for arbitration shall in no event be made on any claim, dispute or other matter in question which would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations.

**33.3** The Contractor shall carry on the Work and maintain the progress schedule during any arbitration proceedings, unless otherwise mutually agreed in writing.

**33.4** The provisions of the Contract pertaining to arbitration are not binding upon Engineer and Engineer cannot be compelled to participate against his will in an arbitration arising out of a dispute over the Contract or Contract Documents unless Engineer so consents in writing to be a party to the arbitration.

### **34.0 TAXES AND CHARGES**

**34.1** The Contractor shall pay all State and local sales and use taxes on items, and in a manner as required by the laws and statutes of the State of Arizona and its political subdivisions. The Contractor shall withhold and pay any and all withholding taxes, whether State or Federal, and pay all Social Security charges, State Unemployment Compensation charges, industrial insurance, workers' compensation charges, and pay or cause to be withheld, as the case may be, any and all taxes, charges, or fees, or sums whatsoever, which are now or may hereafter be required to be paid or withheld under any laws.

## **35.0 MISCELLANEOUS CONDITIONS**

**35.1** In the event that either party to the Contract is required to institute arbitration or litigation to enforce its rights under the terms of the Contract, then the prevailing party in the arbitration or litigation shall be entitled to recover all costs and attorney's fees incurred.

**35.2** In the event that any provision contained in the Contract is found to be contrary to the applicable law, then it shall be severed and the remaining provisions of the Contract shall remain in full force and effect.

**35.3** The Contract shall be governed by the laws of the State of Arizona.

## **36.0 CONFLICTS WITHIN THE PLANS OR SPECIFICATIONS**

**36.1** In the event that a conflict is discovered between sections of the Specifications or between the Plans and the Specifications, the following list of priority shall be used to resolve the conflict:

- A. Executed Change Orders
- B. Addenda
- C. Contract
- D. Special Provisions
- E. General Conditions
- F. Instructions to Bidders
- G. Technical Specifications
- H. Plans
- I. Referenced Standard Specifications or Other Documents

## **37.0 NONDISCRIMINATION**

**37.1** The Contractor, with regard to the work performed pursuant to this contract, shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, sex, religion, creed, age, physical or mental disability, or national origin or ancestry in any contracts with the public and in the selection and retention of employees or subcontractors, nor in the procurement of materials and leases of equipment.

## **38.0 INTEGRATION**

**38.1** This Contract represents the entire Contract between the parties hereto and supersedes any and all prior negotiations or representations, either written or oral.

**38.2** Amendments or modifications to the Contract shall be in writing, signed by both parties, or by Change Orders.

**38.3** The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create any contractual relationship of any kind between the Engineer and the Contractor, but the Engineer shall be entitled to performance of obligations intended for his benefit, and to the enforcement thereof.

## **39.0 HAZARD COMMUNICATION PROGRAM**

**39.1** All contractors working on City projects shall submit a copy of their hazard communication plan to the Fire Prevention Office prior to commencement of work on any project. This will ensure that other individuals on the job site are not unknowingly exposed to a hazardous substance or chemical.

The Fire Prevention Office shall be provided a list of the hazardous substances and the material safety data sheets that are applicable to the work areas of those contract employees.

All contract labor within City facilities will be treated the same as regular employees with regard to this hazard communication standard.

**\*\* END OF SECTION \*\***



# **LAKE HAVASU CITY**

## **SPECIAL PROVISIONS**

### **AND**

## **TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**

**New Laboratory Building, Project  
No. B25-PW-107032-500638**

SECTION 00800  
**SPECIAL PROVISIONS**

**1.0 SCOPE**

These Special Provisions supplement and modify the General Conditions, Technical Specifications, and Plans. All requirements and provisions of the General Conditions, Technical Specifications and Plans apply except where modified by these Special Provisions.

**2.0 DEFINITION OF TERMS**

Wherever in these documents the word "Engineer" appears, it shall be understood to mean Lake Havasu City Public Works Department, Engineering Division.

**3.0 PRECONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE**

Within ten (10) days after the Contract has been awarded, but before the start of construction, the Engineer will schedule a conference to be held at the site of the Project for the purpose of discussing such matters as Project supervision, onsite inspections, progress schedules and reports, payrolls, payments to Contractors, equal employment opportunity, contract change orders, insurance, safety, and any other items pertinent to the Project. The Contractor shall arrange to have all supervisory personnel connected with the Project on hand to meet with the representatives of the Owner and the Engineer.

**4.0 DRAWINGS OF RECORD**

Two sets of the Contract Documents are to be kept at the job site, maintained in good condition, and marked daily by the Contractor as the Work proceeds. The Contract Documents shall be kept available for inspection by the Owner at all times, and shall be kept up to date.

**5.0 SURVEYS**

The CONTRACTOR shall layout the WORK, in accordance with the drawings, shall establish all necessary lines, etc., required to complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The CONTRACTOR shall employ an experienced and competent Arizona Registered Land Surveyor (R.L.S.) satisfactory to the Owner to layout the WORK and to verify lines and elevations as the WORK progresses.

**6.0 WEATHER CONDITIONS**

In the event of temporary suspension of Work, or during inclement weather, or whenever the Owner shall direct, the Contractor will and will cause its Subcontractors to protect

carefully their Work and materials against damage or injury from the weather. If, in the opinion of the Owner, any Work or materials shall have been damaged or injured by reason of failure on the part of the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors to so protect its work, such materials shall be removed and replaced at the expense of the Contractor.

## **7.0 SUBMITTALS**

Prior to construction and as soon as possible, the Contractor shall supply all submittals required by the Technical Specifications or as requested by the Owner.

## **8.0 INSPECTION OF THE WORK**

The Owner intends to provide a full-time resident inspector for the Project. The resident inspector will be available for a forty (40) hour period during the week from Monday through Friday during the period of the Contract. In the event the Contractor elects to work outside the forty (40) hour week that occurs between Monday through Friday, such as Saturday, Sunday or legal holidays, in accordance with Article 17.0 of the General Conditions the Contractor will be responsible for all inspection, engineering, and testing costs incurred during that period. For any inspection work performed on Saturday, Sunday, or local municipal holidays the minimum chargeable time shall be four (4) hours. The Owner reserves the right to deduct these additional inspection, engineering, and testing costs directly from the Contractor's payments.

## **9.0 WATER AND POWER**

### **A. WATER**

Water is available from the Water Division at no cost to the Contractor. The Contractor shall make application and obtain a hydrant meter from the Water Division for the purpose of metering the use of water on the Project. The Contractor shall adhere to all conditions stated in the Meter Application, including payment of a deposit for the meter, return of the meter to the Water Division each month during the Project for reading, and notification to the Water Division prior to any change in the location of the hydrant meter. The maximum water to be drawn off a hydrant at any time is 200 gpm (water drawn from 4" hydrant whenever available). Water shall only be drawn off hydrants approved by the Lake Havasu City Water Superintendent or authorized representative.

### **B. POWER**

All power for lighting, operation of Contractor's plant or equipment or for any other use as may be required for proper completion of the Work to be performed under the provisions of these Contract Documents, shall be provided by the Contractor at its sole cost and expense.

## **10.0 BURNING OF VEGETATION**

No burning of vegetation will be allowed.

## **11.0 MATERIALS TESTING**

### **A. CONSTRUCTION TESTING**

All quality control testing must be provided by Contractor. The material and workmanship provided during construction will be tested on a regular basis by the Contractor. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor, at no additional cost, to provide material samples for testing at the **Owner's** request.

The Contractor shall be responsible for charges resulting from failed tests, costs for retesting shall be based upon hourly and/or individual test rates. In the event any portion of the Project is rejected because of substandard work, all materials testing, engineering, and inspection costs associated with corrective measures shall be chargeable to the Contractor at the current respective rates.

### **B. PRELIMINARY MATERIALS TESTING**

All preliminary materials testing and mix design testing required by the Specifications to ensure materials and mix designs are suitable for Project use will be the responsibility of the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.

## **12.0 CLEANUP AND POLLUTION CONTROL**

### **A. GENERAL**

The Contractor shall be responsible for the removal of all debris, litter and waste from the job site(s) and/or equipment maintenance area and the restoration of any and all areas affected, directly or indirectly by the construction, transportation of equipment or materials and/or by the acts of neglect or omission by its employees.

All debris, litter, etc., shall be disposed of in accordance with prevailing ordinance or law. Open burning of trash, debris, etc., will not be permitted.

Such clean-up operations shall be on a daily basis. All pavement, concrete, brush, rocks, excess materials, etc. accumulated or removed during the course of construction must be disposed of in those areas designated by the Engineer or authorized representative, including but not limited to the Lake Havasu City Landfill. All costs for disposal, including gate or tipping fees, etc. are the responsibility of the Contractor. This material must be disposed of within ten (10)

days of time of removal. If the areas in question are not cleaned up to the satisfaction of the Engineer, progress payments will be withheld until clean-up is completed and approved by the Engineer, or, in the case of private projects, other legal action will be taken.

**B. TEMPORARY FACILITIES**

The Contractor shall provide temporary mailboxes and traffic control signs where necessary until completion of backfilling and clean-up.

**C. SOLID WASTES**

All solid wastes shall be removed and disposed of in accordance with prevailing ordinance or law. Clean-up shall be completed on a daily basis. All costs for disposal shall be the responsibility of the Contractor, and shall be considered incidental to the costs of the various bid items.

All spilled paving material shall be removed and disposed of prior to final acceptance and payment.

**D. MAINTENANCE AREAS**

Maintenance areas shall be kept clean during construction and shall be free of litter at all times. All empty containers, debris, waste, etc., shall be removed and disposed of prior to final acceptance. Upon inspection by the Engineer, the Contractor may be required to dress the surface of the ground, dependent upon the extent of spillage of petroleum products on the surface. If so directed, such dressing shall consist of scarifying the surface to a depth of six (6) inches and moving and compacting the soil in such a way as to blend the spill areas into clean soil and restore the surface by partial compaction.

**E. POLLUTION**

The Contractor shall be held responsible for acts leading to pollution of water, air or land by any means.

Open burning of trash, debris, etc., will not be permitted anywhere in the City limits.

The discharge of any pollutants upon the surface of the ground, or into any stream, ravine, wash or body of water which may result in pollution of the public water supply, or of groundwater contributory thereto, will not be permitted.

Violation of these conditions will be cause for the termination of Work, and possible

legal action.

**F. REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT OF SIGNS, MAILBOXES, ETC.**

It is the responsibility of the Contractor to remove all poles, etc. which are located within the construction area and replace at the time of backfilling and clean-up in the locations determined by the Street Superintendent. In the case of landscaping or other private items located in the construction area, the Contractor shall hand-deliver a written notice to all residences in that area stating its intentions to perform construction activities and shall do so at least five (5) working days prior to Work commencing. If, at the time of construction these items are still in the construction area, the Contractor is to remove and dispose of them properly. All signs and mailboxes shall be permanently installed within forty-eight (48) hours of completion of construction activities.

**G. NATIONAL POLLUTANT DISCHARGE ELIMINATION SYSTEM (NPDES)GENERAL PERMIT**

At the time of the preconstruction conference, the contractor shall submit, for the Engineer's approval, a program which includes all the measures which the contractor proposes to take for the construction of permanent erosion control work specified in the Contract and all the temporary control measures to prevent erosion and pollution of streams, lakes and reservoirs.

Permanent erosion control work and pollution prevention measures shall be performed at the earliest practicable time consistent with good construction practices. Temporary work and measures are not meant to be performed in lieu of permanent work specified in the Contract.

Construction of drainage facilities as well as the performance of other contract work which will contribute to the control of erosion and sedimentation shall be carried out in conjunction with earthwork operations or as soon thereafter as possible.

Except for that approved in writing by the Engineer, the contractor shall perform no clearing and grubbing or earthwork until the contractor's program has been approved.

If in the opinion of the Engineer, clearing and grubbing, excavation, or other construction operations are likely to create an erosion problem because of the exposure of erodible earth material, the Engineer may limit the surface area to be disturbed until satisfactory control measures have been accomplished. Unless otherwise permitted by the Engineer, the contractor shall not expose an area of erodible earth material greater than 217,800 square feet at any one location.

The Engineer may order the contractor to provide immediate measures to control erosion and prevent pollution. Such measures may involve the construction of temporary berms, dikes, dams, sediment basins and slope drains; the use of temporary mulches, mats and seeds and the use of other devices, methods, items, etc., as necessary.

At any time the contractor proposes to change its schedule of operations, the contractor shall review and update its erosion and pollution control program and submit it to the Engineer for approval.

The contractor shall not be entitled to additional compensation or an extension of contract time for any delays to the Work because of the contractor's failure to submit an acceptable erosion and pollution control program.

Erosion control and pollution prevention work specified in the Contract which is to be accomplished under any of the various contract items will be paid for by the bid item. Any additional Work required by the Owner will be paid for by the Force Account set up for this Work.

The cost of any erosion control and pollution prevention work which may be proposed by the contractor in its program, in addition to that specified in the Contract, will be considered as included in the prices bid for contract items.

### **13.0 DUST CONTROL**

It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to provide adequate water for dust control. It is imperative that the air quality standards are maintained. In addition, dust could be quite hazardous in the everyday operations. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to ensure that all regulations for air quality and safety are met.

### **14.0 SUPERVISORY PERSONNEL**

It is the intent of these Special Provisions to provide a completed Project which will in every way reflect the work of competent journeyman mechanics in the various trades represented. The Contractor shall ensure that each portion of the work is supervised by a qualified person, well versed in the operation of the various tools required for the trade, the method in which the work is to be done, and a knowledge of the general requirements of the construction work. All work is to be done in accordance with the latest methods devised for such work to ensure the highest quality product.

### **15.0 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS**

The Contractor shall comply with all pertinent provisions of the Department of Labor

"Safety and Health Regulations for Construction" (29 CFR Part 1518, 36 CFR 7340), with additions or modifications thereto, in effect during construction of this Project.

**THE FOLLOWING MEASURES OR PROVISIONS ARE TO BE ADHERED TO AT ALL TIMES DURING THE CONSTRUCTION OF THIS PROJECT:**

- A.** All heavy construction machinery to include trenching machines, bulldozers, backhoes, etc., must be equipped with a roll bar meeting the requirements of the above regulation.
- B.** Safety helmets will be worn by all personnel working at the site. In addition, all spectators and inspectors will be required to wear safety helmets in construction zone.
- C.** Steel toe safety shoes or boots will be worn by all personnel working at the site.

**16.0 PRESERVATION OF BENCH MARKS AND MONUMENTS**

The Contractor shall exercise caution to ensure that permanent benchmarks, monuments, established property corners, survey lines, and points are not damaged or disturbed by this Work. If any survey monuments, property corners, survey lines or points are damaged or disturbed, the Contractor's representative shall immediately notify the inspector. All centerline survey monumentation located in pavement removal areas shall be replaced by an Arizona Registered Land Surveyor (R.L.S.) after completion of the pavement removal and replacement operations. All costs incurred to re-establish such points shall be borne by the Contractor.

**17.0 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS MATERIAL**

Excess soil and unsuitable materials shall be removed from the site by the Contractor at its own expense and disposed of in accordance with the Contract Documents unless otherwise permitted herein. In the event the Contractor chooses to utilize local private lots to dispose of excess material, the Contractor must provide the Engineer with written permission from the lot owner prior to utilizing the lot. Placing material suitable for fill on vacant lots will require a Grading Permit in advance of placing the material.

**18.0 REFERENCE STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS**

Where standard specifications or testing methods have been referred to, such as ASTM or AASHTO, the intent is to refer to the latest applicable issue or revision of such specifications or testing methods. The following abbreviations are used in these Special Provisions.

AWWA          American Waterworks Association

00800-7

Revised 01.16.2020



AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
ACI	American Concrete Institute
AI	Asphalt Institute
AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute
ANSI	American National Standards Institute (formerly the USA Standards Institute)
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
NSF	National Sanitation Foundation
S.P.W.C.	Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction. (Wherever written herein shall mean "Maricopa Association of Governments, Arizona Specification for Public Works Construction".) The "Sample Forms" and "Part 100 – General Conditions" of these Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction are excluded from the documents for this Project.

## **19.0 CODES, ORDINANCES AND LOCAL SPECIFICATIONS**

All Work under this Project shall be performed in strict accordance with these Special Provisions and the Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction (SPWC). Where any conflict occurs between these plans and specifications and the local codes and ordinances in effect at the time, such codes and ordinances shall take precedence over these plans and specifications only if these plans and specifications are inferior as to materials and workmanship called for by such codes and ordinances.

## **20.0 INTERFERING STRUCTURES AND UTILITIES**

The Contractor shall notify Arizona 811 (formerly Blue Stake) (1-800-782-5348) at least three (3) working days prior to any excavations.

The Contractor shall exercise all possible caution to prevent damage to existing structures and utilities, whether above ground or underground. The Contractor shall notify all utility offices concerned at least seventy-two (72) hours in advance of construction operations in which a utility's facilities may be involved.

Any structure or utility damage caused by the work shall be repaired or replaced in a

condition equal to or better than the condition prior to the damage. Such repair or replacement shall be accomplished at the Contractor's expense without additional compensation from the Owner.

If interfering structures or installations such as vaults, manholes, valves, utility poles, guy wires, or anchors are encountered, the Contractor shall notify the Engineer and contact the appropriate utility or structure owner at least seven (7) days in advance of construction to arrange for protection or relocation of the structure.

The Contractor shall remove, protect and/or replace all existing structures, utilities or other improvements and similar items within the proposed improvements at its own expense without additional compensation from the Owner unless specifically provided for as a pay item of Work by the Specifications or as otherwise provided for on the Plans. Replacement shall be in a manner and in a condition at least equivalent to, or better than, the original condition.

If the Contractor encounters existing facilities which will prevent the construction of any facility and which are not properly shown on the Plans, Contractor shall notify the Owner before continuing with the construction in order that the Owner may make such field revisions as necessary to avoid conflict with the existing structure. The cost of waiting or "down" time during such field revision shall be borne by the Contractor without additional cost to the Owner. If the Contractor fails to notify the Owner when an existing structure is encountered, but proceeds with the construction despite this interference, Contractor does so at its own risk. In particular, when the location of the new construction will prohibit the restoration of existing structures to their original condition; the Contractor shall notify the Engineer and contact the utility or structure owner so a field relocation may be made if possible to avoid the conflict.

In the event of interruption to any utility service as a result of accidental breakage or as a result of being exposed or unsupported, the Contractor shall promptly notify the proper authority. Contractor shall cooperate with the said authority in restoration of service as promptly as possible and shall bear all costs of repair. In no case shall interruption of any utility service be allowed to exist outside working hours unless prior approval of the Owner is received.

Neither the Owner nor its officers or agents shall be responsible for damages to the Contractor as a result of the locations of the water and sewer lines or utilities being other than those shown on the Plans or for the existence of water, sewer lines or utilities not shown on the Plans.

## **21.0 AIR QUALITY - OPERATING PERMITS**

The Contractor may be required to obtain registration certificates and/or operating permits for sources of air pollution.

Information concerning these certificates and permits may be obtained from:

The Office of Air Quality  
Arizona Department of Environmental Quality  
P.O. Box 600  
Phoenix, AZ 85001-0600  
(602) 207-2300

## **22.0 ADJUST UTILITIES TO FINISHED GRADE**

The Contractor shall be responsible for locating all manhole rims, valve boxes, meter boxes, utility vaults, etc., and setting them to finished grade. The Contractor shall adjust sewer and water facilities to finished grade in accordance with the specifications within seven (7) days after street surfacing has been completed on each street. All valves and/or manholes will be made visible and accessible for emergency use within 24 hours. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to coordinate with the various private utility companies so that they can adjust their facilities to finished grade at an appropriate time. Adjust all facilities in accordance with these specifications and the MAG Standard Details, as modified by Lake Havasu City.

## **23.0 SAFETY, HEALTH AND SANITATION PROVISIONS**

The Contractor shall provide and maintain in a neat, sanitary condition such accommodations for the use of its employees as may be necessary to comply with the requirements and regulations of the Arizona State Department of Health.

The Contractor shall provide all safeguards, safety devices and protective equipment and take any other needed actions, on its own responsibility or as the Owner may determine, reasonably necessary to protect the life and health of employees on the job, the safety of the public and to protect property in connection with the performance of the Work covered by the Contract.

Precaution shall be exercised by the Contractor at all times for the protection of persons (including employees) and property. The Contractor shall comply with the provisions of all applicable laws, pertaining to such protection including all Federal and State occupational safety and health acts, and standards and regulations promulgated thereunder.

## **24.0 PUBLIC SAFETY AND TRAFFIC CONTROL**

Every attempt shall be made to provide public safety during the construction of the Project. Traffic control shall be performed in accordance with Section 2650, Traffic Control, of the Technical Specifications.

During all construction operations, the Contractor shall construct and maintain such facilities as may be required to provide access for all property owners to their property. No person shall be cut off from access to their residence or place of business for a period exceeding two (2) hours, unless the Contractor has made a special arrangement with the affected persons. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to notify all adjacent property owners of the construction activity and the schedule of such activities.

The Contractor shall submit for approval a traffic control and barricade plan within ten (10) days of receipt of Notification of Award of Contract. There shall be no deviations from the approved barricade plan unless a revised barricade plan is submitted and approved. The Contractor shall issue a news release once a week for duration of the Project. The release will be published in Sunday's newspaper and shall indicate the area in which the Contractor will be performing work for that week.

Businesses must be notified forty-eight (48) hours prior to any restrictions on normal parking areas used by their employees or patrons.

The Contractor shall contact, cooperate with, and give notice to each resident, homeowner, business or school that will be affected by any part of the construction process, particularly concerning temporary interruptions to vehicular access.

Written notice of the approximate schedule and explanation of work shall be given to each resident, homeowner, business or school at least five (5) days prior to commencement of work in the area. Verbal door-to-door communication shall be made at least twenty-four (24) hours prior to construction to remind all affected parties of the construction to take place.

The Owner shall receive a copy of all notifications to residents. In the event of complaints by residents, the Owner may require the Contractor to provide documentation (i.e., check list) showing the date and time of the verbal door-to-door communication.

In addition, the Contractor is responsible to answer and resolve any conflicts that may arise between a homeowner or business owner and himself during the construction process.

The Contractor shall provide and station competent flaggers whose sole purpose shall be to direct the movement of public traffic through or around the work. Proper advanced warning signs shall be in place when flaggers are working and removed when work requiring flaggers is completed. Flaggers must be used to assist trucks for safe ingress and egress whenever truck movements may interfere with safe passage through the work zone.

All traffic control devices that are not in use or will not be used for a period greater than

72 hours or that are determined by the Engineer to be unnecessary, confusing, or causing an unsafe condition, shall be removed by the Contractor from the public right-of-way immediately upon notification by the Engineer.

Every attempt shall be made to provide public safety during the construction of the Project. Traffic control shall be performed in accordance with Section 2650, Traffic Control, of the Technical Specifications. No person shall be cut off from access to their residence or place of business for a period exceeding six (6) hours, unless the Contractor has made a special arrangement with the affected persons. In addition, no work will be scheduled which will interrupt regular trash pickup to either residential or commercial properties. It will be the Contractor's responsibility to coordinate its activities with the local trash haulers.

No streets, avenues, boulevards or cul-de-sacs will be closed to traffic unless prior arrangements have been made and approval has been obtained from the Engineer.

## **25.0 TEMPORARY FACILITIES ON SITE**

### **A. General**

Except as otherwise provided, the Owner shall bear no costs of temporary facilities and their removal.

### **B. Temporary Utility Services**

The Contractor shall provide temporary electric power as necessary for the execution of the Work, including that required by all Subcontractors. Contractor shall make the necessary arrangements with Owner, shall bear all costs for these temporary services and shall furnish and install all necessary transformers, metering facilities and distribution centers from branch circuits as Contractor may require.

The Contractor shall provide lighting and outlets in temporary structures throughout the Project as may be required for safety, proper performance and inspection of the Work. If operations are performed during hours of darkness, or if natural lighting is deemed insufficient by Owner, the Contractor shall provide adequate floodlights, clusters and spot illumination. The use of permanently installed lighting fixtures, lamps and tubes for work will not be permitted except by special permission of Owner. The Contractor shall make arrangements with Subcontractors for electrical services and lighting as may be necessary in the performance of their work.

Temporary water service lines, if required, shall be installed and removed by the Contractor, who shall pay all charges for making the connections, running the

temporary lines, removing the temporary lines at the completion of the Work and disconnecting the services. All relocations required to clear the work of others shall be performed by the Contractor when requested by the Owner.

**C. Temporary Structures**

Prior to starting Work, the Contractor shall, as directed by Owner, provide and maintain suitable temporary office facilities for the duration of the Project as required for the Contractor's project administration; and all necessary sheds and facilities for the proper storage of tools, materials and equipment employed in the performance of the Work.

**D. Toilet Facilities**

The Contractor shall provide and maintain temporary toilet facilities for the duration of operations, which shall be maintained in a clean and sanitary condition acceptable to Owner and in full compliance with applicable regulations of any public authority.

**E. Telephones**

The Contractor shall provide, maintain and pay for telephone services for the duration of the Work as required for the Contractor's operation.

**F. Fence and Barricades**

The Contractor shall provide such protective fences and barricades as Contractor may deem necessary for public safety and to protect Contractor's storage areas and the Work in place. The location and appearance of all fences shall be subject to the approval of the Owner.

**G. Contractor Parking**

The Contractor shall not park its equipment, nor allow its personnel to park, in any area except those specifically designated by the Owner.

**H. Temporary Living Quarters**

Temporary living quarters shall not be allowed on the job site or on publicly owned properties. In addition, all Lake Havasu City Zoning Codes for the area in question shall be strictly adhered to.

**I. Removal of Temporary Construction**

The Contractor shall remove temporary office facilities, toilets, storage sheds and other temporary construction from the site as soon as, in Owner's opinion, the progress of Work permits. Contractor shall recondition and restore those portions of the site occupied by the same to a condition equal to or better than it was prior to construction.

## **26.0 ACCESS TO WASHES**

- A.** Unless otherwise mentioned herein, the Contractor must obtain written permission from the Owner prior to gaining access or utilizing washes or City parcels for any purpose. Request for access to washes and City parcels will be reviewed on a case by case basis. The Contractor shall have access to washes and City parcels via public streets and/or private easements only. For the purposes of this paragraph, "private easement" means a contract by and between the Contractor and a property owner, in writing, authorizing the Contractor to travel across the property owner's real property in order to have ingress or egress to washes, parcels or any portion thereof. Such contracts, if any, shall be filed with the City before the Contractor may exercise the rights thereunder granted. Access to any wash, parcels, or portion thereof by any means not in compliance with the terms of this paragraph shall be deemed a trespass and a breach of the terms of the Contract.
- B.** Violations of the provisions of subparagraph (A.) hereof, shall entitle the City to deduct the sum of One Thousand Dollars (\$1,000.00) from the monies due to Contractor as and for liquidated damages for each such violation. For the purposes of this paragraph, each entry by a vehicle upon land for which Contractor has not received permission to enter shall be deemed a separate violation of subparagraph (A.) hereof.

## **27.0 COORDINATION AND COOPERATION WITH UTILITY COMPANIES AND OTHER TRADES**

### **A. Coordination/Interruption**

The Contractor is responsible to coordinate work with all utility companies and other trades, on or affecting the Project, for an efficient and effective execution of the complete Project. The Contractor shall carefully examine all work that may conflict, and plan removal and/or installation details in advance of the construction to avoid any such conflict. Failure on the Contractor's part to coordinate with any and all utilities, public or private, shall preclude the City's consideration for additional time or cost.

### **B. Permission Required**

Utility mains and utility service to buildings shall not be cut off or otherwise

interrupted without the Contractor obtaining permission from the Owner in each and every instance.

**C.**    Scheduling of Interruptions

Where utilities serve facilities or buildings in use, interruptions in service shall be scheduled during the hours when the facility is not in operation. Any overtime costs occasioned thereby shall be regarded as incidental to, and included within, the Contract Price.

**D.**    General Requirements

Prior to interrupting any utility service, the Contractor shall ascertain that it has the proper materials, together with adequate workmen and equipment, to complete the Work with a minimum of delay.

**E.**    Project Electrical Service

The Contractor is responsible to coordinate with Unisource, Electric Division, to determine the extent of work to be performed by Unisource and by the Contractor to provide electric service for the finished product. The Contractor is also responsible to contact Unisource to determine the hardware required by Unisource to provide service to the final product. Unisource does not provide service to delta connections.

**\*\*END OF SECTION 00800\*\***



## **SECTION 01210**

### **MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 Description**

The outline of measurement and payment in this section is intended to provide a general guideline to the Contractor in preparing bids and submitting pay requests. Listing of work included in each bid item is not intended to include all work, but is to provide general guidance to the Contractor for allocating costs. All work will be paid for on a unit price basis with payment made for the quantity of each item completed.

All materials required for construction shall be furnished by the Contractor unless specifically stated. Items not specifically measured and paid for shall be considered as subsidiary items required to complete the installation in accordance with the intent of the contract documents. The Contractor shall include in the unit price bid items, all costs associated with subsidiary items not being measured for payment.

##### **1.2 Authority**

Measurement methods delineated in the individual specification sections complement the criteria of this section. In the event of conflict, the requirements of the individual specification section govern.

Take all measurements and compute quantities. The Engineer will verify measurements and quantities.

##### **1.3 Unit Quantities**

Quantities indicated in the Bid Form are for bidding and contract purpose only. Quantities and measurements supplied or placed in the Work and verified by the Engineer shall determine payment.

If the actual Work requires more or fewer quantities than indicated, provide the required quantities at the unit prices contracted.

## **PART 2 – UNITS AND METHODS OF MEASUREMENT**

### **2.1 General**

All items that are included in the bid for measurement and payment are included herein. All other items of work shall be considered subsidiary to construction and will not be measured for payment.

### **2.2 Units and Methods of Measurement**

#### **2.2.1 Mobilization, Bonds, and Insurance**

The Contract Lump Sum Price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools for all required bonds, insurance, mobilization of staff and equipment, and any other costs associated with complying with the contract administrative requirements and commencing work at the project site. This item also includes all work and materials necessary to complete the work as described in the plans and specifications. **Payment for this item shall be lump sum and shall not be requested until at least thirty days from the notice to proceed has elapsed.**

Payment for this item shall be made in accordance with Table A.

TABLE A

Payment for Mobilization on First Partial Payment	Not to exceed 2.5% of the Lump Sum Base Bid
Subsequent payments for Mobilization	Not to exceed 2.5% of the Lump Sum Base Bid
Payment For Mobilization on Final Partial Payment	Any remaining Mobilization in excess of 5% of the Lump Sum Base Bid

#### **2.2.2 Quality Control & Structural Inspections**

The quantity of "Quality Control & Structural Inspections" measured for payment shall be lump sum.

The CONTRACT lump sum bid price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools for the development and implementation of the Quality Control & Structural Inspections in accordance with the Specifications and acceptable to the Engineer.

The contractor will be responsible for providing special inspections for all denoted structural connections and shall be stamped by a Civil Engineer or Structural Engineer in the State of Arizona.

Any cost associated underwater inspections that require certified divers will be included in this bid item if required by the engineer of record.

### **2.2.3 Environmental Control & BMP's**

The quantity of "Environmental Control & BMP's" measured for payment shall be lump sum.

The CONTRACT lump sum bid price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools for the development and implementation of the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) Plan(s) in accordance with the Specifications and acceptable to the Engineer. All SWPPP's shall be in compliance with the City and Arizona Department of Environmental Quality (ADEQ). This shall include all netting, straw wattles, sandbags, stabilized entrance(s), washout areas, vehicle storage and maintenance areas, and related items necessary to ensure the stormwater quality is maintained throughout the project, at all times. This item also includes all work and materials necessary to complete the work as described in the Plans and Specifications. Payment of this item shall be lump sum.

The contractor shall provide turbidity curtains to prevent construction materials from entering the lake.

### **2.2.4 Sewer Line & Connections**

The quantity of "Sewer Line & Connections" measured for payment shall be "Linear feet".

The CONTRACT linear feet bid price for this item shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools to provide "Sewer Line & connections".

The contractor will be responsible for installation for Installation of the Sewer Line from the property line to the building. City forces have installed the sewer line from the mainline to the property with the connection to the mainline.

#### **2.2.5      Utility Trench Per Standard Detail 200**

The quantity of "Utility trench and asphalt surfacing per Lake Havasu City standard detail 200" measured for payment shall be "Linear Feet".

The CONTRACT lump sum bid price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools for the utility trench & asphalt surfacing per LHC standard Detail 200. The contractor will be responsible for saw cutting and removal of all existing asphalt material disposed in a suitable disposal location. The contractor will be responsible for relative compaction of subgrade, roadway base and placement of 3" asphalt surfacing as indicated in lake Havasu standard detail 200 and lake Havasu specifications section 2300.

#### **2.2.6      1.5 Inch Water Service**

The quantity of "1.5 Inch Water Service measured for payment shall be "Linear Feet".

The CONTRACT unit bid price for "1.5 Inch Water Service" shall be full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools to construct 1.5" water Service components to the extents shown and specified in the CONTRACT DOCUMENTS, including any/all other work associated with the removals as shown on the Plans, as specified in the Specifications, and as directed by the ENGINEER.

City Forces have already installed the connection to the mainline with water service and meter to the property line. It will be the contractors Responsibility to supply the water service to the building.

#### **2.2.7      4" Fireline and Miscellaneous Connections**

The quantity of "4" Fireline and Miscellaneous Connections Measured for payment shall be per "Lump Sum".

The CONTRACT unit bid price "4" Fireline and Miscellaneous Connections" shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools to provide for electrical work within

specification tolerances. Work includes but is not limited to, constructing and furnishing all items in accordance with the Plans and Specifications and as directed by the ENGINEER. Payment of this item shall be made per Lump Sum upon and will only be made after electrical work has successfully passed acceptance testing, visual inspection by certified personnel provided by the contractor under this bid item.

City Forces Have Installed the connections to the mainline with a lateral that is capped at the property line. The contractors will need to install all miscellaneous connections to supply the 4" fire line service to the building.

#### **2.2.8 Install Double Detector Check**

The quantity of "Double Detector Check" measured for payment shall be "Each".

The CONTRACT lump sum bid price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools for the Double Detector Check on the 4" Fireline.

#### **2.2.9 2" Asphalt on 3" Base Material**

The quantity of "2" Asphalt on 3" Base Material" measured for payment shall be "Square Yards".

2" Asphalt concrete pavement on 3" Base Material shall be measured by square yard of pavement limits. The contract unit price shall include furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools used for paving. Refer to Section 02630 of the LHC Technical Specifications.

#### **2.2.10 Graded Swale**

The quantity of "Graded Swale" measured for payment shall be "Linear Feet".

"Graded Swale" shall be measured by linear feet. The contract unit price shall include furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools used for grading.

#### **2.2.11 Retention Pond**

The quantity of "Retention Pond" measured for payment shall be "Square Feet".

The contractor will be responsible for grading, removal and disposal of all excess earthwork and placing 6" Rip Rap with 3 to 1 side slopes per plans and specifications.

#### **2.2.12 8-Inch Curb**

The quantity of "8-inch curb" measured for payment shall be "Linear Foot".

The CONTRACT linear foot bid price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools for the 8 Inch Curb per Lake Havasu Standard detail 216.

#### **2.2.13 4-Inch Sidewalk**

The quantity of "4-Inch Sidewalk" measured for payment shall be "Square Foot".

The CONTRACT Square foot bid price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools per Lake Havasu Standard detail 216.

#### **2.2.14 Curb Stop**

The quantity of "4-Inch Sidewalk" measured for payment shall be "Square Foot".

The CONTRACT Square foot bid price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools per plans and details.

#### **2.2.15 Single Trash Enclosure**

The quantity of "Single Trash Enclosure" measured for payment shall be "Each".

The CONTRACT "Each" price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools per plans and details. This includes all concrete, rebar, grading, base material, masonry block and other miscellaneous materials to construct the trash enclosure per plans and specifications.

#### **2.2.16 Earthwork**

The quantity of "Earthwork" measured for payment shall be "Cubic Yard".

The CONTRACT cubic yard price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools required to construct grade per plans and specifications.

#### **2.2.17 New Laboratory Building - Structural**

The quantity of "New Laboratory Building - Structural" measured for payment shall be "Lump Sum".

The CONTRACT lump sum price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools required to construct the structural portion of the new laboratory building per plans and specifications.

#### **2.2.18 New Laboratory Building - Mechanical**

The quantity of "New Laboratory Building - Mechanical" measured for payment shall be "Lump Sum".

The CONTRACT lump sum price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools required to construct the mechanical portion of the new laboratory building per plans and specifications.

#### **2.2.19 New Laboratory Building - Plumbing**

The quantity of "New Laboratory Building - Plumbing" measured for payment shall be "Lump Sum".

The CONTRACT lump sum price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools required to construct the plumbing portion of the new laboratory building per plans and specifications.

#### **2.2.20 New Laboratory Building - Electrical**

The quantity of "New Laboratory Building - Electrical" measured for payment shall be "Lump Sum".

The CONTRACT lump sum price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools required to construct the electrical portion of the new laboratory building per plans and specifications.

**2.2.21 New Laboratory Building – All Other Work**

The quantity of "New Laboratory Building – All Other Work" measured for payment shall be "Lump Sum".

The CONTRACT lump sum price for this item shall constitute full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment and tools required to construct all other work associated to the new laboratory building per plans and specifications.

**2.2.22 Force Account**

The Contract Lump Sum Price for this item shall be included in the Bid Schedule. Only the OWNER shall determine the use of monies in the "Force Account".

The OWNER will authorize the use of monies in the Force Account by Change Order. Unused Force Account monies will be removed from the Cost of the Work by Change Order.

**\*\*END OF SECTION 01210\*\***



SECTION 00 3132 - GEOTECHNICAL DATA

## 1.1 GEOTECHNICAL DATA

- A. This Document with its referenced attachments is part of the Procurement and Contracting Requirements for Project. They provide Owner's information for Bidders' convenience and are intended to supplement rather than serve in lieu of Bidders' own investigations. They are made available for Bidders' convenience and information but are not a warranty of existing conditions. This Document and its attachments are a part of the Contract Documents.

B. CMT TECHNICAL Services:

Geotechnical Engineering Study : Lake Havasu City Water Quality Laboratory Building.

About 360 Cypress Drive, Lake Havasu City, Arizona 86403

**Western Technologies (WT) PROJECT NO. 25-224210-0** dated August 9, 2024.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Document 002113 "Instructions to Bidders" for the Bidder's responsibilities for examination of Project site and existing conditions.

**END OF DOCUMENT 00 3132**



## GEOTECHNICAL EVALUATION REPORT

### LAB BUILDING

APN: 109-29-232  
390 Mulberry Avenue  
Lake Havasu City, Arizona  
WT Job No. 25-224210-0

### PREPARED FOR:

Lake Havasu City – Public Works  
900 London Bridge Road  
Lake Havasu City, Arizona 86403  
Attn: Mr. Jason Hart

August 9, 2024



Gregory L. E. Burr, P.E., R.G.  
Geotechnical Department Manager



Craig P. Wiedeman, P.E.  
Senior Geotechnical Engineer

GEOTECHNICAL

ENVIRONMENTAL

INSPECTIONS

NDT

MATERIALS

2400 East Huntington Drive  
Flagstaff, Arizona 86004

(928)-774-8700

rma-western.com

August 9, 2024

Lake Havasu City – Public Works  
900 London Bridge Road  
Lake Havasu City, Arizona 86403

Attn: Mr. Jason Hart

Re: Geotechnical Evaluation  
Lab Building  
APN: 109-29-232  
390 Mulberry Avenue  
Lake Havasu City, Arizona

Job No. 25-224210-0

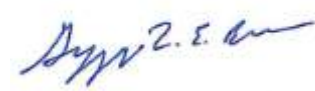
Western Technologies Inc. has completed the geotechnical evaluation for the proposed laboratory building to be located in Lake Havasu City, Arizona. This study was performed in general accordance with our proposal number 25-224210-P dated June 21, 2024. The results of our study, including the boring location diagram, laboratory test results, boring logs, and the geotechnical recommendations are attached.

We have appreciated being of service to you in the geotechnical engineering phase of this project and are prepared to assist you during the construction phases as well. If design conditions change, or if you have any questions concerning this report or any of our testing, inspection, design and consulting services, please do not hesitate to contact us. We look forward to working with you on future projects.

Sincerely,

**WESTERN TECHNOLOGIES, INC.**

Geotechnical Engineering Services



Gregory L. E. Burr, P.E., R.G.  
Geotechnical Department Manager

Copies to: Addressee (emailed)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>1.0</b>	<b>PURPOSE .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2.0</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>3.0</b>	<b>SCOPE OF SERVICES.....</b>	<b>2</b>
3.1	Field Exploration .....	2
3.2	Laboratory Analyses.....	2
3.3	Analyses and Report .....	3
<b>4.0</b>	<b>SITE CONDITIONS .....</b>	<b>3</b>
4.1	Surface .....	3
4.2	Subsurface.....	3
<b>5.0</b>	<b>GEOTECHNICAL PROPERTIES AND ANALYSIS.....</b>	<b>4</b>
5.1	Laboratory Tests .....	4
5.2	Field Tests .....	4
<b>6.0</b>	<b>RECOMMENDATIONS.....</b>	<b>5</b>
6.1	General.....	5
6.2	Design Considerations .....	5
6.3	Foundations .....	5
6.4	Lateral Design Criteria.....	7
6.5	Seismic Considerations .....	8
6.6	Conventional Slab-on-Grade Support.....	9
6.7	Drainage .....	9
6.8	Corrosivity to Concrete .....	11
6.9	Pavements.....	11
6.9.1	<u>Pavement Analyses</u> .....	12
<b>7.0</b>	<b>EARTHWORK .....</b>	<b>12</b>
7.1	General.....	12
7.2	Site Clearing .....	13
7.3	Excavation .....	13
7.3.1	Cut and Fill Slopes .....	13
7.4	Shallow Foundation Preparation .....	13
7.5	Conventional Interior Slab Preparation .....	14
7.6	Pavement Preparation .....	14
7.7	Materials .....	14
7.8	Placement and Compaction.....	15
7.9	Compliance .....	16
<b>8.0</b>	<b>ADDITIONAL SERVICES .....</b>	<b>16</b>

## TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continued)

<b>9.0</b>	<b>LIMITATIONS .....</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>10.0</b>	<b>CLOSURE.....</b>	<b>17</b>
	<b>BORING LOCATION DIAGRAM .....</b>	<b>Plate 1</b>
<b>APPENDIX A</b>		
	Definition of Terminology .....	A-1
	Method of Classification .....	A-2
	Boring Log Notes .....	A-3
	Boring Logs.....	A-4 to A-13
<b>APPENDIX B</b>		
	Laboratory Tests .....	B-1 to B-6

**GEOTECHNICAL EVALUATION  
LAB BUILDING  
APN# 109-29-232  
390 EAST MULBERRY AVENUE  
LAKE HAVASU CITY, ARIZONA  
JOB NO. 25-224210-0**

**1.0 PURPOSE**

This report contains the results of our geotechnical evaluation for the proposed laboratory building to be located at 390 East Mulberry Avenue in Lake Havasu City, Arizona. The purpose of these services is to provide information and recommendations regarding:

- foundation design parameters
- floor slab support
- lateral earth pressures
- earthwork
- on-site pavements
- drainage
- corrosivity to concrete

Results of the field exploration, field tests, and laboratory testing program are presented in the Appendices.

**2.0 PROJECT DESCRIPTION**

Based on information provided by Mr. Jason Hart, the proposed project will consist of a 3,000 square foot Lab Building to be constructed on a 11.37-acre lot. The structure is assumed to use metal frame construction with a slab-on-grade floor. Maximum wall and column loads for the structure are assumed to be 2.5 kips per linear foot and 30 kips, respectively. We anticipate no extraordinary slab-on-grade criteria and that the finished floor level will be within 2 to 3 feet of existing site grades. On-site pavements will be included as part of the new development. Should any of our information or assumptions not be correct, we request that the Client notify Western Technologies (WT) immediately.

### **3.0 SCOPE OF SERVICES**

#### **3.1 Field Exploration**

Ten borings were auger drilled to depths of about 3 to 19 feet below existing site grades at the approximate locations shown on the attached Boring Location Diagram. Logs of the borings are presented in Appendix A. Subsoils encountered during drilling were examined visually and sampled at selected depth intervals. A field log was prepared for each boring. These logs contain visual classifications of the materials encountered during drilling as well as interpolation of the subsurface conditions between samples. Final logs, included in Appendix A, represent our interpretation of the field logs and include modifications based on laboratory observations and tests of the field samples. The final logs describe the materials encountered, their thicknesses, and the locations where samples were obtained. The Unified Soil Classification System was used to classify soils. The soil classification symbols appear on the boring logs and are briefly described in Appendix A. Local and regional geologic characteristics were used to estimate the seismic design criteria and liquefaction potential.

#### **3.2 Laboratory Analyses**

Laboratory analyses were performed on representative soil samples to aid in material classification and to estimate pertinent engineering properties of the on-site soils for preparation of this report. Testing was performed in general accordance with applicable standard test methods. The following tests were performed and the results are presented in Appendix B.

- Water content
- Dry density
- Compression
- Sieve analysis
- Maximum density/optimum moisture (proctor)
- Remolded expansion potential
- Plasticity
- Soluble salts, sulfates and chlorides

Test results were utilized in the development of the recommendations contained in this report.

### **3.3 Analyses and Report**

This geotechnical engineering report includes a description of the project, a discussion of the field and laboratory testing programs, a discussion of the subsurface conditions, and design recommendations as appropriate to the purpose. The scope of services for this project does not include, either specifically or by implication, any environmental assessment of the site, discovery of underground storage tanks or other underground structures, or identification of contaminated or hazardous materials or conditions. If there is concern about the potential for such contamination, other studies should be undertaken. We are available to discuss the scope of such studies with you.

## **4.0 SITE CONDITIONS**

### **4.1 Surface**

At the time of our field exploration, the site was an undeveloped lot. The site was bordered on the south by east-west oriented Daytona Wash that is about 100 feet wide and 30 feet deep that directs flow to the west, on the north by Cypress Drive, on the east by Oak Drive, and on the west by the existing Lake Havasu City wastewater treatment plant. The ground surface exhibited a gentle slope down to the south that abruptly changed to a steep slope down to the south in a cut slope located directly upslope of the existing wash bank. Site surface drainage appeared to be fair to poor in the flatter portions of the site and good to fair in the sloped areas on the site by means of sheet flow to the south. Evidence of previous surface water ponding was observed on the flatter portions of the site at the time of our field exploration. Vegetation on the site consisted of a sparse growth of native bushes, cacti, weeds and grasses.

### **4.2 Subsurface**

As presented on the boring logs, native surface and subsoils extending to the full depth of exploration consisted of medium dense to very dense, non-plastic Silty SANDS with variable amounts of gravel; dense to very dense, low plasticity Silty, Clayey SANDS with variable amounts of gravel; dense to medium dense, non-plastic Poorly Graded SANDS with variable amounts of silt and gravel; and loose to medium dense Poorly Graded GRAVELS with variable amounts of silt and sand. All soils encountered contained



random amounts of cobbles and boulders. Refusal to auger penetration occurred in about half of the borings at depths of about 3 to 11 feet on dense cobbles and boulders. Groundwater was not encountered in any boring at the time of exploration. The logs in Appendix A show details of the subsurface conditions encountered during the field exploration.

The boring logs included in this report are indicators of subsurface conditions only at the specific location and date noted. Variations from the field conditions represented by the borings may become evident during construction. If variations appear, we should be contacted to re-evaluate our recommendations.

## **5.0 GEOTECHNICAL PROPERTIES AND ANALYSIS**

### **5.1 Laboratory Tests**

Laboratory test results (see Appendix B) indicate that on-site subsoils located near and below anticipated shallow foundation level exhibit moderate to high compressibility at existing water contents. Low to high additional compression occurs when the water content is increased.

Near-surface soils contain non-plastic to low plasticity fines. These soils exhibit low expansion potential when recompacted, confined by loads approximating floor loads and saturated in accordance with standard Arizona test methods. Slabs-on-grade supported on recompacted native soils have a low potential for heaving if the water content of the soil increases.

### **5.2 Field Tests**

On-site native subsoils located near and below anticipated shallow foundation levels exhibited low to high resistance to penetration using a ring-lined barrel sampler (ASTM D3550). Penetration resistance values exhibited some variability between test locations. This represents a potential for differential movement within a structure supported on existing soils in their present condition.

## **6.0 RECOMMENDATIONS**

### **6.1 General**

Recommendations contained in this report are based on our understanding of the project criteria described in Section 2.0 and the assumption that the soil and subsurface conditions are those disclosed by the explorations. Others may change the plans, final elevations, number and type of structures, foundation loads, and floor levels during design or construction. Substantially different subsurface conditions from those described herein may be encountered or become known. Any changes in the project criteria or subsurface conditions shall be brought to our attention in writing.

### **6.2 Design Considerations**

Laboratory test results indicate that the site soils become weaker and more compressible with an increase in moisture content under typical foundation loading conditions. These soils are not considered suitable for support of foundations and concrete slabs in their present state and should be over-excavated and recompacted as recommended in the **EARTHWORK** section of this report. Proper drainage should be provided to help prevent infiltration of moisture below the foundations and concrete slabs.

Cobbles and some boulders were encountered in some of the borings. These oversized materials, greater than 3 inches, could present construction difficulties for foundation, utility trenches and other excavations. In cut areas and excavations, exposed oversized materials should be removed.

### **6.3 Foundations**

The proposed structure can be supported by conventional shallow spread footings bearing on a minimum thickness of 2.5 feet of low expansive on-site soils removed and recompacted as engineered fill and/or properly compacted, imported, low expansive engineered fill.

Alternative footing depths and design bearing capacities are presented in the following tabulation:

Footing Depth Below Finished Grade <sup>1</sup> (ft)	Allowable Bearing Capacity <sup>2</sup> (psf)
1.5 <sup>3</sup>	2000
2.0 <sup>3</sup>	2500

We anticipate that total settlement of the proposed structure, supported as recommended, should be less than 1 inch. Differential settlement should be less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch. Additional foundation movements could occur if water from any source infiltrates the foundation soils.

The design bearing capacities apply to dead loads plus design live load conditions. Recommended minimum widths of column and wall footings are 24 and 16 inches, respectively. The bearing values given are net bearing values and the weight of the concrete in the footings may be ignored.

All footings, stem walls and masonry walls should be reinforced to reduce the potential for distress caused by differential foundation movements. The use of joints at openings or other discontinuities in masonry walls is recommended.

Site preparation procedures and foundation excavations should be observed by the geotechnical engineer to assess that adequate bearing conditions exist and that recompaction of native soils and/or placement of engineered fill has been performed satisfactorily. If the soil conditions encountered differ significantly from those presented in this report, supplemental recommendations will be required.

---

<sup>1</sup> Finished grade is the lowest adjacent grade for perimeter footings and floor level for interior footings.

<sup>2</sup> Allowable bearing capacities assume fulfillment of **EARTHWORK** recommendations. Pounds per square foot (psf).

<sup>3</sup> Footing depth based on recommended bearing capacity.

#### 6.4 Lateral Design Criteria

For retaining walls located above any free water surface with no surcharge loads, recommended equivalent fluid pressures and coefficients of base friction for unrestrained elements are:

- Active:
  - Undisturbed subsoil .....36 psf/ft
  - Compacted granular backfill .....30 psf/ft
  - Compacted site soils .....36 psf/ft
- Passive:
  - Shallow wall footings .....220 psf/ft
  - Shallow column footings.....350 psf/ft
- Coefficient of base friction..... 0.35\*

\* The coefficient of base friction should be reduced to 0.25 when used in conjunction with passive pressure.

Where the design includes restrained elements, the following equivalent fluid pressures are recommended:

- At-rest:
  - Undisturbed subsoil .....68 psf/ft
  - Compacted granular backfill .....55 psf/ft

These lateral earth pressures are not applicable for submerged soils. We should be consulted for additional recommendations if such conditions are to be included in the design. Any surcharge from adjacent loadings must also be considered. Walls below grade should be waterproofed.

We recommend a free-draining soil layer or manufactured geocomposite material, be constructed adjacent to the back of the retaining wall. A filter may be required between the soil backfill and drainage layer. This drainage zone should help prevent hydrostatic pressure buildup. This vertical drain should be tied into a gravity drainage system at the base of the retaining wall. It is important that all backfill be properly placed and

compacted. Backfill should be mechanically compacted in layers. Flooding or jetting should not be permitted. Care should be taken not to damage the walls when placing the backfill. Backfills should be inspected and tested during placement.

Fill against footings, stem walls and retaining walls should be compacted to densities specified in **EARTHWORK**. Medium to high plasticity clay soils should not be used as backfill against retaining walls. Compaction of each lift adjacent to walls should be accomplished with hand-operated tampers or other lightweight compactors. Overcompaction may cause excessive lateral earth pressures which could result in wall movements.

## 6.5 Seismic Considerations

Structures should be designed in accordance with applicable building codes. The seismic design parameters presented in the following table, in accordance with the 2018 International Building Code and ASCE 7-16, are applicable to the project site:

Seismic Design Parameters International Building Code 2018, ASCE 7-16	
Soil Site Class	D
Mapped Spectral Response Acceleration at 0.2 sec period ( $S_s$ )	0.188g
Mapped Spectral Response Acceleration at 1.0 sec period ( $S_1$ )	0.113g
Site Coefficient for 0.2 sec period ( $F_a$ )	1.6
Site Coefficient for 1.0 sec period ( $F_v$ )	2.375
Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 0.2 sec period ( $S_{DS}$ )	0.200g
Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1.0 sec period ( $S_{D1}$ )	0.178g

The soil site class is based upon conditions identified in shallow exploratory borings and local knowledge of the geotechnical conditions in the vicinity of the site. Conditions extending beyond the depth of our borings to a depth of 100 feet were assumed for the purposes of providing the information presented in the table. Based upon the density of the on-site soils and absence of groundwater, the potential settlement and lateral spread due to liquefaction is not considered to be a significant concern on this site.

## **6.6 Conventional Slab-on-Grade Support**

Slabs-on-grade should be supported on properly placed and compacted imported fill or approved, properly recompacted, low expansive potential native soils. For design of interior slabs-on-grade, we recommend using a modulus of subgrade reaction (k) of 225 pounds per cubic inch (pci) for the on-site soils and a value of 250 pci for imported fill materials, based on a 30-inch diameter plate. The slab subgrade should be prepared by the procedures outlined in this report. A minimum 4-inch thick layer of base course should be provided beneath all slabs to help prevent capillary rise and a damp slab. The use of vapor retarders is desirable for any slab-on-grade where the floor will be covered by products using water based adhesives, wood, impermeable floor coatings (urethane, epoxy, acrylic terrazzo, etc.) or where the floor will be in contact with moisture sensitive equipment or product. When used, the design and installation should be in accordance with the guidance provided in ACI 302.1R and 302.2R. Final determination on the use of a vapor retarder should be left to the slab designer

All concrete placement and curing operations should follow the American Concrete Institute manual recommendations. Improper curing techniques and/or high slump (water-cement ratio) could cause excessive shrinkage, cracking or curling. The plastic properties of the concrete should be documented at the time of placement and specimens should also be prepared for strength testing to verify compliance with project specifications. Concrete slabs should be allowed to cure adequately before placing vinyl or other moisture sensitive floor covering.

## **6.7 Drainage**

The major cause of soil-related foundation and slab-on-ground problems is moisture increase in soils below structures. Properly functioning foundations and floor slabs-on-ground require appropriately constructed and maintained site drainage conditions. Therefore, it is extremely important that positive drainage be provided during construction and maintained throughout the life of the structure. It is also important that proper planning and control of landscape and irrigation practices be performed.

Infiltration of water into utility or foundation excavations must be prevented during construction. Backfill against footings, exterior walls, and in utility and sprinkler line trenches should be well compacted and free of all construction debris to minimize the possibility of moisture infiltration. If utility line trenches are backfilled with a granular

material, then a clay or concrete plug should be placed in the trench adjacent to the structure to prevent water from following the trench back under the structure.

In areas where sidewalks, patios or driveways do not immediately adjoin the structure, protective slopes should be provided with an outfall of about 5 percent for at least 10 feet from perimeter walls. Scuppers and/or gutters and drain pipes should be designed to provide drainage away from the structure for a minimum distance of 10 feet. Planters or other surface features that could retain water adjacent to the structure should be avoided if at all possible. If planters and/or landscaping are adjacent to or near the structure, there will be a greater potential for moisture infiltration, soil movement and structure distress. As a minimum, we recommend the following:

- Grades should slope away from the structure.
- Planters should slope away from the structure and should not pond water. Drains should be installed in enclosed planters to facilitate flow out of the planters.
- Only shallow rooted landscaping should be used.
- Watering should be kept to a minimum. Irrigation systems should be situated on the far side of any planting and away from the structure to minimize infiltration beneath foundations from possible leaks.
- For areas with highly expansive soils, a minimum of 5 feet should be maintained between building foundations and the shallow rooted plants. In like manner, for deeper-rooted plants, a minimum of 10 feet should be maintained. These deeper-rooted plants should still have a low moisture requirement.
- Trees should be planted no closer than a distance equal to three-quarters of their mature height or 15 feet, whichever is greater.

It should be understood that these recommendations will help minimize the potential for soil movement and resulting distress, but will not eliminate this potential.

## 6.8 Corrosivity to Concrete

The chemical test results indicate that the soils at the site classify as moderately corrosive to concrete (Class S1 in accordance with Table 19.3.1.1 of ACI 318-19). Concrete should be made with a cement that provides sulfate resistance and that has a maximum water-cementitious materials ratio and minimum compressive strength set forth in Table 19.3.2.1 of ACI 318-19.

## 6.9 Pavements

Based on existing subgrade conditions, the following pavement sections are recommended for the areas indicated:

Traffic Area	Asphalt Concrete Pavement (inches)	Base Course (inches)
Passenger car parking and drives (low traffic frequency)	3	4
Major access drives (medium traffic frequency)	4	5

Bituminous surfacing should be constructed of dense-graded, central plant-mix, asphalt concrete. Base course and asphalt concrete should conform with Lake Havasu City specifications.

Material and compaction requirements should conform to the recommendations presented under **EARTHWORK**. The gradient of paved surfaces should ensure positive drainage. Water should not pond in areas directly adjoining paved sections. The native subgrade soils will soften and lose stability if subjected to conditions which result in an increase in water content.

Due to the high static loads imposed by parked trucks in loading and unloading areas and at dumpster locations, we recommend that a rigid pavement section be considered for these areas. A minimum 6-inch thick concrete pavement over 4 inches of aggregate base course material is recommended.



### **6.9.1      Pavement Analyses**

The recommended pavement sections are based on the following conditions. This firm should be contacted if any of these conditions change so that revised recommendations can be provided, if necessary.

- a. A correlated R-value of 48 for the on-site soils which corresponds to a resilient modulus of approximately 26,000 pounds per square inch. Any required fills should be constructed using on-site or imported materials with subgrade support characteristics equal to or greater than the subgrade soils in the area being filled.
- b. Structural coefficients of 0.40 for asphalt concrete and 0.12 for aggregate base course material.
- c. A present serviceability index of 4.5, a terminal serviceability index of 2.5, an overall standard deviation of 0.35, a reliability factor of 85 percent, a drainage coefficient of 0.85, a seasonal variation factor of 1.0, and a design life of 20 years.
- d. Assumed total 18-kip equivalent single axle loads (ESAL) of 25,000 for the passenger car parking/drive areas and 50,000 for the major access drives.

## **7.0      EARTHWORK**

### **7.1      General**

The conclusions contained in this report for the proposed construction are contingent upon compliance with recommendations presented in this section. Any excavating, trenching, or disturbance that occurs after completion of the earthwork must be backfilled, compacted and tested in accordance with the recommendations contained herein. It is not reasonable to rely upon our conclusions and recommendations if any future unobserved and untested trenching, earthwork activities or backfilling occurs.

## 7.2 Site Clearing

Strip and remove any existing fill, vegetation, debris, trees, and any other deleterious materials from the building and pavement areas. The building area is defined as that area within the building footprint plus 5 feet beyond the perimeter of that footprint. All exposed surfaces should be free of mounds and depressions that could prevent uniform compaction.

## 7.3 Excavation

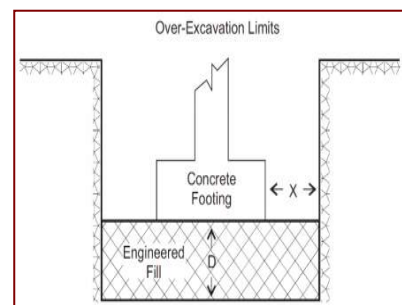
We anticipate that excavations into the site soils for the proposed construction can be accomplished with conventional equipment. On-site soils will pump or become unworkable at high water contents. Workability may be improved by scarifying and drying. Overexcavation of wet zones and replacement with imported granular materials may be necessary. The use of lightweight excavation and compaction equipment may be required to minimize subgrade pumping.

### 7.3.1 Cut and Fill Slopes

Cut slopes should be constructed no steeper than 2:1 (horizontal:vertical) to limit erosion, and to provide slope protection. Specific slope stability analyses were beyond the scope of this evaluation. However, our experience indicates that 2:1 (horizontal:vertical) compacted fill or cut slopes should be stable up to moderate heights of about 15 to 20 feet. Slopes of 3:1 or flatter may be desirable for landscaping and maintenance. We are available for additional consultation or more detailed analysis when grading plans have been developed.

## 7.4 Shallow Foundation Preparation

In footing areas, remove existing soils to a minimum depth of 2.5 feet below the bottom of the footing (depth D in the diagram). Removal should extend a minimum of 1 foot beyond the footing edges (length X in the diagram). Replace with engineered fill material.



## 7.5 Conventional Interior Slab Preparation

Scarify, moisten or dry as required, and compact all subgrade soils to a minimum depth of 8 inches. The subgrade preparation should be accomplished in a manner that will result in uniform water contents and densities after compaction. All subgrade preparation in the building area should extend a minimum of 5 feet beyond perimeter footings.

## 7.6 Pavement Preparation

Prior to placement of fill and/or pavement materials, the exposed subgrade soils should be proof-rolled and observed by the geotechnical engineer or his qualified representative to verify that stable subgrade conditions exist. Any loose, soft, disturbed, or otherwise unsuitable materials should be over-excavated and replaced with engineered fill. The subgrade should then be scarified, moisture conditioned as required, and recompactd for a minimum depth of 8 inches.

## 7.7 Materials

a. Clean on-site soils with low expansive potentials and a maximum dimension of 6 inches or imported materials may be used as fill material for the following:

- Foundation areas
- Backfill
- Landscape areas

b. Frozen soils should not be used as fill or backfill.

c. Imported soils should conform to the following:

- Gradation (ASTM C136): percent finer by weight

6" .....	100
4" .....	85-100
$\frac{3}{4}$ " .....	70-100
No. 4 Sieve.....	50-100
No. 200 Sieve .....	40 (max)

- Maximum expansive potential (%)<sup>4</sup> .....1.5
- Maximum soluble sulfates (%) .....0.10

d. Base course should conform to current Lake Havasu City specifications.

## 7.8 **Placement and Compaction**

- a. Place and compact fill in horizontal lifts, using equipment and procedures that will produce recommended water contents and densities throughout the lift.
- b. Uncompacted lift thickness should not exceed 8 inches.
- c. No fill should be placed over frozen ground.
- d. Materials should be compacted to the following:

### **Minimum Percent Material Compaction (ASTM D698)**

- Imported and on-site soils, fill and reworked:
  - Below foundations ..... 95
  - Below slabs-on-grade..... 95
  - Pavement areas ..... 95
  - Landscape areas..... 85
- Aggregate base
  - Slab-on-grade areas..... 95
  - Pavement areas ..... 100
- Structural backfill..... 95
- Nonstructural backfill ..... 90

---

<sup>4</sup> Measured on a sample compacted to approximately 95 percent of the ASTM D698 maximum dry density at about 3 percent below optimum water content. The sample is confined under a 100 psf surcharge and submerged.

- e. On-site and imported soils with low expansive potential and aggregate base course materials should be compacted with a moisture content in the range of 3 percent below to 3 percent above optimum.

## 7.9 Compliance

Recommendations for foundations, slabs-on-grade and pavements supported on compacted fills or prepared subgrade depend upon compliance with the **EARTHWORK** recommendations. To assess compliance, observation and testing should be performed under the direction of a WT geotechnical engineer. Please contact us to provide these observation and testing services.

## 8.0 **ADDITIONAL SERVICES**

The recommendations provided in this report are based on the assumption that a sufficient schedule of tests and observations will be performed during construction to verify compliance. At a minimum, these tests and observations should be comprised of the following:

- Observations and testing during site preparation and earthwork,
- Observation of foundation excavations, and
- Consultation as may be required during construction.

Retaining the geotechnical engineer who developed your report to provide construction observation is the best way to verify compliance and to help you manage the risks associated with unanticipated conditions.

## 9.0 **LIMITATIONS**

This report has been prepared assuming the project criteria described in **2.0 PROJECT DESCRIPTION**. If changes in the project criteria occur, or if different subsurface conditions are encountered or become known, the conclusions and recommendations presented herein shall become invalid. In any such event, WT should be contacted in order to assess the effect that such variations may have on our conclusions and recommendations. If WT is not retained for the

construction observation and testing services to determine compliance with this report, our professional responsibility is accordingly limited.

The recommendations presented are based entirely upon data derived from a limited number of samples obtained from two widely spaced explorations. The attached logs are indicators of subsurface conditions only at the specific locations and times noted. This report assumes the uniformity of the geology and soil structure between explorations, however variations can and often do exist. Whenever any deviation, difference, or change is encountered or becomes known, WT should be contacted.

This report is for the exclusive benefit of our client alone. There are no intended third-party beneficiaries of our contract with the client or this report, and nothing contained in the contract or this report shall create any express or implied contractual or any other relationship with, or claim or cause of action for, any third party against WT.

This report is valid for the earlier of one year from the date of issuance, a change in circumstances, or discovered variations. After expiration, no person or entity shall rely on this report without the express written authorization of WT.

## **10.0 CLOSURE**

We prepared this report as an aid to the designers of the proposed project. The comments, statements, recommendations and conclusions set forth in this report reflect the opinions of the authors. These opinions are based upon data obtained at the location of the explorations, and from laboratory tests. Work on your project was performed in accordance with generally accepted standards and practices utilized by professionals providing similar services in this locality. No other warranty, express or implied, is made.



Not to Scale



Approximate Test Boring Location



LAB BUILDING

Boring Location Diagram

**Western Technologies Inc.**

Job No.: 25-224210-0

Plate: 1



<b>Allowable Soil Bearing Capacity</b>	The recommended maximum contact stress developed at the interface of the foundation element and the supporting material.
<b>Backfill</b>	A specified material placed and compacted in a confined area.
<b>Base Course</b>	A layer of specified aggregate material placed on a subgrade or subbase.
<b>Base Course Grade</b>	Top of base course.
<b>Bench</b>	A horizontal surface in a sloped deposit.
<b>Caisson/Drilled Shaft</b>	A concrete foundation element cast in a circular excavation which may have an enlarged base (or belled caisson).
<b>Concrete Slabs-On-Grade</b>	A concrete surface layer cast directly upon base course, subbase or subgrade.
<b>Crushed Rock Base Course</b>	A base course composed of crushed rock of a specified gradation.
<b>Differential Settlement</b>	Unequal settlement between or within foundation elements of a structure.
<b>Engineered Fill</b>	Specified soil or aggregate material placed and compacted to specified density and/or moisture conditions under observations of a representative of a soil engineer.
<b>Existing Fill</b>	Materials deposited through the action of man prior to exploration of the site.
<b>Existing Grade</b>	The ground surface at the time of field exploration.
<b>Expansive Potential</b>	The potential of a soil to expand (increase in volume) due to absorption of moisture.
<b>Fill</b>	Materials deposited by the actions of man.
<b>Finished Grade</b>	The final grade created as a part of the project.
<b>Gravel Base Course</b>	A base course composed of naturally occurring gravel with a specified gradation.
<b>Heave</b>	Upward movement.
<b>Native Grade</b>	The naturally occurring ground surface.
<b>Native Soil</b>	Naturally occurring on-site soil.
<b>Rock</b>	A natural aggregate of mineral grains connected by strong and permanent cohesive forces. Usually requires drilling, wedging, blasting or other methods of extraordinary force for excavation.
<b>Sand and Gravel Base Course</b>	A base course of sand and gravel of a specified gradation.
<b>Sand Base Course</b>	A base course composed primarily of sand of a specified gradation.
<b>Scarify</b>	To mechanically loosen soil or break down existing soil structure.
<b>Settlement</b>	Downward movement.
<b>Soil</b>	Any unconsolidated material composed of discrete solid particles, derived from the physical and/or chemical disintegration of vegetable or mineral matter, which can be separated by gentle mechanical means such as agitation in water.
<b>Strip</b>	To remove from present location.
<b>Subbase</b>	A layer of specified material placed to form a layer between the subgrade and base course.
<b>Subbase Grade</b>	Top of subbase.
<b>Subgrade</b>	Prepared native soil surface.



## DEFINITION OF TERMINOLOGY

PLATE

**A-1**



**COARSE-GRAINED SOILS**  
LESS THAN 50% FINES

GROUP SYMBOLS	DESCRIPTION	MAJOR DIVISIONS
<b>GW</b>	WELL-GRADED GRAVEL OR WELL-GRADED GRAVEL WITH SAND, LESS THAN 5% FINES	GRAVELS  MORE THAN HALF OF COARSE FRACTION IS LARGER THAN NO. 4 SIEVE SIZE
<b>GP</b>	POORLY-GRADED GRAVEL OR POORLY-GRADED GRAVEL WITH SAND, LESS THAN 5% FINES	
<b>GM</b>	SILTY GRAVEL OR SILTY GRAVEL WITH SAND, MORE THAN 12% FINES	
<b>GC</b>	CLAYEY GRAVEL OR CLAYEY GRAVEL WITH SAND, MORE THAN 12% FINES	
<b>SW</b>	WELL-GRADED SAND OR WELL-GRADED SAND WITH GRAVEL, LESS THAN 5% FINES	SANDS  MORE THAN HALF OF COARSE FRACTION IS SMALLER THAN NO. 4 SIEVE SIZE
<b>SP</b>	POORLY-GRADED SAND OR POORLY-GRADED SAND WITH GRAVEL, LESS THAN 5% FINES	
<b>SM</b>	SILTY SAND OR SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL, MORE THAN 12% FINES	
<b>SC</b>	CLAYEY SAND OR CLAYEY SAND WITH GRAVEL, MORE THAN 12% FINES	

**NOTE:** Coarse-grained soils receive dual symbols if they contain 5% to 12% fines (e.g., SW-SM, GP-GC).

**FINE-GRAINED SOILS**  
MORE THAN 50% FINES

GROUP SYMBOLS	DESCRIPTION	MAJOR DIVISIONS
<b>ML</b>	SILT, SILT WITH SAND OR GRAVEL, SANDY SILT, OR GRAVELLY SILT	SILTS AND CLAYS  LIQUID LIMIT LESS THAN 50
<b>CL</b>	LEAN CLAY OF LOW TO MEDIUM PLASTICITY, SANDY CLAY, OR GRAVELLY CLAY	
<b>OL</b>	ORGANIC SILT OR ORGANIC CLAY OF LOW TO MEDIUM PLASTICITY	
<b>MH</b>	ELASTIC SILT, SANDY ELASTIC SILT, OR GRAVELLY ELASTIC SILT	SILTS AND CLAYS  LIQUID LIMIT MORE THAN 50
<b>CH</b>	FAT CLAY OF HIGH PLASTICITY, SANDY FAT CLAY, OR GRAVELLY FAT CLAY	
<b>OH</b>	ORGANIC SILT OR ORGANIC CLAY OF HIGH PLASTICITY	
<b>PT</b>	PEAT AND OTHER HIGHLY ORGANIC SOILS	HIGHLY ORGANIC SOILS

**NOTE:** Fine-grained soils may receive dual classification based upon plasticity characteristics (e.g. CL-ML).

**SOIL SIZES**

COMPONENT	SIZE RANGE
BOULDERS	Above 12 in.
COBBLES	3 in. – 12 in.
GRAVEL	No. 4 – 3 in.
Coarse	¾ in. – 3 in.
Fine	No. 4 – ¾ in.
SAND	No. 200 – No. 4
Coarse	No. 10 – No. 4
Medium	No. 40 – No. 10
Fine	No. 200 – No. 40
Fines (Silt or Clay)	Below No. 200

**NOTE:** Only sizes smaller than three inches are used to classify soils

**CONSISTENCY**

CLAYS & SILTS	BLOWS PER FOOT
VERY SOFT	0 – 2
SOFT	3 – 4
FIRM	5 – 8
STIFF	9 – 15
VERY STIFF	16 – 30
HARD	OVER 30

**RELATIVE DENSITY**

SANDS & GRAVELS	BLOWS PER FOOT
VERY LOOSE	0 – 4
LOOSE	5 – 10
MEDIUM DENSE	11 – 30
DENSE	31 – 50
VERY DENSE	OVER 50

**NOTE:** Number of blows using 140-pound hammer falling 30 inches to drive a 2-inch-OD (1½-inch ID) split-barrel sampler (ASTM D1586).

**PLASTICITY OF FINE GRAINED SOILS**

PLASTICITY INDEX	TERM
0	NON-PLASTIC
1 – 7	LOW
8 – 20	MEDIUM
Over 20	HIGH

**DEFINITION OF WATER CONTENT**

DRY
SLIGHTLY DAMP
DAMP
MOIST
WET
SATURATED



**METHOD OF CLASSIFICATION**

PLATE

**A-2**

The number shown in "**BORING NO.**" refers to the approximate location of the same number indicated on the "Boring Location Diagram" as positioned in the field by pacing or measurement from property lines and/or existing features.

"**DRILLING TYPE**" refers to the exploratory equipment used in the boring wherein **HSA = hollow stem auger**, and the dimension presented is the outside diameter of the HSA used.

"**R**" in "**BLOW COUNTS**" refers to a 3-inch outside diameter ring-lined split barrel sampler driven into the ground with a 140 pound drop-hammer dropped 30 inches repeatedly until a penetration of 12 inches is achieved or until refusal. The number of blows required to advance the sampler 12 inches is defined as the "**R**" blow count. The "**R**" blow count requires an engineered conversion to an equivalent SPT N-Value. Refusal to penetration is considered more than 50 blows per foot. An **X** within the symbol indicates no sample recovery. A half-filled **X** within the symbol indicates sample disturbance.

"**SAMPLE TYPE**" refers to the form of sample recovery, in which **R** = Ring-lined sample and **G** = Grab sample.

"**DRY DENSITY (LBS/CU FT)**" refers to the laboratory-determined dry density in pounds per cubic foot.

"**WATER (MOISTURE) CONTENT**" (% of Dry Wt.) refers to the laboratory-determined water content in percent using the standard test method ASTM D2216.

"**USCS**" refers to the "Unified Soil Classification System" Group Symbol for the soil type as defined by ASTM D2487 and D2488. The soils were classified visually in the field, and where appropriate, classifications were modified by visual examination of samples in the laboratory and/or by appropriate tests.

These notes and boring logs are intended for use in conjunction with the purposes of our services defined in the text. Boring log data should not be construed as part of the construction plans nor as defining construction conditions.

Boring logs depict our interpretations of subsurface conditions at the locations and on the date(s) noted. Variations in subsurface conditions and characteristics may occur between borings. Groundwater levels may fluctuate due to seasonal variations and other factors.

The stratification lines shown on the boring logs represent our interpretation of the approximate boundary between soil or rock types based upon visual field classification at the boring location. The transition between materials is approximate and may be more or less gradual than indicated.





## BORING LOG NOTES

PLATE

A-3

<b>Project: Lab Building</b>  <b>Project Number: 25-224210-0</b>	<b>BORING NO. 1</b>	 <b>Western Technologies</b> <small>An RMA Company</small>
--	---------------------	---

Date(s) Drilled <b>7/16/24</b>	Logged By <b>S. Garcia</b>	Checked By <b>S. Garcia</b>
Drilling Method <b>HSA</b>	Drill Bit Size/Type <b>6" HSA</b>	Approximate Surface Elevation <b>Not Determined</b>
Drill Rig Type <b>CME-75</b>	Drilling Contractor <b>Integrity</b>	
Groundwater Level and Date Measured <b>Not Encountered</b>	Location <b>See Location Diagram</b>	

Water Content, %	Dry Unit Weight, pcf	Sample Type	Sample	Sampling Resistance, blows/ft	Depth (feet)	Soil Type	Graphic Log	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION
5.8			G		0	SM		Silty SAND; with gravel, tan/gray, very dense, slightly damp
								random amounts of cobbles and boulders
			R	50/1"				Auger Refusal at 3 Feet on Cobbles and Boulders
					5			
					10			
					15			
					20			

**Figure A-4**

<b>Project: Lab Building</b>  <b>Project Number: 25-224210-0</b>	<b>BORING NO. 2</b>	
--	---------------------	---

Date(s) Drilled <b>7/16/24</b>	Logged By <b>S. Garcia</b>	Checked By <b>S. Garcia</b>
Drilling Method <b>HSA</b>	Drill Bit Size/Type <b>6" HSA</b>	Approximate Surface Elevation <b>Not Determined</b>
Drill Rig Type <b>CME-75</b>	Drilling Contractor <b>Integrity</b>	
Groundwater Level and Date Measured <b>Not Encountered</b>	Location <b>See Location Diagram</b>	

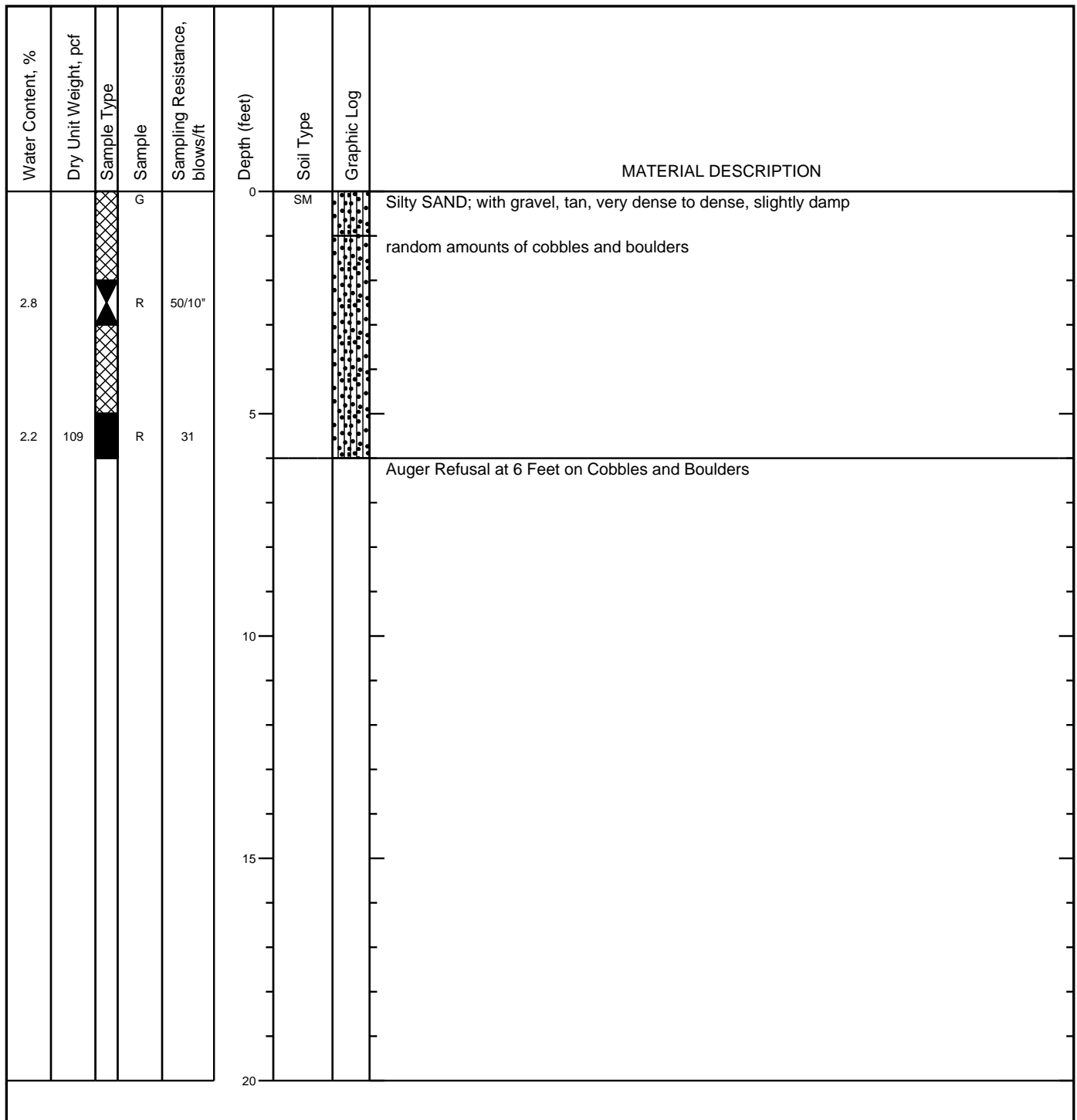


Figure A-5

Project: Lab Building	<b>BORING NO. 3</b>	
Project Number: 25-224210-0		

Date(s) Drilled <b>7/16/24</b>	Logged By <b>S. Garcia</b>	Checked By <b>S. Garcia</b>
Drilling Method <b>HSA</b>	Drill Bit Size/Type <b>6" HSA</b>	Approximate Surface Elevation <b>Not Determined</b>
Drill Rig Type <b>CME-75</b>	Drilling Contractor <b>Integrity</b>	
Groundwater Level and Date Measured <b>Not Encountered</b>	Location <b>See Location Diagram</b>	

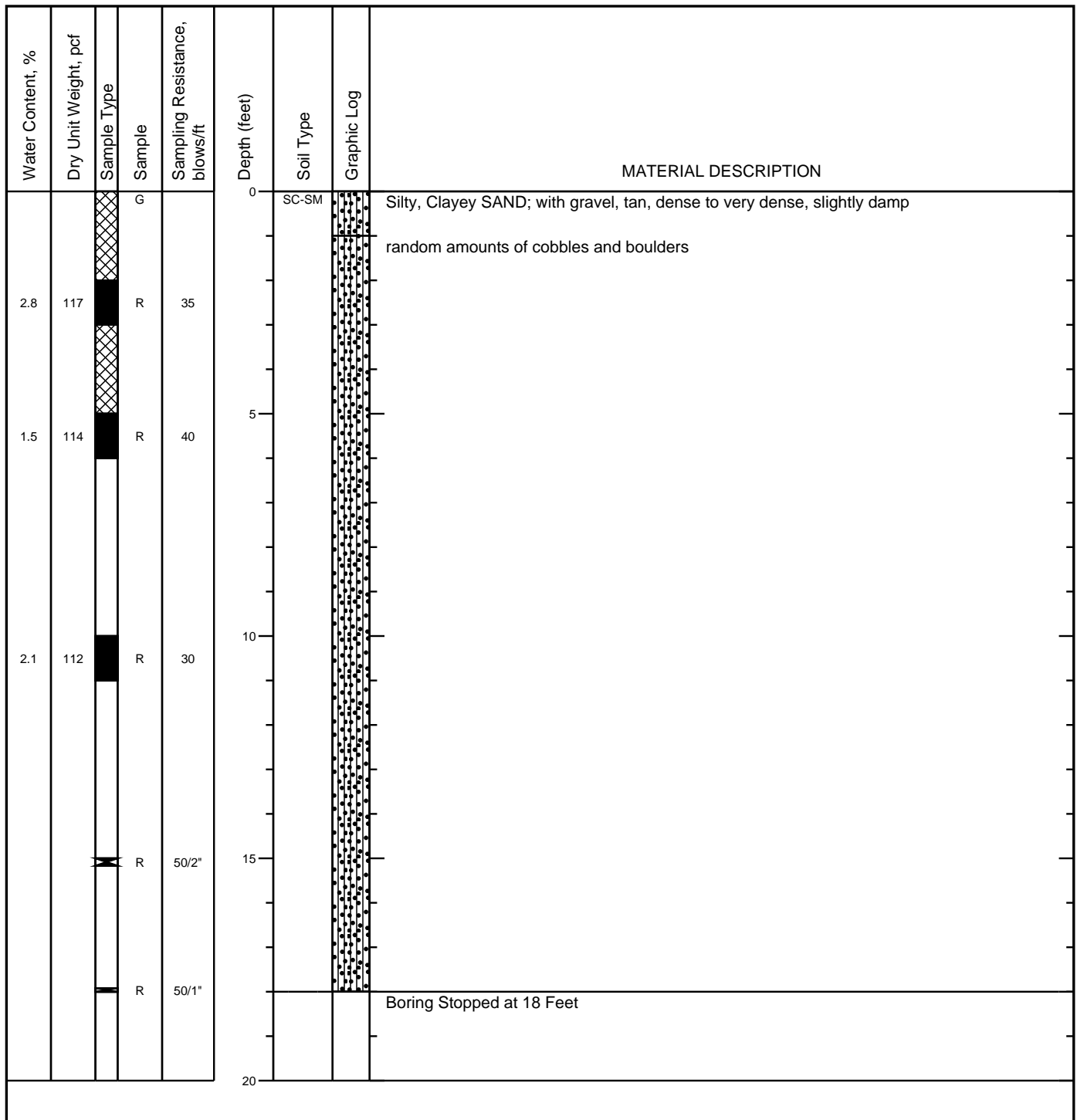


Figure A-6

Project: Lab Building	<b>BORING NO. 4</b>	
Project Number: 25-224210-0		

Date(s) Drilled <b>7/16/24</b>	Logged By <b>S. Garcia</b>	Checked By <b>S. Garcia</b>
Drilling Method <b>HSA</b>	Drill Bit Size/Type <b>6" HSA</b>	Approximate Surface Elevation <b>Not Determined</b>
Drill Rig Type <b>CME-75</b>	Drilling Contractor <b>Integrity</b>	
Groundwater Level and Date Measured <b>Not Encountered</b>	Location <b>See Location Diagram</b>	

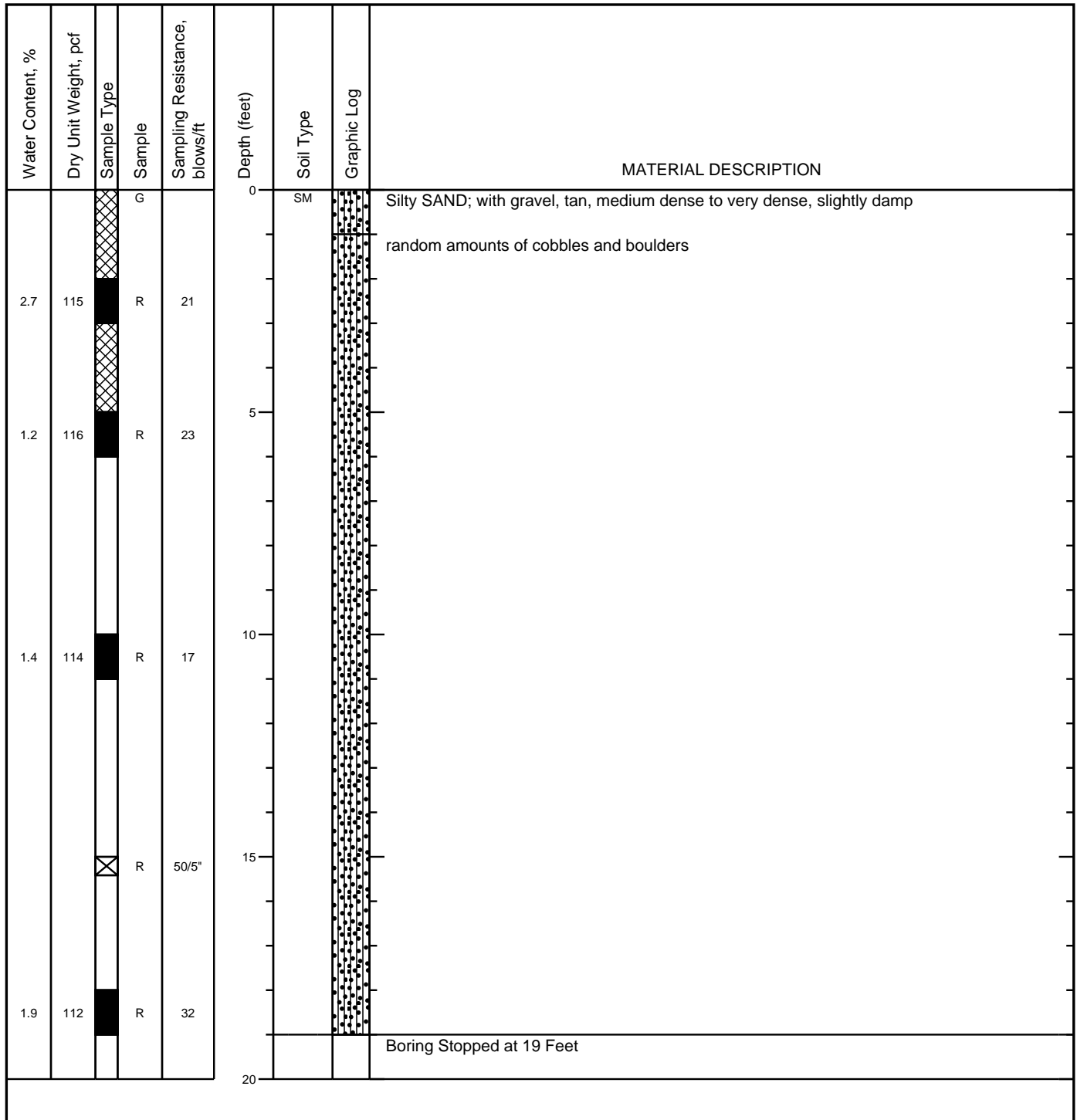
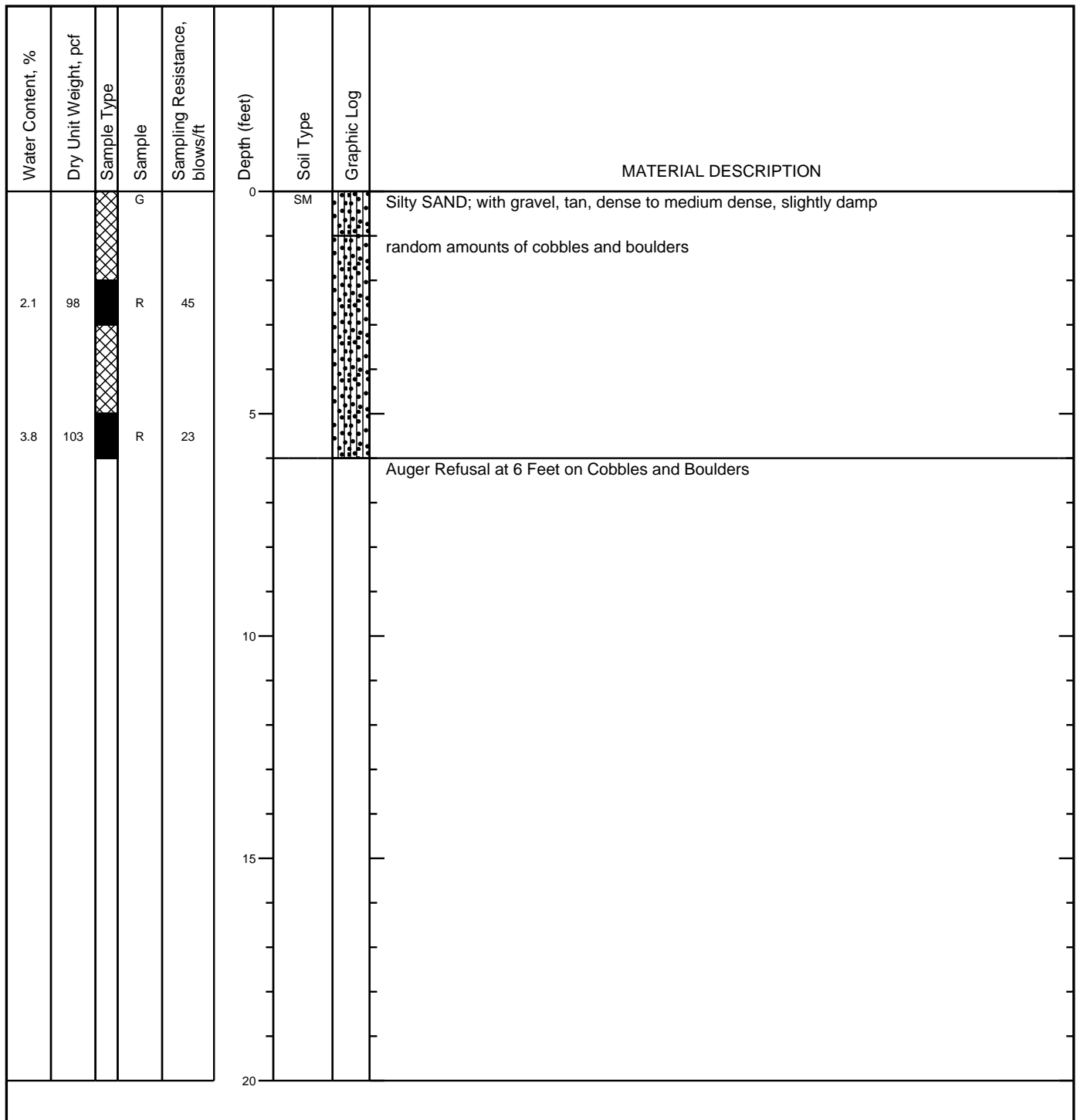


Figure A-7

<b>Project: Lab Building</b>  <b>Project Number: 25-224210-0</b>	<b>BORING NO. 5</b>	 <b>Western Technologies</b> <small>An RMA Company</small>
--	---------------------	---

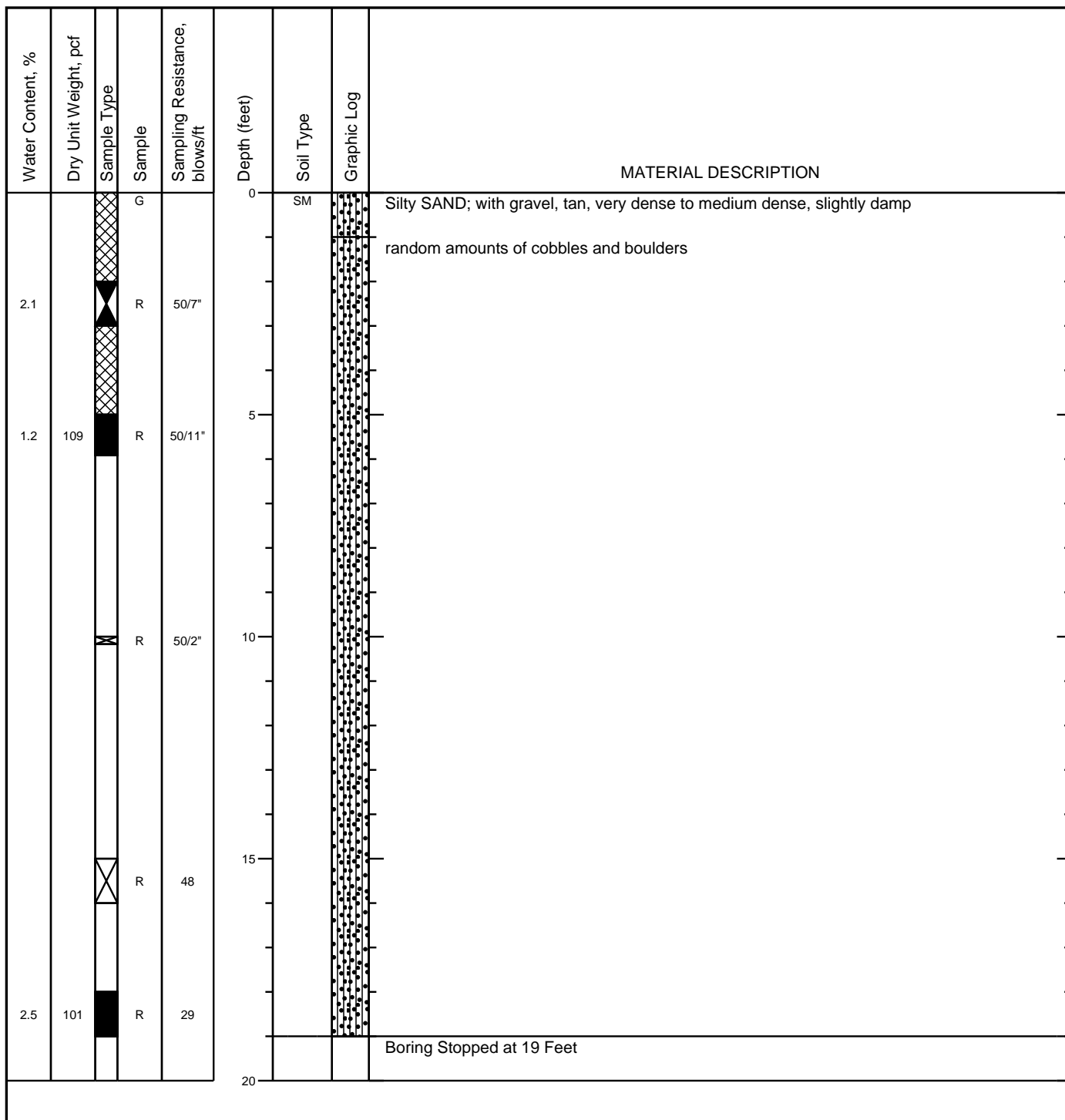
Date(s) Drilled <b>7/16/24</b>	Logged By <b>S. Garcia</b>	Checked By <b>S. Garcia</b>
Drilling Method <b>HSA</b>	Drill Bit Size/Type <b>6" HSA</b>	Approximate Surface Elevation <b>Not Determined</b>
Drill Rig Type <b>CME-75</b>	Drilling Contractor <b>Integrity</b>	
Groundwater Level and Date Measured <b>Not Encountered</b>	Location <b>See Location Diagram</b>	



**Figure A-8**

<b>Project: Lab Building</b>  <b>Project Number: 25-224210-0</b>	<b>BORING NO. 6</b>	
--	---------------------	---

Date(s) Drilled <b>7/16/24</b>	Logged By <b>S. Garcia</b>	Checked By <b>S. Garcia</b>
Drilling Method <b>HSA</b>	Drill Bit Size/Type <b>6" HSA</b>	Approximate Surface Elevation <b>Not Determined</b>
Drill Rig Type <b>CME-75</b>	Drilling Contractor <b>Integrity</b>	
Groundwater Level and Date Measured <b>Not Encountered</b>	Location <b>See Location Diagram</b>	



**Figure A-9**



<b>Project: Lab Building</b>  <b>Project Number: 25-224210-0</b>	<b>BORING NO. 7</b>	 <b>Western Technologies</b> <small>An RMA Company</small>
--	---------------------	---

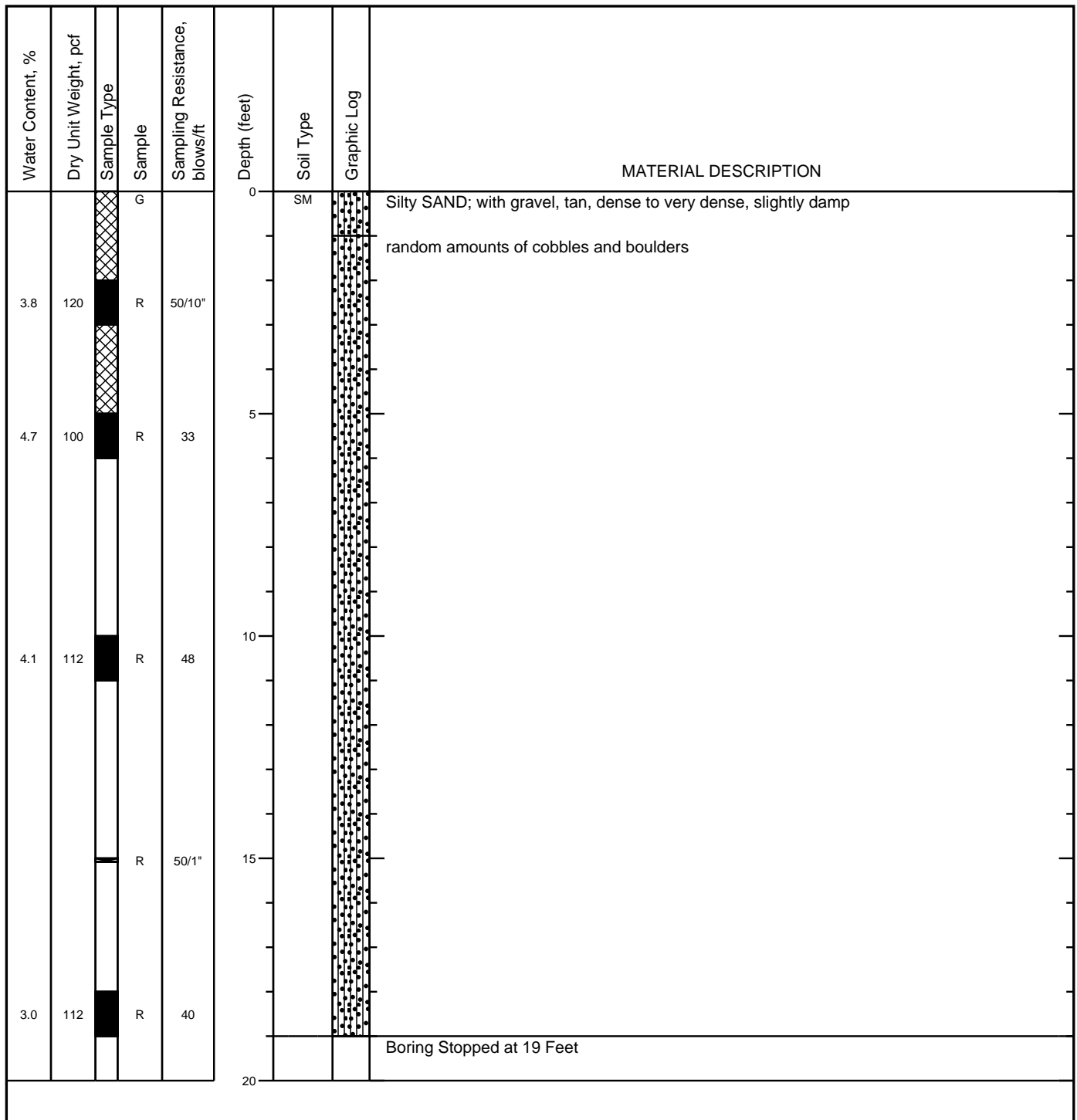
Date(s) Drilled <b>7/16/24</b>	Logged By <b>S. Garcia</b>	Checked By <b>S. Garcia</b>
Drilling Method <b>HSA</b>	Drill Bit Size/Type <b>6" HSA</b>	Approximate Surface Elevation <b>Not Determined</b>
Drill Rig Type <b>CME-75</b>	Drilling Contractor <b>Integrity</b>	
Groundwater Level and Date Measured <b>Not Encountered</b>	Location <b>See Location Diagram</b>	

Water Content, %	Dry Unit Weight, pcf	Sample Type	Sample	Sampling Resistance, blows/ft	Depth (feet)	Soil Type	Graphic Log	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION
			G		0	SM		
5.4	97		R	29				Silty SAND; with gravel, tan, medium dense to very dense, slightly damp
								random amounts of cobbles and bouldrs
3.5	110		R	50/11"	5			
								Auger Refusal at 6 Feet on Cobbles and Boulders
					10			
					15			
					20			

**Figure A-10**

<b>Project: Lab Building</b>  <b>Project Number: 25-224210-0</b>	<b>BORING NO. 8</b>	 <b>Western Technologies</b> <small>An RMA Company</small>
--	---------------------	---







Date(s) Drilled <b>7/16/24</b>	Logged By <b>S. Garcia</b>	Checked By <b>S. Garcia</b>
Drilling Method <b>HSA</b>	Drill Bit Size/Type <b>6" HSA</b>	Approximate Surface Elevation <b>Not Determined</b>
Drill Rig Type <b>CME-75</b>	Drilling Contractor <b>Integrity</b>	
Groundwater Level and Date Measured <b>Not Encountered</b>	Location <b>See Location Diagram</b>	



**Figure A-11**

<b>Project: Lab Building</b>  <b>Project Number: 25-224210-0</b>	<b>BORING NO. 9</b>	 <b>Western Technologies</b> <small>An RMA Company</small>
--	---------------------	---

Date(s) Drilled <b>7/16/24</b>	Logged By <b>S. Garcia</b>	Checked By <b>S. Garcia</b>
Drilling Method <b>HSA</b>	Drill Bit Size/Type <b>6" HSA</b>	Approximate Surface Elevation <b>Not Determined</b>
Drill Rig Type <b>CME-75</b>	Drilling Contractor <b>Integrity</b>	
Groundwater Level and Date Measured <b>Not Encountered</b>	Location <b>See Location Diagram</b>	

Water Content, %	Dry Unit Weight, pcf	Sample Type	Sample	Sampling Resistance, blows/ft	Depth (feet)	Soil Type	Graphic Log	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION
1.9			G		0	SP-SM		Poorly-Graded SAND; with silt and gravel, tan, dense to medium dense, slightly damp
			R	39				random amounts of cobbles and boulders
			R	30	5			
								Auger Refusal at 6 Feet on Cobbles and Boulders
					10			
					15			
					20			

**Figure A-12**

<b>Project: Lab Building</b>  <b>Project Number: 25-224210-0</b>	<b>BORING NO. 10</b>	
--	----------------------	---

Date(s) Drilled <b>7/16/24</b>	Logged By <b>S. Garcia</b>	Checked By <b>S. Garcia</b>
Drilling Method <b>HSA</b>	Drill Bit Size/Type <b>6" HSA</b>	Approximate Surface Elevation <b>Not Determined</b>
Drill Rig Type <b>CME-75</b>	Drilling Contractor <b>Integrity</b>	
Groundwater Level and Date Measured <b>Not Encountered</b>	Location <b>See Location Diagram</b>	

Water Content, %	Dry Unit Weight, pcf	Sample Type	Sample	Sampling Resistance, blows/ft	Depth (feet)	Soil Type	Graphic Log	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION
			G		0	GP-GM		Poorly-Graded GRAVEL; with silt and sand, tan/gray, loose to medium dense, slightly damp
			R	21				random amounts of cobbles and boulders
			R	10				
			R	17				
					10			Auger Refusal at 11 Feet on Cobbles and Boulders
					15			
					20			

**Figure A-13**


Boring No.	Depth (ft)	USCS Class.	Particle Size Distribution (%) Passing by Weight							Atterberg Limits		Laboratory Compaction Characteristics			Remarks
			3"	¾"	#4	#10	#40	#200	2μ	LL	PI	Dry Density (pcf)	Optimum Moisture (%)	Method	
1	0-3	SM	100	94	62	47	30	12.5			NP				2
3	0-5	SC-SM	100	95	71	51	32	18.9		23	7				2
5	0-5	SM	100	92	71	55	34	16.3			NP				2
9	0-5	SP-SM	100	96	67	52	35	6.7			NP				2
10	0-5	GP-GM	100	75	35	28	20	5.8			NP				2

**NOTE:** NP = Non-plastic  
μ = microns (2μ = 0.002mm)

**REMARKS**

Classification / Particle Size / Moisture-Density Relationship

1. Visual
2. Laboratory Tested
3. Minus #200 Only
4. Test Method ASTM D698/AASHTO T99
5. Test Method ASTM D1557/AASHTO T180
6. From the ADOT Family of Curves

	PROJECT: LAB BUILDING JOB NO.: 25-224210-0	PLATE  <b>B-1</b>
	<b>SOIL PROPERTIES</b>	

Boring No.	Depth (ft.)	USCS Class.	Initial Dry Density (pcf)	Initial Water Content (%)	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics			Expansion Properties		Plasticity		Soluble		Remarks
					Dry Density(pcf)	Optimum Moisture(%)	Method	Surcharge (ksf)	Expansion (%)	LL	PI	Salts (ppm)	Sulfate (ppm)	
3	0-5	SC-SM	116.3	5.1	130.0	8.6	A	0.1	0.3					1,2,3
9	0-5	SP-SM			131.5	8.0	A							3

**Notes:** Initial Dry Density and Initial Water Content are remolded.

**Remarks**

1. Compacted density (approx. 95% of ASTM D698 max. density at moisture content slightly below optimum.)
2. Submerged to approximate saturation.
3. Test Method ASTM D698/AASHTO T99
4. Test Method ASTM D1557/AASHTO T180
5. From the ADOT Family of Curves



PROJECT: LAB BUILDING  
JOB NO.: 25-224210-0

**SOIL PROPERTIES**

PLATE

**B-2**



**Nortest Analytical**  
An **RMA** Company

Reported: 8/1/2024  
Received: 7/30/2024

LABORATORY ANALYSIS REPORT

Project: 25-224210-0

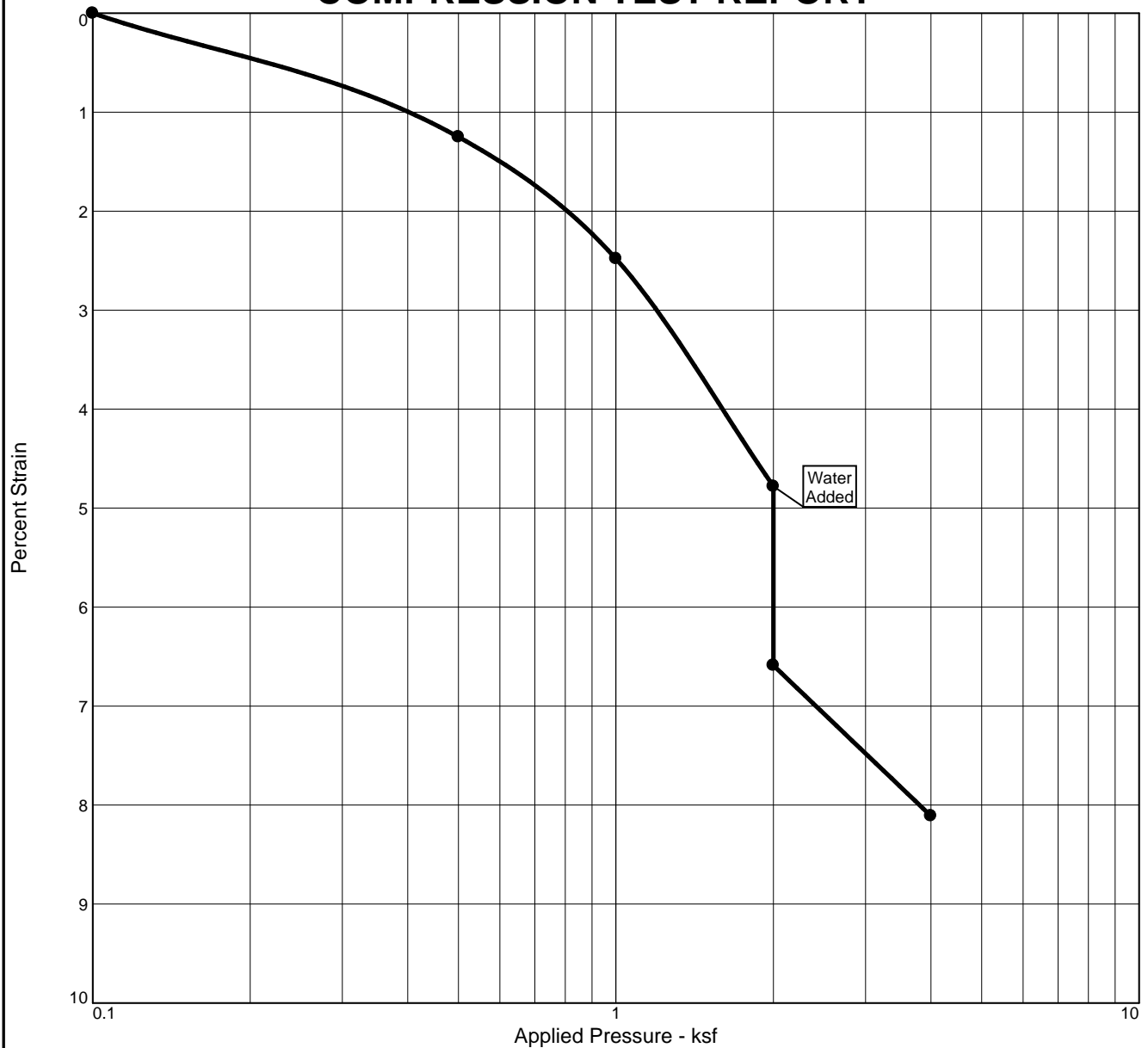
Lab Number  
24S0154

Sample ID  
3(0-5)

Test Parameter

<i>Test</i>	<i>Method</i>	<i>Result</i>	<i>Units</i>
Soluble Salts	ARIZ 237b	8,087	ppm
Sulfate	ARIZ 733b	474	ppm
Chloride	ARIZ 736b	1,329	ppm

# COMPRESSION TEST REPORT



Natural		Dry Dens. (pcf)	LL	PI	Sp. Gr.	Overburden (ksf)	P <sub>C</sub> (ksf)	C <sub>C</sub>	C <sub>r</sub>	Swell Press. (ksf)	Clpse. %	e <sub>o</sub>
Sat.	Moist.											
16.5 %	3.8 %	103.0			2.65						1.8	0.607

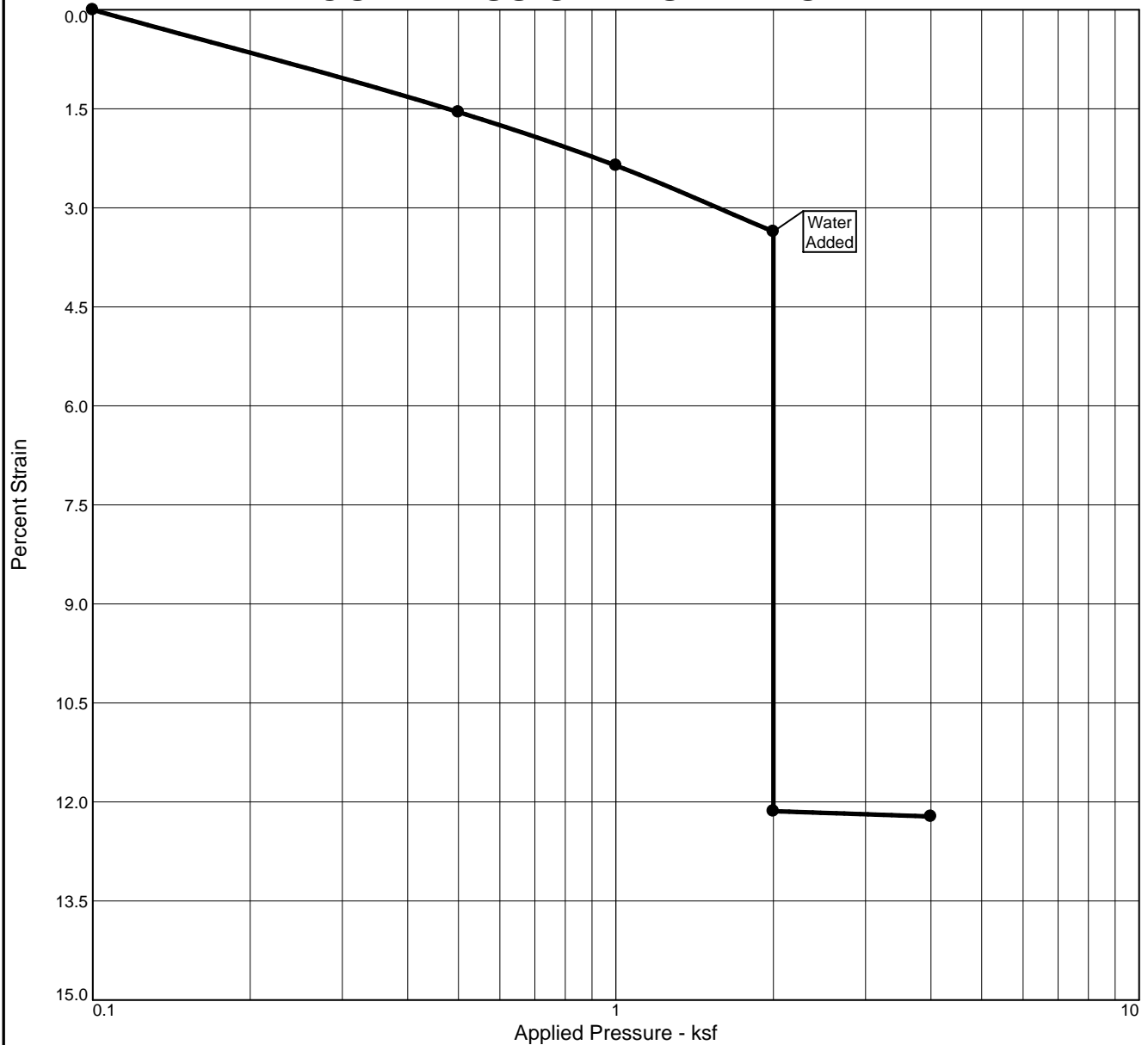
MATERIAL DESCRIPTION										USCS	AASHTO
SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL										SM	

<b>Project No.</b> 25-224210-0		<b>Client:</b> LAKE HAVASU CITY - PUBLIC WORKS		<b>Remarks:</b>
<b>Project:</b> LAB BUILDING				
<b>Source:</b> RING SAMPLE		<b>Depth:</b> 5-6 FEET	<b>Sample No.:</b> BORING 5	
<b>Western Technologies, Inc.</b>				
<b>Flagstaff, AZ</b>				<b>Figure B-4</b>

Figure B-4



# COMPRESSION TEST REPORT



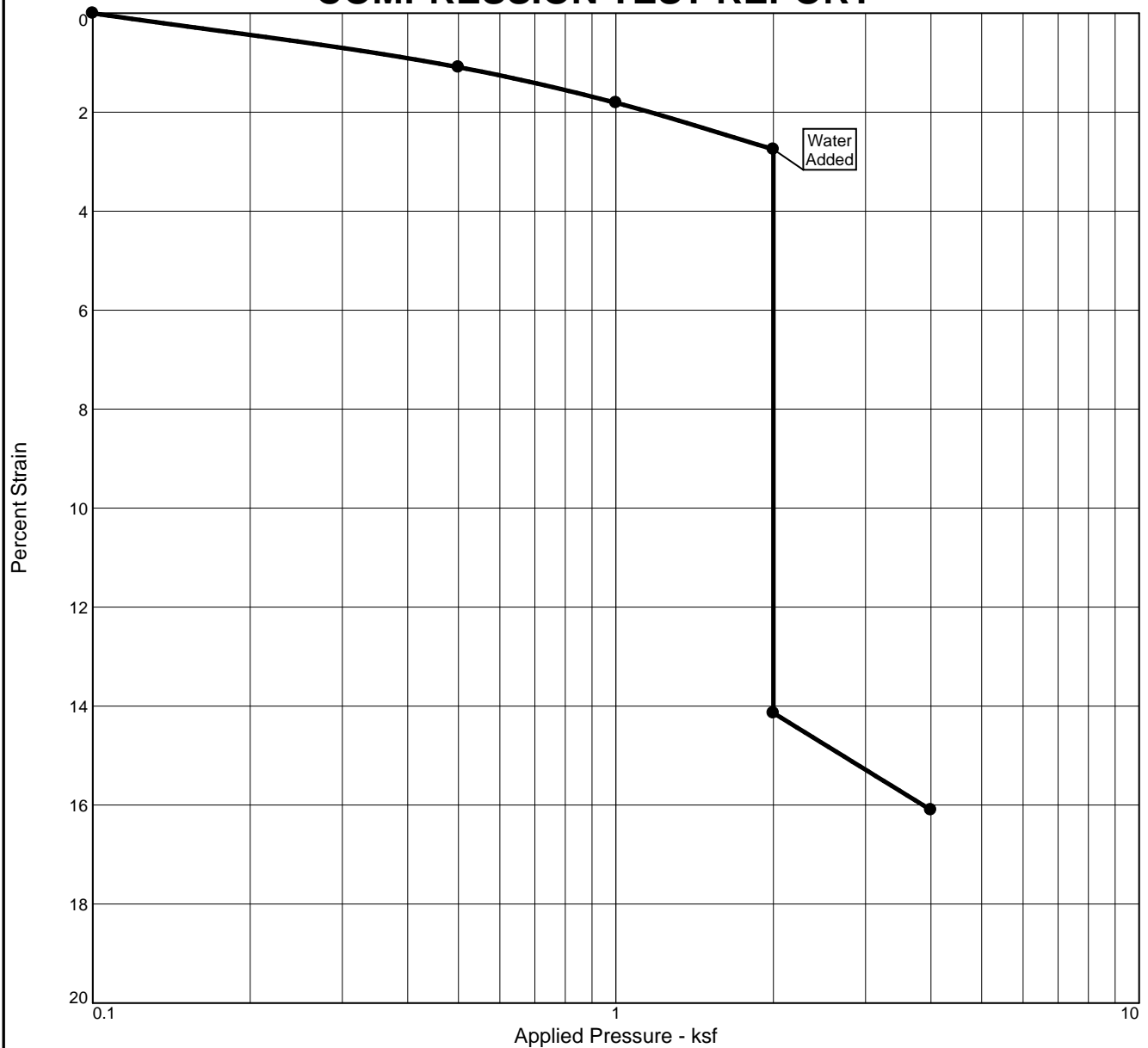
Natural		Dry Dens. (pcf)	LL	PI	Sp. Gr.	Overburden (ksf)	P <sub>C</sub> (ksf)	C <sub>C</sub>	C <sub>r</sub>	Swell Press. (ksf)	Clpse. %	e <sub>o</sub>
Sat.	Moist.											
20.1 %	5.4 %	96.7			2.65						8.8	0.710

MATERIAL DESCRIPTION										USCS	AASHTO
SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL										SM	

<b>Project No.</b> 25-224210-0	<b>Client:</b> LAKE HAVASU CITY - PUBLIC WORKS	<b>Remarks:</b>
<b>Project:</b> LAB BUILDING		
<b>Source:</b> RING SAMPLE	<b>Depth:</b> 2-3 FEET <b>Sample No.:</b> BORING 7	
<b>Western Technologies, Inc.</b>		
<b>Flagstaff, AZ</b>		<b>Figure B-5</b>

Figure B-5

# COMPRESSION TEST REPORT



Natural		Dry Dens. (pcf)	LL	PI	Sp. Gr.	Overburden (ksf)	P <sub>C</sub> (ksf)	C <sub>C</sub>	C <sub>r</sub>	Swell Press. (ksf)	Clpse. %	e <sub>o</sub>
Sat.	Moist.											
19.1 %	4.7 %	100.1			2.65						11.4	0.653

MATERIAL DESCRIPTION										USCS	AASHTO
SILTY SAND WITH GRAVEL										SM	

<b>Project No.</b> 25-224210-0	<b>Client:</b> LAKE HAVASU CITY - PUBLIC WORKS	<b>Remarks:</b>
<b>Project:</b> LAB BUILDING		
<b>Source:</b> RING SAMPLE	<b>Depth:</b> 5-6 FEET <b>Sample No.:</b> BORING 8	
<b>Western Technologies, Inc.</b>		
<b>Flagstaff, AZ</b>		<b>Figure B-6</b>

Figure B-6



## **THINK Architecture - AGREEMENT FOR USE OF DIGITAL DATA**

**Date:** [Click here to enter a date.](#)

**Project Name and Location:** Lake Havasu City Water Quality Laboratory

**Client:** 360 Cypress Drive  
Lake Havasu City, AZ. 86403

**Think Architecture Job No:** 24-077

- + Architecture
- + Landscape Architecture
- + Land Planning
- + Construction Management
- + Interior Design

**THINK Architecture, Inc.,** has provided electronic files for the convenience and use in the preparation of drawings related to the above referenced project. By signing below, receiving and opening the electronic files, you hereby agreeing to the following terms and conditions:

Electronic files are compatible with THINK Architecture software and hardware. THINK Architecture makes no representation as to the compatibility of these files with other software or hardware. Requests to format, change or alter original files for the convenience of the person/ company request shall be an additional service, and shall be there responsibility of the person requesting the files to provide payment to THINK Architecture for changes requested.

Data contained on these electronic files is part of THINK's instrument of service, and are copyrighted by THINK Architecture. The electronic data shall not be used by anyone for any purpose other than as a convenience in the preparation of drawings for the referenced project. The information provided shall not be released to any other party without the written consent of THINK Architecture. Any use or reuse, by you or by others, will be at your sole risk and without liability or legal exposure to THINK Architecture. THINK Architecture hereby grants a limited use agreement of their copyright for the sole purpose of a convenience in the preparation of drawings for the referenced project. All other uses of the THINK Architecture electronic data are excluded from this limited use agreement and will be prosecuted to the fullest extent of the law.

THINK Architecture, Inc. makes no responsibility for viruses or other harmful hidden electronic files or data possibly included in the THINK Architecture electronic files. It is the responsibility of the Recipient to scan for and remove all viruses or potentially harmful data prior to use. THINK Architecture takes no responsibility for possible software errors that may affect the information or performance of the information included in these files.

The Recipient agrees to make no claim and hereby waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any claim or cause of action of any nature against THINK Architecture, its officers, directors, employees, agents or sub-consultants which may arise out of or in connection with the use of the electronic files. Furthermore, the Recipient shall, to the fullest extent permitted by law, indemnify, defend, and hold harmless THINK Architecture from all claims, damages, losses and expenses, including attorney fees, arising out of or resulting from the use of these electronic files.

Electronic files are not contractual documents. Significant differences may exist between electronic files and hard copy contractual documents due to addenda, change orders or other revisions. THINK Architecture makes no representation regarding the accuracy or completeness of the electronic files you receive. In the

## **THINK Architecture - AGREEMENT FOR USE OF DIGITAL DATA**

event that a conflict arises between the signed contract documents prepared by THINK Architecture and electronic files, the recipient is not relieved of their duty to fully comply with the contractual documents, including and without limitation, the need to check, confirm and coordinate all dimensions and details, take field measurements, verify field conditions and coordinate their work with that of other contractors.

Because of the potential that the information presented on the electronic files can be modified, unintentionally or otherwise, THINK Architecture reserves the right to remove all indications of its ownership and/or involvement from each electronic display.

Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Printed Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

# AIA® Document E203® – 2013

## ***Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit***

This Exhibit dated the Thirty First day of October in the year Two Thousand and Twenty Three is incorporated into the agreement (the "Agreement") between the Parties for the following Project:

*(Name and location or address of the Project)*

Lake Havasu City Water Quality Laboratory  
360 Cypress Drive  
Lake Havasu City, AZ. 86403  
1-Story Laboratory Building approximately 2,640 square feet

### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | GENERAL PROVISIONS                         |
| 2 | TRANSMISSION AND OWNERSHIP OF DIGITAL DATA |
| 3 | DIGITAL DATA PROTOCOLS                     |
| 4 | BUILDING INFORMATION MODELING PROTOCOLS    |
| 5 | OTHER TERMS AND CONDITIONS                 |

### ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

§ 1.1 This Exhibit provides for the establishment of protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of Digital Data for the Project. If Building Information Modeling will be utilized, this Exhibit also provides for the establishment of the protocols necessary to implement the use of Building Information Modeling on the Project, including protocols that establish the expected Level of Development for Model Elements at various milestones of the Project, and the associated Authorized Uses of the Building Information Models.

§ 1.2 The Parties agree to incorporate this Exhibit into their agreements with any other Project Participants that may develop or make use of Digital Data on the Project. Prior to transmitting or allowing access to Digital Data, a Party may require any Project Participant to provide reasonable evidence that it has incorporated this Exhibit into its agreement for the Project, and agreed to the most recent Project specific versions of AIA Document G201™–2013, Project Digital Data Protocol Form and AIA Document G202™–2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form.

§ 1.2.1 The Parties agree that each of the Project Participants utilizing Digital Data on the Project is an intended third party beneficiary of the Section 1.2 obligation to incorporate this Exhibit into agreements with other Project Participants, and any rights and defenses associated with the enforcement of that obligation. This Exhibit does not create any third-party beneficiary rights other than those expressly identified in this Section 1.2.1.

### § 1.3 Adjustments to the Agreement

§ 1.3.1 If a Party believes that protocols established pursuant to Sections 3.2 or 4.5, and memorialized in AIA Documents G201–2013 and G202–2013, will result in a change in

### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

This document is intended to be incorporated into an agreement between the parties and used in conjunction with AIA Documents G201™–2013, Project Digital Data Protocol Form, and G202™–2013, Building Information Modeling Protocol Form. It is anticipated that other Project Participants will incorporate a project specific E203–2013 into their agreements, and that the Parties and other Project Participants will set forth the agreed-upon protocols in AIA Documents G201–2013 and G202–2013.

the Party's scope of work or services warranting an adjustment in compensation, contract sum, schedule or contract time, the Party shall notify the other Party. Failure to provide notice as required in this Section 1.3 shall result in a Party's waiver of any claims for adjustments in compensation, contract sum, schedule or contract time as a result of the established protocols.

§ 1.3.2 Upon such notice, the Parties shall discuss and negotiate revisions to the protocols or discuss and negotiate any adjustments in compensation, contract sum, schedule or contract time in accordance with the terms of the Agreement.

§ 1.3.3 Notice required under this Section 1.3 shall be provided within thirty days of receipt of the protocols, unless otherwise indicated below:

*(If the Parties require a notice period other than thirty days from receipt of the protocols, indicate the notice period below.)*

## § 1.4 Definitions

§ 1.4.1 **Building Information Model.** A Building Information Model is a digital representation of the Project, or a portion of the Project, and is referred to in this Exhibit as the "Model," which term may be used herein to describe a Model Element, a single model or multiple models used in the aggregate, as well as other data sets identified in AIA Document G202–2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form.

§ 1.4.2 **Building Information Modeling.** Building Information Modeling or Modeling means the process used to create the Model.

§ 1.4.3 **Model Element.** A Model Element is a portion of the Model representing a component, system or assembly within a building or building site.

§ 1.4.4 **Level of Development.** The Level of Development (LOD) describes the minimum dimensional, spatial, quantitative, qualitative, and other data included in a Model Element to support the Authorized Uses associated with such LOD.

§ 1.4.5 **Authorized Uses.** The term "Authorized Uses" refers to the permitted uses of Digital Data authorized in the Digital Data and/or Building Information Modeling protocols established pursuant to the terms of this Exhibit.

§ 1.4.6 **Model Element Author.** The Model Element Author is the entity (or individual) responsible for managing and coordinating the development of a specific Model Element to the LOD required for an identified Project milestone, regardless of who is responsible for providing the content in the Model Element. Model Element Authors are to be identified in Section 3.3, Model Element Table, of AIA Document G202–2013.

§ 1.4.7 **Digital Data.** Digital Data is information, including communications, drawings, specifications and designs, created or stored for the Project in digital form. Unless otherwise stated, the term Digital Data includes the Model.

§ 1.4.8 **Confidential Digital Data.** Confidential Digital Data is Digital Data containing confidential or business proprietary information that the transmitting party designates and clearly marks as "confidential."

§ 1.4.9 **Written or In Writing.** In addition to any definition in the Agreement to which this Exhibit is attached, for purposes of this Exhibit and the Agreement, "written" or "in writing" shall mean any communication prepared and sent using a transmission method set forth in this Exhibit, or the protocols developed pursuant to this Exhibit, that permits the recipient to print the communication.

§ 1.4.10 **Written Notice.** In addition to any terms in the Agreement to which this Exhibit is attached, for purposes of this Exhibit and the Agreement, "written notice" shall be deemed to have been duly served if transmitted electronically to an address provided in this Exhibit or the Agreement using a transmission method set forth in this Exhibit that permits the recipient to print the communication.

§ 1.4.11 **Party and Parties.** The terms "Party" and "Parties" refer to the signing parties to the Agreement.

§ 1.4.12 **Project Participant.** A Project Participant is an entity (or individual) providing services, work, equipment or materials on the Project and includes the Parties.

## ARTICLE 2 TRANSMISSION AND OWNERSHIP OF DIGITAL DATA

§ 2.1 The transmission of Digital Data constitutes a warranty by the Party transmitting Digital Data to the Party receiving Digital Data that the transmitting Party is the copyright owner of the Digital Data, or otherwise has permission to transmit the Digital Data for its use on the Project in accordance with the Authorized Uses of Digital Data established pursuant to the terms of this Exhibit.

§ 2.2 If a Party transmits Confidential Digital Data, the transmission of such Confidential Digital Data constitutes a warranty to the Party receiving such Confidential Digital Data that the transmitting Party is authorized to transmit the Confidential Digital Data. If a Party receives Confidential Digital Data, the receiving Party shall keep the Confidential Digital Data strictly confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person or entity except as set forth in Section 2.2.1.

§ 2.2.1 The receiving Party may disclose Confidential Digital Data as required by law or court order, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity. The receiving Party may also disclose the Confidential Digital Data to its employees, consultants or contractors in order to perform services or work solely and exclusively for the Project, provided those employees, consultants and contractors are subject to the restrictions on the disclosure and use of Confidential Digital Data as set forth in this Exhibit.

§ 2.3 By transmitting Digital Data, the transmitting Party does not convey any ownership right in the Digital Data or in the software used to generate the Digital Data. Unless otherwise granted in a separate license, the receiving Party's right to use, modify, or further transmit Digital Data is specifically limited to designing, constructing, using, maintaining, altering and adding to the Project consistent with the terms of this Exhibit, and nothing contained in this Exhibit conveys any other right to use the Digital Data.

§ 2.4 Where a provision in this Article 2 conflicts with a provision in the Agreement into which this Exhibit is incorporated, the provision in this Article 2 shall prevail.

## ARTICLE 3 DIGITAL DATA PROTOCOLS

§ 3.1 **Anticipated Types of Digital Data.** The anticipated types of Digital Data to be used on the Project are as follows: *(Indicate below the information on the Project that shall be created and shared in a digital format. If the Parties indicate that Building Information Modeling will be utilized on the Project, the Parties shall also complete Article 4.)*

Anticipated Digital Data	Applicability to the Project (Indicate Applicable or Not Applicable)	Location of Detailed Description (Section 3.1.1 below or in an attachment to this exhibit and identified below)
Project Agreements and Modifications	Not Applicable	
Project communications	Not Applicable	
Architect's pre-construction submittals	Not Applicable	
Contract Documents	Applicable	Section 3.1.1.1
Contractor's submittals	Not Applicable	
Subcontractor's submittals	Not Applicable	
Modifications	Applicable	Section 3.1.1.2
Project payment documents	Not Applicable	
Notices and claims	Not Applicable	
Building Information Modeling	Not Applicable	

§ 3.1.1 Insert a detailed description of the anticipated Digital Data identified in Section 3.1, if not further described in an attachment to this Exhibit.

§ 3.2 As soon as practical following execution of the Agreement, the Parties shall further describe the uses of Digital Data, and establish necessary protocols governing the transmission and Authorized Uses of Digital Data, in consultation with the other Project Participants that are expected to utilize Digital Data on the Project.

§ 3.2.1 Unless another Project Participant is identified below, the Architect shall prepare and distribute to the other Project Participants Digital Data protocols for review, revision and approval.

*(If a Project Participant other than the Architect shall be responsible for preparing draft and final Digital Data protocols, identify that Project Participant.)*

§ 3.2.2 The agreed upon Digital Data protocols shall be set forth in AIA Document G201–2013 and each Project Participant shall memorialize their agreement in writing to such Digital Data protocols.

§ 3.2.3 The Parties, together with the other Project Participants, shall review and, if necessary, revise the Digital Data protocols at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Project.

§ 3.3 The Parties shall transmit, use, store and archive Digital Data in accordance with the Digital Data protocols set forth in the latest version of AIA Document G201–2013 agreed to by the Project Participants.

### § 3.4 Unauthorized Use

#### § 3.4.1 Prior to Establishment of Digital Data Protocols

If a Party receives Digital Data prior to the agreement to, and documentation of, the Digital Data protocols in AIA Document G201–2013, that Party is not authorized to use or rely on the Digital Data. Any use of, or reliance on, such Digital Data is at that Party's sole risk and without liability to the other Party and its contractors, consultants, agents and employees.

#### § 3.4.2 Following Establishment of Digital Data Protocols

Following agreement to, and documentation of, the Digital Data protocols in AIA Document G201–2013, if a Party uses Digital Data inconsistent with the Authorized Uses identified in the Digital Data protocols, that use shall be at the sole risk of the Party using the Digital Data.

### § 3.5 Digital Data Management

§ 3.5.1 Centralized electronic document management system use on the Project shall be:

*(Check the appropriate box. If the Parties do not check one of the boxes below, the default selection shall be that the Parties will not utilize a centralized electronic document management system on the Project.)*

☐ The Parties intend to use a centralized electronic document management system on the Project.

☒ The Parties do not intend to use a centralized electronic document management system on the Project.

§ 3.5.2 If the Project Participants intend to utilize a centralized electronic document management system on the Project, the Project Participants identified in Section 3.5.3 shall be responsible for managing and maintaining such system. The Project Participants responsible for managing and maintaining the centralized electronic document management system shall facilitate the establishment of protocols for transmission, use, storage and archiving of the centralized Digital Data and assist the Project Participants identified in Section 3.2.1 above in preparing Digital Data protocols. Upon agreement to, and documentation of, the Digital Data protocols in AIA Document G201–2013, the Project Participants identified in Section 3.5.3 shall manage and maintain the centralized electronic document management system consistent with the management protocols set forth in the latest version of G201–2013 approved by the Project Participants.

§ 3.5.3 Unless responsibility is assigned to another Project Participant, the Architect shall be responsible for managing and maintaining the centralized electronic document management system. If the responsibility for management and maintenance will be assigned to another Project Participant at an identified Project milestone, indicate below the Project Participant who shall assume that responsibility, and the Project milestone.

*(Identify the Project Participant responsible for management and maintenance only if the Parties intend to utilize a centralized electronic document management system on the Project.)*



**ARTICLE 4 BUILDING INFORMATION MODELING PROTOCOLS**

§ 4.1 If the Parties indicate in Section 3.1 that Building Information Modeling will be used on the Project, specify below the extent to which the Parties intend to utilize Building Information Modeling and identify the provisions of this Article 4 governing such use:

☒ The Parties shall utilize Building Information Modeling on the Project for the sole purpose of fulfilling the obligations set forth in the Agreement without an expectation that the Model will be relied upon by the other Project Participants. Unless otherwise agreed in writing, any use of, transmission of, or reliance on the Model is at the receiving Party's sole risk. The remaining sections of this Article 4 shall have no force or effect.

☐ The Parties shall develop, share, use and rely upon the Model in accordance with Sections 4.2 through 4.10 of this Exhibit.

§ 4.2 **Anticipated Building Information Modeling Scope.** Indicate below the portions of the Project for which Modeling will be used and the anticipated Project Participant responsible for that Modeling.

Project Portion for Modeling

Responsible Project Participant

§ 4.3 **Anticipated Model Authorized Uses.** Indicate below the anticipated Authorized Uses of the Model for the Project, which Authorized Uses will be agreed upon by the Project Participants and further described for each LOD in AIA Document G202–2013.

None

§ 4.4 **Ancillary Modeling Activities.** Indicate additional Modeling activities agreed upon by the Parties, but not to be included in AIA Document G202–2013, if any.

*(Describe any Modeling activities, such as renderings, animations, performance simulations, or other similar use, including the anticipated amount and scope of any such Modeling activities.)*

None

§ 4.5 **Modeling Protocols.** As soon as practical following execution of the Agreement, the Parties shall, in consultation with the other Project Participants that are expected to utilize Building Information Modeling on the Project, further describe the Authorized Uses of the Model and establish necessary protocols governing the development of the Model utilizing AIA Document G202–2013.

§ 4.5.1 The Modeling protocols shall address the following:

- .1 Identification of the Model Element Authors;
- .2 Definition of the various LOD for the Model Elements and the associated Authorized Uses for each defined LOD;
- .3 Identification of the required LOD of each Model Element at each identified Project milestone;
- .4 Identification of the construction classification systems to be used on the Project;
- .5 The process by which Project Participants will exchange and share the Model at intervals not reflected in Section 3.3, Model Element Table, of AIA Document G202–2013;
- .6 The process by which the Project Participants will identify, coordinate and resolve changes to the Model;
- .7 Details regarding any anticipated as-designed or as-constructed Authorized Uses for the Model, if required on the Project;
- .8 Anticipated Authorized Uses for facilities management or otherwise, following completion of the Project; and

- .9 Other topics to be addressed by the Modeling protocols: *(Identify additional topics to be addressed by the Modeling Protocols.)*

§ 4.5.2 Unless responsibility is assigned to another Project Participant identified below, the Architect shall prepare and distribute Modeling protocols to the other Project Participants for review, revision and approval.

*(If a Project Participant other than the Architect shall be responsible for preparing draft and final Modeling protocols, identify that Project Participant.)*

§ 4.5.3 The agreed upon Modeling protocols shall be set forth in AIA Document G202–2013 and each Project Participant shall memorialize their agreement in writing to such Modeling protocols.

§ 4.5.4 The Parties, together with the other Project Participants, shall review, and if necessary, revise the Modeling protocols at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Project.

§ 4.6 The Parties shall develop, use and rely on the Model in accordance with the Modeling protocols set forth in the latest version of AIA Document G202–2013, which document shall be included in or attached to the Model in a manner clearly accessible to the Project Participants.

#### § 4.7 Unauthorized Use

##### § 4.7.1 Prior to Establishment of Modeling Protocols

If a Party receives any Model prior to the agreement to, and documentation of, the Modeling protocols in AIA Document G202–2013, that Party is not authorized to use, transmit, or rely on the Model. Any use, transmission or reliance is at that Party's sole risk and without liability to the other Party and its contractors, consultants, agents and employees.

##### § 4.7.2 Following Establishment of Modeling Protocols

Following agreement to, and documentation of, the Modeling protocols in AIA Document G202–2013, if a Party uses or relies on the Model inconsistent with the Authorized Uses identified in the Modeling protocols, such use or reliance shall be at the sole risk of the Party using or relying on the Model. A Party may rely on the Model Element only to the extent consistent with the minimum data required for the identified LOD, even if the content of a specific Model Element includes data that exceeds the minimum data required for the identified LOD.

#### § 4.8 Model Management

§ 4.8.1 The requirements for managing the Model include the duties set forth in this Section 4.8. Unless assigned to another Project Participant, the Architect shall manage the Model from the inception of the Project. If the responsibility for Model management will be assigned to another Project Participant, or change at an identified Project milestone, indicate below the identity of the Project Participant who will assume that responsibility, and the Project milestone.

Responsible Project Participant

Project Milestone

§ 4.8.2 **Model Management Protocol Establishment.** The Project Participant responsible for managing the Model, in consultation with the other Project Participants that are expected to utilize Building Information Modeling on the Project, shall facilitate the establishment and revision of Model management protocols, including the following:

- .1 Model origin point, coordinate system, precision, file formats and units
- .2 Model file storage location(s)
- .3 Processes for transferring and accessing Model files
- .4 Naming conventions
- .5 Processes for aggregating Model files from varying software platforms
- .6 Model access rights
- .7 Identification of design coordination and clash detection procedures.
- .8 Model security requirements

.9 Other: *(Identify additional Model management protocols to be addressed.)*

**§ 4.8.3 Ongoing Responsibilities.** The Project Participant responsible for managing the Model shall do so consistent with the Model management protocols, which shall also include the following ongoing responsibilities:

- .1 Collect incoming Models:
  - .1 Coordinate submission and exchange of Models
  - .2 Create and maintain a log of Models received
  - .3 Review Model files for consistency with Sections 4.8.2.1 through 4.8.2.5
  - .4 Maintain a record copy of each Model file received
- .2 Aggregate Model files and make them available for Authorized Uses
- .3 Maintain Model Archives and backups consistent with the requirements of Section 4.8.4 below
- .4 Manage Model access rights
- .5 Other: *(Identify additional responsibilities.)*

**§ 4.8.4 Model Archives.** The individual or entity responsible for Model management as set forth in this Section 4.8 shall compile a Model Archive at the end of each Project milestone and shall preserve it without alteration as a record of Model completion as of that Project milestone.

**§ 4.8.4.1** Additional Model Archive requirements, if any, are as follows:

None

**§ 4.8.4.2** The procedures for storing and preserving the Model(s) upon final completion of the Project are as follows:

None

**§ 4.9 Post-Construction Model.** The services associated with providing a Model for post-construction use shall only be required if specifically designated in the table below as a Party's responsibility.

*(Designate below any anticipated post-construction Model and related requirements, the Project Participant responsible for creating or adapting the Model to achieve such uses, and the location of a detailed description of the anticipated scope of services to create or adapt the Model as necessary to achieve such uses.)*

Post-Construction Model	Applicability to Project <i>(Applicable or Not Applicable)</i>	Responsible Project Participant	Location of Detailed Description of Requirements and Services <i>(Section 4.10 below or in an attachment to this exhibit and identified below)</i>
§ 4.9.1 Remodeling	Not Applicable		
§ 4.9.2 Wayfinding and Mapping	Not Applicable		
§ 4.9.3 Asset/FF & E Management	Not Applicable		
§ 4.9.4 Energy Management	Not Applicable		
§ 4.9.5 Space Management	Not Applicable		
§ 4.9.6 Maintenance Management	Not Applicable		

**§ 4.10** Insert a detailed description of the requirements for each Post-Construction Model identified in Section 4.9 and the anticipated services necessary to create each Post-Construction Model, if not further described in an attachment to this Exhibit.

Not Applicable

## ARTICLE 5 OTHER TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Other terms and conditions related to the transmission and use of Digital Data are as follows:

Init.

AIA Document E203 – 2013. Copyright © 2013. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are registered trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 14:56:39 ET on 07/27/2023 under Order No.2114420659 which expires on 04/26/2024, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.

User Notes:

(927953223)

None

# Additions and Deletions Report for AIA® Document E203® – 2013

This Additions and Deletions Report, as defined on page 1 of the associated document, reproduces below all text the author has added to the standard form AIA document in order to complete it, as well as any text the author may have added to or deleted from the original AIA text. Added text is shown underlined. Deleted text is indicated with a horizontal line through the original AIA text.

Note: This Additions and Deletions Report is provided for information purposes only and is not incorporated into or constitute any part of the associated AIA document. This Additions and Deletions Report and its associated document were generated simultaneously by AIA software at 14:56:39 ET on 07/27/2023.

## PAGE 1

This Exhibit dated the Thirty First day of October in the year Two Thousand and Twenty Three is incorporated into the agreement (the "Agreement") between the Parties for the following Project:

...

Lake Havasu City Water Quality Laboratory  
360 Cypress Drive  
Lake Havasu City, AZ. 86403  
1-Story Laboratory Building approximately 2,640 square feet

Project Agreements and Modifications	<u>Not Applicable</u>	
Project communications	<u>Not Applicable</u>	
Architect's pre-construction submittals	<u>Not Applicable</u>	
Contract Documents	<u>Applicable</u>	<u>Section 3.1.1.1</u>
Contractor's submittals	<u>Not Applicable</u>	
Subcontractor's submittals	<u>Not Applicable</u>	
Modifications	<u>Applicable</u>	<u>Section 3.1.1.2</u>
Project payment documents	<u>Not Applicable</u>	
Notices and claims	<u>Not Applicable</u>	
Building Information Modeling	<u>Not Applicable</u>	

## PAGE 4

[ ☒ ] The Parties do not intend to use a centralized electronic document management system on the Project.

## PAGE 5

[ ☒ ] The Parties shall utilize Building Information Modeling on the Project for the sole purpose of fulfilling the obligations set forth in the Agreement without an expectation that the Model will be relied upon by the other Project Participants. Unless otherwise agreed in writing, any use of, transmission of, or reliance on the Model is at the receiving Party's sole risk. The remaining sections of this Article 4 shall have no force or effect.

...

None

...

None

## PAGE 7

None

...

None

...

§ 4.9.1	Remodeling	<u>Not Applicable</u>		
§ 4.9.2	Wayfinding and Mapping	<u>Not Applicable</u>		
§ 4.9.3	Asset/FF & E Management	<u>Not Applicable</u>		
§ 4.9.4	Energy Management	<u>Not Applicable</u>		
§ 4.9.5	Space Management	<u>Not Applicable</u>		
§ 4.9.6	Maintenance Management	<u>Not Applicable</u>		

...

Not Applicable

**PAGE 8**

None

## ***Certification of Document's Authenticity***

***AIA® Document D401™ – 2003***

I, \_\_\_\_\_, hereby certify, to the best of my knowledge, information and belief, that I created the attached final document simultaneously with its associated Additions and Deletions Report and this certification at 14:56:39 ET on 07/27/2023 under Order No. 2114420659 from AIA Contract Documents software and that in preparing the attached final document I made no changes to the original text of AIA® Document E203™ – 2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, other than those additions and deletions shown in the associated Additions and Deletions Report.

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Signed)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Title)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Dated)*

SECTION 01 1000 - SUMMARY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Project information.
- 2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
- 3. Work by Owner.
- 4. Access to site.
- 5. Work restrictions.
- 6. Specification and Drawing conventions.
- 7. Miscellaneous provisions.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

## 1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: Clearfield Public Works

- B. Project Location: 497 South Main Street, Clearfield City, Utah 84015

- C. Owner: Clearfield City, Municipality

- 1. Owner's Representative: Mr. Adam Farevo

- D. Architect: Think Architecture, Inc.  
7927 High Point Parkway  
Sandy, Utah 84094  
Office: (801) 269-0055  
Fax: (801) 269-1425

- E. Architect's Consultants: Architect has retained the following design professionals who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:

- 1. Civil Engineering: Jones and Associates
- 2. Landscape Architect: Jones and Associates
- 3. Structural Engineer: BHB Structural Engineers.



4. Electrical Engineer: Royal Engineering
  5. Mechanical & Plumbing Engineer: Royal Engineering
- F. Other Owner Consultants: Owner has retained the following design professionals who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:
1. Civil Engineering: Jones and Associates, Inc. has prepared the following portions of the Contract Documents:
    - a. Civil Engineering for the Project.
- Contractor: No Contractor has yet been engaged for this Project.
- G. Web-Based Project Software: Project software administered by Contractor will be used for purposes of managing communication and documents during the construction stage.
1. See Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination." for requirements for establishing and using web-based Project software.

#### 1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following:
1. The Clearfield Public Works Building is a vehicular storage, vehicular maintenance, administrative, miscellaneous storage, and locker room building of new construction, to be used as the new Clearfield City Public Works facility. square footage of the building per level is approximately 23,640 square feet on level 1 and approximately 8,135 square feet on level 2 excluding landscaping and site improvements.
  2. The project construction will consist of concrete foundation system supporting two levels of Concrete Slab on grade floors, Concrete Masonry Unit (CMU) exterior walls, metal framed infill walls, concrete in metal pan elevated slabs, bar joist and metal deck roofing construction with TPO roofing over rigid insulation. Exterior finishes are integral CMU and metal wall panels.
  3. Interior construction will be heavy duty commercial construction of painted walls, carpet tile, paint grade trim, luxury vinyl tile flooring, ceramic, custom cabinetry, stain grade doors, and all finishes as indicated.
  4. And all other Work indicated in the Contract Documents.
- B. Type of Contract:
1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

#### 1.5 WORK PHASES

- A. The Work is to be conducted in one phase and per schedule of time or outlined by the Owner.

#### 1.6 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN & CONSTRUCTION

- A. This project is currently not seeking and Sustainable Design and Construction Certifications.

#### 1.7 PHASED CONSTRUCTION

- A. The Work is to be conducted in one phase and per schedule of time or outlined by the Owner.

#### 1.8 ACCESS TO SITE

- A. General: Contractor shall have full use of Project site for construction operations during construction period. Contractor's use of Project site is limited only by Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.
- B. Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to areas within the Contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.
- C. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

#### 1.9 COORDINATION WITH OCCUPANTS

- A. Owner Limited Occupancy of Completed Areas of Construction: Owner reserves the right to occupy and to place and install equipment in completed portions of the Work, prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, provided such occupancy does not interfere with completion of the Work. Such placement of equipment and limited occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the total Work.
  - 1. Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion for each specific portion of the Work to be occupied prior to Owner acceptance of the completed Work.
  - 2. Obtain a Certificate of Occupancy from authorities having jurisdiction before limited Owner occupancy.
  - 3. Before limited Owner occupancy, mechanical and electrical systems shall be fully operational, and required tests and inspections shall be successfully completed. On occupancy, Owner will operate and maintain mechanical and electrical systems serving occupied portions of Work.
  - 4. On occupancy, Owner will assume responsibility for maintenance and custodial service for occupied portions of Work.

#### 1.10 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations.

1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: See PROJECT GENERAL NOTES – CONTRACTOR and Clearfield City ordinances pertaining to COMMUNITY NOISE POLLUTION CONTROL.
- C. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after providing temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with utility interruptions.
- D. Noise, Vibration, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
  1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
  2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with disruptive operations.
- E. Nonsmoking Building: Smoking is not permitted within the building or within 25 feet of entrances, operable windows, or outdoor air intakes.
- F. Restricted Substances: Use of tobacco products and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.
- G. Employee Identification: Provide identification tags for Contractor personnel working on Project site.
- H. Employee Screening: Comply with Owner's requirements for drug and background screening of Contractor personnel working on Project site.
  1. Maintain list of approved screened personnel with Owner's representative.

#### 1.11 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
  1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:

1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard and scheduled on Drawings.
3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

#### 1.12 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

- A. <Insert miscellaneous provisions>.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 1000**

SECTION 01 2100 - ALLOWANCES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
  - 1. Lump-sum allowances.
  - 2. Unit-cost allowances.
  - 3. Quantity allowances.
  - 4. Contingency allowances.
  - 5. Testing and inspecting allowances.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2200 "Unit Prices" for procedures for using unit prices, including adjustment of quantity allowances when applicable.
  - 2. Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements" for procedures governing the use of allowances for field testing by an independent testing agency.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Allowance is a quantity of work or dollar amount established in lieu of additional requirements, used to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.

## 1.4 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect of the date when final selection, or purchase and delivery, of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed by the Owner to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances in the form specified for Change Orders.

### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.
- B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.
- C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

### 1.7 LUMP-SUM ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
  - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

### 1.8 UNIT-COST ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.

1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

#### 1.9 QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
  1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

#### 1.10 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

- A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed by Architect for Owner's purposes and only by Change Orders that indicate amounts to be charged to the allowance.
- B. Contractor's overhead, profit, and related costs for products and equipment ordered by Owner under the contingency allowance are included in the allowance and are not part of the Contract Sum. These costs include delivery, installation, taxes, insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs.
- C. Change Orders authorizing use of funds from the contingency allowance will include Contractor's related costs and reasonable overhead and profit.
- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to Owner by Change Order.

#### 1.11 TESTING AND INSPECTING ALLOWANCES

- A. Testing and inspecting allowances include the cost of engaging testing agencies, actual tests and inspections, and reporting results.
- B. The allowance does not include incidental labor required to assist the testing agency or costs for retesting if previous tests and inspections result in failure. The cost for incidental labor to assist the testing agency shall be included in the Contract Sum.
- C. Costs of testing and inspection services not required by the Contract Documents are not included in the allowance.

- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the testing and inspecting allowance to Owner by Change Order.

#### 1.12 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, and similar margins.
  - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
  - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other markups.
  - 3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of Work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
  - 4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.
- B. Submit claims for increased costs because of a change in scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit.
  - 1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of Work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
  - 2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

##### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.



### 3.3 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance No. 1: Owner's Contingency Allowance: Include a contingency allowance of 3.0% of the entire cost of construction estimate for use according to Owner's written instructions.
- B. Allowance No. 2: Testing and Inspection Allowance: Include the sum of \$20,000.00 for special testing to be provided by Owner as specified for the project.

**END OF SECTION 01 2100**

SECTION 01 2200 - UNIT PRICES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2100 "Allowances" for procedures for using unit prices to adjust quantity allowances.
  - 2. Section 01 2600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
  - 3. Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements" for field testing by an independent testing agency.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Unit price is an amount incorporated into the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the Work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

## 1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, applicable taxes, overhead, and profit.
- B. Measurement and Payment: See individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.
- C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.
- D. List of Unit Prices: A schedule of unit prices is included in Part 3. Specification Sections referenced in the schedule contain requirements for materials described under each unit price.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

## SECTION 01 2500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
  - 2. Section 01 2300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
  - 3. Section 01 6000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use facsimile of form provided in Project Manual.
  - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable

Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.

- d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
  - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
  - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
  - g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
  - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
  - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
  - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
  - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

## 1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

## 1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
  - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
    - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
    - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
    - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
    - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
    - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
    - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
    - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Not allowed.
- C. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 60 days after the Notice to Proceed. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
  - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
    - a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
    - b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
    - c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
    - d. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
    - e. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
    - f. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - g. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
    - h. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
    - i. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.

- j. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 2500**

SECTION 01 2600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

## 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710.

## 1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.



- d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
  - e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
  - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
  - 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
  - 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
  - 5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
  - 6. Comply with requirements in Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
  - 7. Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.

#### 1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 01 2100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Section 01 2200 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

#### 1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

#### 1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.

1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates methods to be followed to determine changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
  1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

#### 1.8 WORK CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Work Change Directive: Architect may issue a Work Change Directive on EJCDC Document C-940. Work Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  1. Work Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates methods to be followed to determine changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Work Change Directive.
  1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 2600**

SECTION 01 2900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2100 "Allowances" for procedural requirements governing the handling and processing of allowances.
  - 2. Section 01 2200 "Unit Prices" for administrative requirements governing the use of unit prices.
  - 3. Section 01 2600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
  - 4. Section 01 3200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.

1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
  - a. Project name and location.
  - b. Name of Architect.
  - c. Architect's Project number.
  - d. Contractor's name and address.
  - e. Date of submittal.
2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
4. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
  - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
5. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
6. Overhead Costs: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
7. Closeout Costs. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
8. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

#### 1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the tenth (5<sup>th</sup>) day of the following month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month.
  1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment seven days prior to due date for review by Architect.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment. Reference sample at the end of this Section.

- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
  3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
  4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
  2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
  3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
    - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
    - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
    - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- F. Transmittal: Submit One (1) signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect in PDF format by email with delivery and review receipt requested within 24 hours. The copy shall include all waivers of lien and similar attachments as required.
1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, and suppliers for construction period covered by the previous application.
1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.

4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
  5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- H. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.
  2. Schedule of values.
  3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  4. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  5. Sustainable design action plans, including preliminary project materials cost data.
  6. Schedule of unit prices.
  7. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  8. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  9. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  10. Copies of building permits.
  11. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  12. Initial progress report.
  13. Report of preconstruction conference.
- I. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- J. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  4. AIA Document G706.
  5. AIA Document G706A.
  6. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  7. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  8. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)



SECTION 01 3100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. General coordination procedures.
  - 2. Coordination drawings.
  - 3. RFIs.
  - 4. Digital project management procedures.
  - 5. Project meetings.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 3200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Section 01 7300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
  - 3. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BIM: Building Information Modeling.
- B. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.



- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities: list addresses and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
  - 1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office, in web-based Project software directory, and in prominent location in built facility. Keep a list current at all times.

#### 1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  - 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
  - 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  - 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  - 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  - 5. Progress meetings.
  - 6. Preinstallation conferences.
  - 7. Project closeout activities.
  - 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely

indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.

1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
  - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
  - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
  - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
  - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
  - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
  - f. Indicate required installation sequences.
  - g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
  1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
  2. Plenum Space: Indicate sub framing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
  3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
  4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
  5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
  6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:

- a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
    - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
    - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
  - 7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
    - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
    - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
    - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor-control center locations.
    - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
  - 8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
    - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
  - 9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that in general the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
  - 10. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."
- C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:
- 1. File Preparation Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.
  - 2. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
  - 3. BIM File Incorporation: Develop and incorporate coordination drawing files into BIM established for Project.
    - a. Perform three-dimensional component conflict analysis as part of preparation of coordination drawings. Resolve component conflicts prior to submittal. Indicate where conflict resolution requires modification of design requirements by Architect.
  - 4. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files.
    - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
    - b. Digital Data Software Program: Drawings are available in AutoDesk Revit or AutoDesk AutoCAD format.
    - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form acceptable to Owner and Architect.

1.7 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
  - 1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
  - 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
  - 1. Project name.
  - 2. Project number.
  - 3. Date.
  - 4. Name of Contractor.
  - 5. Name of Architect.
  - 6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  - 7. RFI subject.
  - 8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  - 9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  - 10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  - 11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  - 12. Contractor's signature.
  - 13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
    - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: AIA Document G716 or Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
  - 1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven (7) working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
  - 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.

- g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  - 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect of additional information.
  - 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 01 2600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect and Owner in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
  - E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Use software log that is part of web-based Project software. Include the following:
    - 1. Project name.
    - 2. Name and address of Contractor.
    - 3. Name and address of Architect.
    - 4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
    - 5. RFI description.
    - 6. Date the RFI was submitted.
    - 7. Date Architect's response was received.
    - 8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
    - 9. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
  - F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.
- 1.8 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES
- A. Architect's Data Files Not Available: Architect will not provide Architect's BIM model digital data files for Contractor's use during construction.
  - B. Use of Architect's Digital Data Files: Digital data files of Architect's BIM model will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use during construction.
    - 1. Digital data files may be used by Contractor in preparing coordination drawings, Shop Drawings, and Project record Drawings.
    - 2. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Contract Drawings.
    - 3. Digital Drawing Software Program: Contract Drawings are available in AutoDesk Revit.
    - 4. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form acceptable to Owner and Architect.

- a. Subcontractors, and other parties granted access by Contractor to Architect's digital data files shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement acceptable to Owner and Architect.
- 5. The following digital data files will be furnished for each appropriate discipline:
  - a. Floor plans.
  - b. Reflected ceiling plans.
- C. Web-Based Project Software: Provide, administer, and use web-based Project software site for purposes of hosting and managing Project communication and documentation until Final Completion.
  - 1. Web-based Project software site includes, at a minimum, the following features:
    - a. Compilation of Project data, including Contractor, subcontractors, Architect, architect's consultants, Owner, and other entities involved in Project. Include names of individuals and contact information.
    - b. Access control for each entity for each workflow process, to determine entity's digital rights to create, modify, view, and print documents.
    - c. Document workflow planning, allowing customization of workflow between project entities.
    - d. Creation, logging, tracking, and notification for Project communications required in other Specification Sections, including, but not limited to, RFIs, submittals, Minor Changes in the Work, Construction Change Directives, and Change Orders.
    - e. Track status of each Project communication in real time, and log time and date when responses are provided.
    - f. Procedures for handling PDFs or similar file formats, allowing markups by each entity. Provide security features to lock markups against changes once submitted.
    - g. Processing and tracking of payment applications.
    - h. Processing and tracking of contract modifications.
    - i. Creating and distributing meeting minutes.
    - j. Document management for Drawings, Specifications, and coordination drawings, including revision control.
    - k. Management of construction progress photographs.
    - l. Mobile device compatibility, including smartphones and tablets.
  - 2. Provide up to seven web-based Project software user licenses for use of Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants. Provide software training at Architect's office for web-based Project software users.
  - 3. At completion of Project, provide digital archive in format that is readable by common desktop software applications in format acceptable to Architect. Provide data in locked format to prevent further changes.
  - 4. Provide one of the following web-based Project software packages under their current published licensing agreements:
    - a. Autodesk; Buzzsaw or Construct-ware.
    - b. Corecon Technologies, Inc.
    - c. Meridian Systems; Prolog.
    - d. Newforma, Inc.
    - e. Procore Technologies, Inc.

- f. Viewpoint, Inc.; Viewpoint for Project Collaboration.
- D. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:
  - 1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
  - 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
  - 3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

#### 1.9 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of 10 working days prior to meeting.
  - 2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
  - 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
  - 1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
    - b. Tentative construction schedule.
    - c. Phasing.
    - d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
    - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - f. Lines of communications.
    - g. Use of web-based Project software.
    - h. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    - i. Procedures for RFIs.
    - j. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
    - k. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.

- l. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
    - m. Submittal procedures.
    - n. Sustainable design requirements.
    - o. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - p. Use of the premises.
    - q. Work restrictions.
    - r. Working hours.
    - s. Owner's occupancy requirements.
    - t. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - u. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
    - v. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
    - w. Construction waste management and recycling.
    - x. Parking availability.
    - y. Office, work, and storage areas.
    - z. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
    - aa. First aid.
    - bb. Security.
    - cc. Progress cleaning.
  - 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
  - 4. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent and sustainable design coordinator; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 5. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect meeting sustainable design requirements, including the following:
    - a. Sustainable design Project checklist.
    - b. General requirements for sustainable design-related procurement and documentation.
    - c. Project closeout requirements and sustainable design certification procedures.
    - d. Role of sustainable design coordinator.
    - e. Construction waste management.
    - f. Construction operations and sustainable design requirements and restrictions.
  - 6. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
  - 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.



2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.
    - c. Related RFIs.
    - d. Related Change Orders.
    - e. Purchases.
    - f. Deliveries.
    - g. Submittals.
    - h. Sustainable design requirements.
    - i. Review of mockups.
    - j. Possible conflicts.
    - k. Compatibility requirements.
    - l. Time schedules.
    - m. Weather limitations.
    - n. Manufacturer's written instructions.
    - o. Warranty requirements.
    - p. Compatibility of materials.
    - q. Acceptability of substrates.
    - r. Temporary facilities and controls.
    - s. Space and access limitations.
    - t. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - u. Testing and inspecting requirements.
    - v. Installation procedures.
    - w. Coordination with other work.
    - x. Required performance results.
    - y. Protection of adjacent work.
    - z. Protection of construction and personnel.
  3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
  4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
  5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 90 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
  2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:

- a. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
    - c. Procedures for completing and archiving web-based Project software site data files.
    - d. Submittal of written warranties.
    - e. Requirements for completing sustainable design documentation.
    - f. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
    - g. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
    - h. Requirements for demonstration and training.
    - i. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
    - j. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
    - k. Submittal procedures.
    - l. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
    - m. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
    - n. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- E. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at regular intervals.
1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
  2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
      - 1) Review schedule for next period.
    - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
      - 4) Status of submittals.
      - 5) Status of sustainable design documentation.
      - 6) Deliveries.
      - 7) Off-site fabrication.
      - 8) Access.

- 9) Site use.
  - 10) Temporary facilities and controls.
  - 11) Progress cleaning.
  - 12) Quality and work standards.
  - 13) Status of correction of deficient items.
  - 14) Field observations.
  - 15) Status of RFIs.
  - 16) Status of Proposal Requests.
  - 17) Pending changes.
  - 18) Status of Change Orders.
  - 19) Pending claims and disputes.
  - 20) Documentation of information for payment requests.
4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
  - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- F. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at regular intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
  1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
    - b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
    - c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.

- 4) Status of submittals.
  - 5) Deliveries.
  - 6) Off-site fabrication.
  - 7) Access.
  - 8) Site use.
  - 9) Temporary facilities and controls.
  - 10) Work hours.
  - 11) Hazards and risks.
  - 12) Progress cleaning.
  - 13) Quality and work standards.
  - 14) Status of RFIs.
  - 15) Proposal Requests.
  - 16) Change Orders.
  - 17) Pending changes.
3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 3100**

SECTION 01 3200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Startup construction schedule.
  - 2. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 3. Construction schedule updating reports.
  - 4. Daily construction reports.
  - 5. Material location reports.
  - 6. Site condition reports.
  - 7. Unusual event reports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
  - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
  - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
  - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for completing an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum.
- C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.
- D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.

- F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
  - 1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
  - 2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
  - 3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.
- G. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for completing an activity as scheduled.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
  - 1. Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.
  - 2. PDF file.
  - 3. Two paper copies, of sufficient size to display entire period or schedule, as required.
- B. Startup construction schedule.
  - 1. Submittal of cost-loaded, startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.
- C. Startup Network Diagram: Of size required to display entire network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.
- D. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
  - 1. Submit a working digital copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals.
- E. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
  - 1. Activity Report: List of activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
  - 2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for each activity, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then by early start date, or actual start date if known.
  - 3. Total Float Report: List of activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
- F. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- G. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.

- H. Material Location Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.
- I. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- J. Unusual Event Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.
- K. Qualification Data: For scheduling consultant.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Architect's request.
- B. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the preliminary construction schedule and Contractor's Construction Schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.
  - 2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
  - 3. Discuss constraints, including work stages, area separations, and interim milestones.
  - 4. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
  - 5. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
  - 6. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
  - 7. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
  - 8. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
  - 9. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures.
  - 10. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
  - 11. Review procedures for updating schedule.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
  - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
  - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

#### 1.7 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.

1. Use Microsoft Project, Primavera, Meridian Prolog, or Scheduling component of Project website software specified in Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination," for current Windows operating system.
- B. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for commencement of the Work to date of final completion.
  1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- C. Activities: Treat each floor or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
  1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by the Architect.
  2. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with submittal schedule.
  3. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
  4. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.
- D. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
  1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
  2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
  3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
  4. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 01 1000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
  5. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 01 1000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
  6. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
    - a. Coordination with existing construction.
    - b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
    - c. Uninterruptible services.
    - d. Partial occupancy before Substantial Completion.
    - e. Use-of-premises restrictions.
    - f. Provisions for future construction.
    - g. Seasonal variations.
    - h. Environmental control.
  7. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:



- a. Subcontract awards.
  - b. Submittals.
  - c. Purchases.
  - d. Mockups.
  - e. Fabrication.
  - f. Sample testing.
  - g. Deliveries.
  - h. Installation.
  - i. Tests and inspections.
  - j. Adjusting.
  - k. Curing.
  - l. Building flush-out.
  - m. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
  - n. Commissioning.
8. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
  - a. Structural completion.
  - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
  - c. Permanent space enclosure.
  - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
  - e. Completion of electrical installation.
  - f. Substantial Completion.
- E. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion.
- F. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
  1. See Section 01 2900 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- G. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
  1. Unresolved issues.
  2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
  3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
  4. Notations on returned submittals.
  5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and the Contract Time.
- H. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule at each regularly scheduled progress meeting.

1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
  2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
  3. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.
- I. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
  - J. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
    1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
    2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

#### 1.8 GANTT-CHART SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's Construction Schedule within 30 days of date established for commencement of the Work.
  1. Base schedule on the startup construction schedule and additional information received since the start of Project.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
  1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

#### 1.9 CPM SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
- B. Startup Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for commencement of the Work. Outline significant construction activities for the first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.
- C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's Construction Schedule using a time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.

1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 60 days after date established for commencement of the Work.
    - a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates.
  2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
  3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
  4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule to coordinate with the Contract Time.
- D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the startup network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following activities:
    - a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
    - b. Mobilization and demobilization.
    - c. Purchase of materials.
    - d. Delivery.
    - e. Fabrication.
    - f. Utility interruptions.
    - g. Installation.
    - h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
    - i. Testing and inspection.
    - j. Commissioning.
    - k. Punch list and final completion.
    - l. Activities occurring following final completion.
  2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.
  3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, time-scaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
  4. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate paths with most float near the edges.
    - a. Subnetworks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the critical path.

- E. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall Project schedule.
- F. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early start-total float." Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
  - 1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
  - 2. Description of activity.
  - 3. Main events of activity.
  - 4. Immediate preceding and succeeding activities.
  - 5. Early and late start dates.
  - 6. Early and late finish dates.
  - 7. Activity duration in workdays.
  - 8. Total float or slack time.
  - 9. Average size of workforce.
  - 10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the schedule of values).
- G. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
  - 1. Identification of activities that have changed.
  - 2. Changes in early and late start dates.
  - 3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
  - 4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
  - 5. Changes in the critical path.
  - 6. Changes in total float or slack time.
  - 7. Changes in the Contract Time.

#### 1.10 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
  - 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
  - 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
  - 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
  - 4. Equipment at Project site.
  - 5. Material deliveries.
  - 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
  - 7. Testing and inspection.
  - 8. Accidents.
  - 9. Meetings and significant decisions.
  - 10. Unusual events.
  - 11. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
  - 12. Meter readings and similar recordings.
  - 13. Emergency procedures.
  - 14. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 15. Change Orders received and implemented.
  - 16. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.

17. Services connected and disconnected.
  18. Equipment or system tests and startups.
  19. Partial completions and occupancies.
  20. Substantial Completions authorized.
- B. Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:
1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
  2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
  3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.
- C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.
- D. Unusual Event Reports: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, responses by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.
1. Submit unusual event reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 3200**

SECTION 01 3300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Submittal schedule requirements.
  - 2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2900 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
  - 2. Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting coordination drawings and subcontract list and for requirements for web-based Project software.
  - 3. Section 01 3200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 4. Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports, and schedule of tests and inspections.
  - 5. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting closeout submittals and maintenance material submittals.
  - 6. Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 7. Section 01 7839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

1.4 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted

by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
  - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
  - b. Specification Section number and title.
  - c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.
  - d. Name of subcontractor.
  - e. Description of the Work covered.
  - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
  - g. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
  - h. Scheduled date of fabrication.
  - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
  - j. Activity or event number.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:

1. Project name.
2. Date.
3. Name of Architect.
4. Name of Construction Manager.
5. Name of Contractor.
6. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
7. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
8. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier; and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
9. Category and type of submittal.
10. Submittal purpose and description.
11. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
12. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
13. Indication of full or partial submittal.
14. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
15. Other necessary identification.
16. Remarks.
17. Signature of transmitter.

B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.

- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.
- D. Paper Submittals:
  - 1. Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal item for identification; include name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
  - 2. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
  - 3. Action Submittals: Submit one(1) PDF Submittal copy of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return one PDF digital copy.
  - 4. Informational Submittals: Submit one (1) PDF Submittal copy of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
  - 5. Additional Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
  - 6. Transmittal for Submittals: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using AIA Document G810 transmittal form.
- E. PDF Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.
- F. Submittals for Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals as PDF files, or other format indicated by Project software website.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
  - 1. Email: Prepare submittals as PDF package, and transmit to Architect by sending via email. Include PDF transmittal form. Include information in email subject line as requested by Architect.
    - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as a digital Project Record Document file.
  - 2. Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
  - 3. Paper: Prepare submittals in paper form and deliver to Architect or provide electronic source.
  - 4. Material Samples: Where submittal address approval or selection of materials or products provide actual sample for review and selection by the Architect. This includes, but not limited to, color selections.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.



2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
  4. Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Initial Review: Allow fifteen (15) days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  3. Resubmittal Review: Allow fifteen (15) days for review of each resubmittal.
  4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow twenty-one (21) days for initial review of each submittal.
  5. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow fifteen (15) days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Architect before being returned to Contractor.
    - a. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of copies to Architect.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in the same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

#### 1.7 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.

1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrent with Samples.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
  2. Paper Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size Drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
    - a. One PDF Submittal copy of each submittal. Architect will return one PDF Copy.
  3. BIM Incorporation: Develop and incorporate Shop Drawing files into BIM established for Project.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Project name and submittal number.
    - b. Generic description of Sample.
    - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - d. Sample source.

- e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
    - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
  - 3. Email Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
  - 4. Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
  - 5. Paper Transmittal: Include paper transmittal including complete submittal information indicated.
  - 6. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  - 7. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
  - 8. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit two (2) sets of Samples. Architect will retain one (1) Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a project record Sample.
      - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
      - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
- 1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
  - 2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
  - 3. Number and name of room or space.
  - 4. Location within room or space.

- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.
- G. Certificates:
  - 1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on
  - 2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
  - 3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
  - 4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  - 5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  - 6. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- H. Test and Research Reports:
  - 1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
  - 2. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  - 3. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  - 4. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
  - 5. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

6. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - a. Name of evaluation organization.
  - b. Date of evaluation.
  - c. Time period when report is in effect.
  - d. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - e. Description of product.
  - f. Test procedures and results.
  - g. Limitations of use.

## 1.8 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file copy of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
  1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.
- C. BIM Incorporation: Incorporate delegated-design drawing and data files into BIM established for Project.
  1. Prepare delegated-design drawings in the following format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.

## 1.9 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp or indication in web-based Project software. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
  1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

1.10 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it.
  - 1. PDF Submittals: Architect will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action.
  - 2. Paper Submittals: Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.
  - 3. Submittals by Web-Based Project Software: Architect will indicate, on Project software website, the appropriate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Architect will return without review or discard submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by the Architect without action.

1.11 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF ARCHITECT'S CAD or BIM FILES

- A. General: At Contractor's written request, copies of Architect's CAD files will be provided to Contractor for Contractor's use in connection with Project, subject to the following conditions:
  - 1. Electronic files are compatible with Architect's software and hardware. Architect makes no representation as to the compatibility of these files with other software or hardware.
  - 2. Data contained on these electronic files is part of Architect's instrument of service and are copy righted by the Architect. Electronic data shall not be used by anyone for any purpose other than as a convenience in the preparation of drawings for the referenced project.
  - 3. The information provided shall not be released to any other party without the written consent of the Architect. Any use or reuse, by you or by others, will be at your sole risk and without liability or legal exposure to the Architect.
  - 4. Architect hereby grants a limited use agreement of their copyright for the sole purpose of convenience in the preparation of drawings for the referenced project. All other uses of the Architect's electronic data are excluded from this limited use agreement and will be prosecuted to the fullest extent of the law.
  - 5. Architect makes no responsibility for viruses or other harmful hidden electronic files or data possibly included in the Architect's electronic files. It is the responsibility of the Recipient to scan for and remove all viruses or potentially harmful data prior to use. Architect takes no responsibility for possible software errors that may affect the information or performance of the information included in these files.

6. The Recipient agrees to make no claim and hereby waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any claim or cause of action of any nature against the Architect, its officers, directors, employees, agents or sub-consultants which may arise out of or in connection with the use of the electronic files.
7. The Recipient shall, to the fullest extent permitted by law, indemnify, defend, and hold harmless Architect from all claims, damages, losses and expenses, including attorney fees, arising out of or resulting from the use of these electronic files.
8. Electronic files are not contractual documents. Significant differences may exist between electronic files and hard copy contractual documents due to addenda, change orders or other revisions.
9. Architect makes no representation regarding the accuracy or completeness of the electronic files you receive. If a conflict arises between the signed contract documents prepared by the Architect and the electronic files, the recipient is not relieved of their duty to fully comply with the contractual documents, including and without limitation, the need to check, confirm and coordinate all dimensions and details, take field measurements, verify field conditions, and coordinate their work with that of other contractors.
10. Because of the potential that the information presented on the electronic files can be modified, unintentionally or otherwise, Architect reserves the right to remove all indications of its ownership and/or involvement from each electronic display.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
- C. Contractor is responsible for final review prior to installing the Work.

##### 3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or modifications required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action taken.

- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
  - D. Partial submittals are not acceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned without review.
- 3.1 Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may not be reviewed and may be discarded.

**END OF SECTION 01 3300**



SECTION 01 4000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
  - 4. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2100 "Allowances" for testing and inspection allowances.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.

1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- D. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site either as freestanding temporary built elements or as part of permanent construction. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies constructed and tested at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.
  2. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope constructed on-site as freestanding temporary built elements or as part of permanent construction, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
  3. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling finishes; doors; windows; millwork; casework; specialties; furnishings and equipment; and lighting.
- E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) according to 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- G. Source Quality-Control Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source; for example, plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect.

#### 1.4 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

#### 1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for direction before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

#### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For integrated exterior mockups.
  - 1. Include plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
  - 2. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
  - 3. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Submittal: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

#### 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.

- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
  - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
  - 2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
  - 1. Specification Section number and title.
  - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
  - 3. Description of test and inspection.
  - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
  - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
  - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
  - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
  - 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
  - 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.
- F. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.
- G. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

## 1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date of issue.
  - 2. Project title and number.
  - 3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
  - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  - 8. Complete test or inspection data.
  - 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  - 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspection.
  - 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.

12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  13. Recommendations on retesting and re-inspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
  2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
  3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
  - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
  - 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
    - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
    - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
    - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
    - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
    - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
    - f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
  - 2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether

tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.

- K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
  - 1. Build mockups of size indicated.
  - 2. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  - 3. Notify Architect seven (7) days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  - 4. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
  - 5. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
  - 6. Obtain Architect's and Construction Manager's approval of mockups before starting corresponding work, fabrication, or construction.
    - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
  - 7. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 8. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Construct integrated exterior mockup as indicated on Drawings. Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products for which mockups are required in individual Specification Sections, along with supporting materials. Comply with requirements in "Mockups" Paragraph.
- M. Room Mockups: Construct a single unit mockup of unit type selected by Owner incorporating required materials and assemblies, finished according to requirements. Provide required lighting and additional lighting where required to enable Architect to evaluate quality of the Work. Comply with requirements in "Mockups" Paragraph.
- N. Provide room mockups of the following:
  - 1. Residential Unit Type as designated on Drawings.

#### 1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
  - 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
  - 2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspection allowances, as authorized by Change Orders.
  - 3. Costs for retesting and re-inspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor.

- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  - 2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.
    - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
  - 3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
  - 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  - 5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  - 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Retesting/Re-inspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and re-inspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
  - 1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  - 2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  - 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  - 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  - 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  - 6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.



- G. Associated Contractor Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
  - 1. Access to the Work.
  - 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  - 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  - 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  - 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  - 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  - 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
  - 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's Construction Schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
  - 1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

#### 1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
  - 1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
  - 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  - 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
  - 5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
  - 6. Retesting and re-inspecting corrected work.

- B. Special Tests and Inspections: Conducted by a qualified testing agency and special inspector as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as indicated in individual Specification Sections, and as follows:
  - 1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
  - 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  - 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
  - 5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
  - 6. Retesting and re-inspecting corrected work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 ACCEPTABLE TESTING AGENCIES

- A. Applied Geotechnical Engineering Consultants, Inc., 600 West Sandy Pkwy, Sandy, Utah
- B. Utah Testing and Engineering, 2550 South Decker Drive, West Valley, Utah.
- C. Western Technologies, 420 Lawndale Drive, Salt Lake City, Utah.
- D. Others, By Prequalification with Architect.

### 3.2 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  - 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  - 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  - 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.
  - 1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

3.3 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 01 7300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

**END OF SECTION 01 4000**

SECTION 01 4200 - REFERENCES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

## 1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.

- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

#### 1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."
- B. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
  - 1. AABC - Associated Air Balance Council; [www.aabc.com](http://www.aabc.com).
  - 2. AAMA - American Architectural Manufacturers Association; [www.aamanet.org](http://www.aamanet.org).
  - 3. AAPFCO - Association of American Plant Food Control Officials; [www.aapfco.org](http://www.aapfco.org).
  - 4. AASHTO - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; [www.transportation.org](http://www.transportation.org).
  - 5. AATCC - American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists; [www.aatcc.org](http://www.aatcc.org).
  - 6. ABMA - American Bearing Manufacturers Association; [www.americanbearings.org](http://www.americanbearings.org).
  - 7. ABMA - American Boiler Manufacturers Association; [www.abma.com](http://www.abma.com).
  - 8. ACI - American Concrete Institute; (Formerly: ACI International); [www.concrete.org](http://www.concrete.org)
  - 9. ACPA - American Concrete Pipe Association; [www.concrete-pipe.org](http://www.concrete-pipe.org).
  - 10. AEIC - Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The); [www.aeic.org](http://www.aeic.org).
  - 11. AF&PA - American Forest & Paper Association; [www.afandpa.org](http://www.afandpa.org).
  - 12. AGA - American Gas Association; [www.aga.org](http://www.aga.org).
  - 13. AHAM - Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers; [www.aham.org](http://www.aham.org).
  - 14. AHRI - Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (The); [www.ahrinet.org](http://www.ahrinet.org).
  - 15. AI - Asphalt Institute; [www.asphaltinstitute.org](http://www.asphaltinstitute.org).
  - 16. AIA - American Institute of Architects (The); [www.aia.org](http://www.aia.org).
  - 17. AISC - American Institute of Steel Construction; [www.aisc.org](http://www.aisc.org).
  - 18. AISI - American Iron and Steel Institute; [www.steel.org](http://www.steel.org).
  - 19. AITC - American Institute of Timber Construction; [www.aitc-glulam.org](http://www.aitc-glulam.org).
  - 20. AMCA - Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; [www.amca.org](http://www.amca.org).
  - 21. ANSI - American National Standards Institute; [www.ansi.org](http://www.ansi.org).
  - 22. AOSA - Association of Official Seed Analysts, Inc.; [www.aosaseed.com](http://www.aosaseed.com).
  - 23. APA - APA - The Engineered Wood Association; [www.apawood.org](http://www.apawood.org).
  - 24. APA - Architectural Precast Association; [www.archprecast.org](http://www.archprecast.org).
  - 25. API - American Petroleum Institute; [www.api.org](http://www.api.org).

26. ARI - Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
27. ARI - American Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
28. ARMA - Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association; [www.asphaltroofing.org](http://www.asphaltroofing.org).
29. ASCE - American Society of Civil Engineers; [www.asce.org](http://www.asce.org).
30. ASCE/SEI - American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute; (See ASCE).
31. ASHRAE - American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; [www.ashrae.org](http://www.ashrae.org).
32. ASME - ASME International; (American Society of Mechanical Engineers); [www.asme.org](http://www.asme.org).
33. ASSE - American Society of Safety Engineers (The); [www.asse.org](http://www.asse.org).
34. ASSE - American Society of Sanitary Engineering; [www.asse-plumbing.org](http://www.asse-plumbing.org).
35. ASTM - ASTM International; [www.astm.org](http://www.astm.org).
36. ATIS - Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions; [www.atis.org](http://www.atis.org).
37. AWEA - American Wind Energy Association; [www.awea.org](http://www.awea.org).
38. AWI - Architectural Woodwork Institute; [www.awinet.org](http://www.awinet.org).
39. AWMAC - Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; [www.awmac.com](http://www.awmac.com).
40. AWPAA - American Wood Protection Association; [www.awpa.com](http://www.awpa.com).
41. AWS - American Welding Society; [www.aws.org](http://www.aws.org).
42. AWWA - American Water Works Association; [www.awwa.org](http://www.awwa.org).
43. BHMA - Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; [www.buildershardware.com](http://www.buildershardware.com).
44. BIA - Brick Industry Association (The); [www.gobrick.com](http://www.gobrick.com).
45. BICSI - BICSI, Inc.; [www.bicsi.org](http://www.bicsi.org).
46. BIFMA - BIFMA International; (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association); [www.bifma.org](http://www.bifma.org).
47. BISSC - Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee; [www.bissc.org](http://www.bissc.org).
48. BWF - Badminton World Federation; (Formerly: International Badminton Federation); [www.bissc.org](http://www.bissc.org).
49. CDA - Copper Development Association; [www.copper.org](http://www.copper.org).
50. CE - Conformite Europeenne; <http://ec.europa.eu/growth/single-market/ce-marking/>
51. CEA - Canadian Electricity Association; [www.electricity.ca](http://www.electricity.ca).
52. CEA - Consumer Electronics Association; [www.ce.org](http://www.ce.org).
53. CFFA - Chemical Fabrics and Film Association, Inc.; [www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com](http://www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com).
54. CFSEI - Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute; [www.cfsei.org](http://www.cfsei.org).
55. CGA - Compressed Gas Association; [www.cganet.com](http://www.cganet.com).
56. CIMA - Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association; [www.cellulose.org](http://www.cellulose.org).
57. CISCA - Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association; [www.cisca.org](http://www.cisca.org).
58. CISPI - Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute; [www.cispi.org](http://www.cispi.org).
59. CLFMI - Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute; [www.chainlinkinfo.org](http://www.chainlinkinfo.org).
60. CPA - Composite Panel Association; [www.pbmdf.com](http://www.pbmdf.com).
61. CRI - Carpet and Rug Institute (The); [www.carpet-rug.org](http://www.carpet-rug.org).
62. CRRC - Cool Roof Rating Council; [www.coolroofs.org](http://www.coolroofs.org).
63. CRSI - Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute; [www.crsi.org](http://www.crsi.org).
64. CSA - CSA Group; [www.csa.ca](http://www.csa.ca).
65. CSA - CSA International; (Formerly: IAS - International Approval Services); [www.csa-international.org](http://www.csa-international.org).
66. CSI - Construction Specifications Institute (The); [www.csinet.org](http://www.csinet.org).
67. CSSB - Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau; [www.cedarbureau.org](http://www.cedarbureau.org).

68. CTI - Cooling Technology Institute; (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute); [www.cti.org](http://www.cti.org).
69. CWC - Composite Wood Council; (See CPA).
70. DASMA - Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association; [www.dasma.com](http://www.dasma.com).
71. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute; [www.dhi.org](http://www.dhi.org).
72. ECA - Electronic Components Association; (See ECIA).
73. ECAMA - Electronic Components Assemblies & Materials Association; (See ECIA).
74. ECIA - Electronic Components Industry Association; [www.eciaonline.org](http://www.eciaonline.org).
75. EIA - Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
76. EIMA - EIFS Industry Members Association; [www.eima.com](http://www.eima.com).
77. EJMA - Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.ejma.org](http://www.ejma.org).
78. ESD - ESD Association; (Electrostatic Discharge Association); [www.esda.org](http://www.esda.org).
79. ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association; (See PLASA).
80. ETL - Intertek (See Intertek); [www.intertek.com](http://www.intertek.com).
81. EVO - Efficiency Valuation Organization; [www.evo-world.org](http://www.evo-world.org).
82. FCI - Fluid Controls Institute; [www.fluidcontrolsintstitute.org](http://www.fluidcontrolsintstitute.org).
83. FIBA - Federation Internationale de Basketball; (The International Basketball Federation); [www.fiba.com](http://www.fiba.com).
84. FIVB - Federation Internationale de Volleyball; (The International Volleyball Federation); [www.fivb.org](http://www.fivb.org).
85. FM Approvals - FM Approvals LLC; [www.fmglobal.com](http://www.fmglobal.com).
86. FM Global - FM Global; (Formerly: FMG - FM Global); [www.fmglobal.com](http://www.fmglobal.com).
87. FRSA - Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc.; [www.floridarroof.com](http://www.floridarroof.com).
88. FSA - Fluid Sealing Association; [www.fluidsealing.com](http://www.fluidsealing.com).
89. FSC - Forest Stewardship Council U.S.; [www.fscus.org](http://www.fscus.org).
90. GA - Gypsum Association; [www.gypsum.org](http://www.gypsum.org).
91. GANA - Glass Association of North America; [www.glasswebsite.com](http://www.glasswebsite.com).
92. GS - Green Seal; [www.greenseal.org](http://www.greenseal.org).
93. HI - Hydraulic Institute; [www.pumps.org](http://www.pumps.org).
94. HI/GAMA - Hydronics Institute/Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association; (See AHRI).
95. HMMA - Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association; (See NAAMM).
96. HPVA - Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association; [www.hpva.org](http://www.hpva.org).
97. HPW - H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.; [www.hpwhite.com](http://www.hpwhite.com).
98. IAPSC - International Association of Professional Security Consultants; [www.iapsc.org](http://www.iapsc.org).
99. IAS - International Accreditation Service; [www.iasonline.org](http://www.iasonline.org).
100. IAS - International Approval Services; (See CSA).
101. ICBO - International Conference of Building Officials; (See ICC).
102. ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
103. ICEA - Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.; [www.icea.net](http://www.icea.net).
104. ICPA - International Cast Polymer Alliance; [www.icpa-hq.org](http://www.icpa-hq.org).
105. ICRI - International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.; [www.icri.org](http://www.icri.org).
106. IEC - International Electrotechnical Commission; [www.iec.ch](http://www.iec.ch).
107. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The); [www.ieee.org](http://www.ieee.org).
108. IES - Illuminating Engineering Society; (Formerly: Illuminating Engineering Society of North America); [www.ies.org](http://www.ies.org).
109. IESNA - Illuminating Engineering Society of North America; (See IES).
110. IEST - Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology; [www.iest.org](http://www.iest.org).
111. IGMA - Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance; [www.igmaonline.org](http://www.igmaonline.org).
112. IGSHPA - International Ground Source Heat Pump Association; [www.igshpa.okstate.edu](http://www.igshpa.okstate.edu).

113. ILI - Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.; [www.ili.ai.com](http://www.ili.ai.com).
114. Intertek - Intertek Group; (Formerly: ETL SEMCO; Intertek Testing Service NA); [www.intertek.com](http://www.intertek.com).
115. ISA - International Society of Automation (The); (Formerly: Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society); [www.isa.org](http://www.isa.org).
116. ISAS - Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society (The); (See ISA).
117. ISFA - International Surface Fabricators Association; (Formerly: International Solid Surface Fabricators Association); [www.isfanow.org](http://www.isfanow.org).
118. ISO - International Organization for Standardization; [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org).
119. ISSFA - International Solid Surface Fabricators Association; (See ISFA).
120. ITU - International Telecommunication Union; [www.itu.int/home](http://www.itu.int/home).
121. KCMA - Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association; [www.kcma.org](http://www.kcma.org).
122. LMA - Laminating Materials Association; (See CPA).
123. LPI - Lightning Protection Institute; [www.lightning.org](http://www.lightning.org).
124. MBMA - Metal Building Manufacturers Association; [www.mbma.com](http://www.mbma.com).
125. MCA - Metal Construction Association; [www.metalconstruction.org](http://www.metalconstruction.org).
126. MFMA - Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.maplefloor.org](http://www.maplefloor.org).
127. MFMA - Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.metalframingmfg.org](http://www.metalframingmfg.org).
128. MHIA - Material Handling Industry of America; [www.mhia.org](http://www.mhia.org).
129. MIA - Marble Institute of America; [www.marble-institute.com](http://www.marble-institute.com).
130. MMPA - Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; [www.wmmpa.com](http://www.wmmpa.com).
131. MPI - Master Painters Institute; [www.paintinfo.com](http://www.paintinfo.com).
132. MSS - Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.; [www.mss-hq.org](http://www.mss-hq.org).
133. NAAMM - National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; [www.naamm.org](http://www.naamm.org).
134. NACE - NACE International; (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International); [www.nace.org](http://www.nace.org).
135. NADCA - National Air Duct Cleaners Association; [www.nadca.com](http://www.nadca.com).
136. NAIMA - North American Insulation Manufacturers Association; [www.naima.org](http://www.naima.org).
137. NBGQA - National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.; [www.nbgqa.com](http://www.nbgqa.com).
138. NBI - New Buildings Institute; [www.newbuildings.org](http://www.newbuildings.org).
139. NCAA - National Collegiate Athletic Association (The); [www.ncaa.org](http://www.ncaa.org).
140. NCMA - National Concrete Masonry Association; [www.ncma.org](http://www.ncma.org).
141. NEBB - National Environmental Balancing Bureau; [www.nebb.org](http://www.nebb.org).
142. NECA - National Electrical Contractors Association; [www.necanet.org](http://www.necanet.org).
143. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association; [www.nelma.org](http://www.nelma.org).
144. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association; [www.nema.org](http://www.nema.org).
145. NETA - InterNational Electrical Testing Association; [www.netaworld.org](http://www.netaworld.org).
146. NFHS - National Federation of State High School Associations; [www.nfhs.org](http://www.nfhs.org).
147. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association; [www.nfpa.org](http://www.nfpa.org).
148. NFPA - NFPA International; (See NFPA).
149. NFRC - National Fenestration Rating Council; [www.nfrc.org](http://www.nfrc.org).
150. NHLA - National Hardwood Lumber Association; [www.nhla.com](http://www.nhla.com).
151. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority; [www.nlga.org](http://www.nlga.org).
152. NOFMA - National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association; (See NWFA).
153. NOMMA - National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association; [www.nomma.org](http://www.nomma.org).
154. NRCA - National Roofing Contractors Association; [www.nrca.net](http://www.nrca.net).
155. NRMCA - National Ready Mixed Concrete Association; [www.nrmca.org](http://www.nrmca.org).
156. NSF - NSF International; [www.nsf.org](http://www.nsf.org).



157. NSPE - National Society of Professional Engineers; [www.nspe.org](http://www.nspe.org).
158. NSSGA - National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association; [www.nssga.org](http://www.nssga.org).
159. NTMA - National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The); [www.ntma.com](http://www.ntma.com).
160. NWFA - National Wood Flooring Association; [www.nwfa.org](http://www.nwfa.org).
161. PCI - Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute; [www.pci.org](http://www.pci.org).
162. PDI - Plumbing & Drainage Institute; [www.pdionline.org](http://www.pdionline.org).
163. PLASA - PLASA; (Formerly: ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association); <http://www.plasa.org>.
164. RCSC - Research Council on Structural Connections; [www.boltcouncil.org](http://www.boltcouncil.org).
165. RFCI - Resilient Floor Covering Institute; [www.rfci.com](http://www.rfci.com).
166. RIS - Redwood Inspection Service; [www.redwoodinspection.com](http://www.redwoodinspection.com).
167. SAE - SAE International; [www.sae.org](http://www.sae.org).
168. SCTE - Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers; [www.scte.org](http://www.scte.org).
169. SDI - Steel Deck Institute; [www.sdi.org](http://www.sdi.org).
170. SDI - Steel Door Institute; [www.steeldoor.org](http://www.steeldoor.org).
171. SEFA - Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association (The); [www.sefalabs.com](http://www.sefalabs.com).
172. SEI/ASCE - Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers; (See ASCE).
173. SIA - Security Industry Association; [www.siaonline.org](http://www.siaonline.org).
174. SJI - Steel Joist Institute; [www.steeljoist.org](http://www.steeljoist.org).
175. SMA - Screen Manufacturers Association; [www.smainfo.org](http://www.smainfo.org).
176. SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; [www.smacna.org](http://www.smacna.org).
177. SMPTE - Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers; [www.smpte.org](http://www.smpte.org).
178. SPFA - Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance; [www.sprayfoam.org](http://www.sprayfoam.org).
179. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau; [www.spib.org](http://www.spib.org).
180. SPRI - Single Ply Roofing Industry; [www.spri.org](http://www.spri.org).
181. SRCC - Solar Rating & Certification Corporation; [www.solar-rating.org](http://www.solar-rating.org).
182. SSINA - Specialty Steel Industry of North America; [www.ssina.com](http://www.ssina.com).
183. SSPC - SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings; [www.sspc.org](http://www.sspc.org).
184. STI - Steel Tank Institute; [www.steeltank.com](http://www.steeltank.com).
185. SWI - Steel Window Institute; [www.steelwindows.com](http://www.steelwindows.com).
186. SWPA - Submersible Wastewater Pump Association; [www.swpa.org](http://www.swpa.org).
187. TCA - Tilt-Up Concrete Association; [www.tilt-up.org](http://www.tilt-up.org).
188. TCNA - Tile Council of North America, Inc.; [www.tileusa.com](http://www.tileusa.com).
189. TEMA - Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.tema.org](http://www.tema.org).
190. TIA - Telecommunications Industry Association (The); (Formerly: TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance); [www.tiaonline.org](http://www.tiaonline.org).
191. TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
192. TMS - The Masonry Society; [www.masonrysociety.org](http://www.masonrysociety.org).
193. TPI - Truss Plate Institute; [www.tpinst.org](http://www.tpinst.org).
194. TPI - Turfgrass Producers International; [www.turfgrassod.org](http://www.turfgrassod.org).
195. TRI - Tile Roofing Institute; [www.tilerroofing.org](http://www.tilerroofing.org).
196. UL - Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; <http://www.ul.com>.
197. UNI - Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association; [www.uni-bell.org](http://www.uni-bell.org).
198. USAV - USA Volleyball; [www.usavolleyball.org](http://www.usavolleyball.org).
199. USGBC - U.S. Green Building Council; [www.usgbc.org](http://www.usgbc.org).
200. USITT - United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.; [www.usitt.org](http://www.usitt.org).
201. WA - Wallcoverings Association; [www.wallcoverings.org](http://www.wallcoverings.org).
202. WASTEC - Waste Equipment Technology Association; [www.wastec.org](http://www.wastec.org).

203. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; [www.wclib.org](http://www.wclib.org).
  204. WCMA - Window Covering Manufacturers Association; [www.wcmanet.org](http://www.wcmanet.org).
  205. WDMA - Window & Door Manufacturers Association; [www.wdma.com](http://www.wdma.com).
  206. WI - Woodwork Institute; [www.wicnet.org](http://www.wicnet.org).
  207. WSRCA - Western States Roofing Contractors Association; [www.wsrca.com](http://www.wsrca.com).
  208. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association; [www.wwpa.org](http://www.wwpa.org).
- C. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
1. IAPMO - International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; [www.iapmo.org](http://www.iapmo.org).
  2. ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
  3. ICC-ES - ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; [www.icc-es.org](http://www.icc-es.org).
- D. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Information is subject to change and is up to date as of the date of the Contract Documents.
1. COE - Army Corps of Engineers; [www.usace.army.mil](http://www.usace.army.mil).
  2. CPSC - Consumer Product Safety Commission; [www.cpsc.gov](http://www.cpsc.gov).
  3. DOC - Department of Commerce; National Institute of Standards and Technology; [www.nist.gov](http://www.nist.gov).
  4. DOD - Department of Defense; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
  5. DOE - Department of Energy; [www.energy.gov](http://www.energy.gov).
  6. EPA - Environmental Protection Agency; [www.epa.gov](http://www.epa.gov).
  7. FAA - Federal Aviation Administration; [www.faa.gov](http://www.faa.gov).
  8. FG - Federal Government Publications; [www.gpo.gov/fdsys](http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys).
  9. GSA - General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
  10. HUD - Department of Housing and Urban Development; [www.hud.gov](http://www.hud.gov).
  11. LBL - Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Environmental Energy Technologies Division; [www.eetd.lbl.gov](http://www.eetd.lbl.gov).
  12. OSHA - Occupational Safety & Health Administration; [www.osha.gov](http://www.osha.gov).
  13. SD - Department of State; [www.state.gov](http://www.state.gov).
  14. TRB - Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; The National Academies; [www.trb.org](http://www.trb.org).
  15. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; [www.ars.usda.gov](http://www.ars.usda.gov).
  16. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; [www.usda.gov](http://www.usda.gov).
  17. USDOJ - Department of Justice; Office of Justice Programs; National Institute of Justice; [www.ojp.usdoj.gov](http://www.ojp.usdoj.gov).
  18. USP - U.S. Pharmacopeial Convention; [www.usp.org](http://www.usp.org).
  19. USPS - United States Postal Service; [www.usps.com](http://www.usps.com).
- E. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. CFR - Code of Federal Regulations; Available from Government Printing Office; [www.gpo.gov/fdsys](http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys).
  2. DOD - Department of Defense; Military Specifications and Standards; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
  3. DSCC - Defense Supply Center Columbus; (See FS).
  4. FED-STD - Federal Standard; (See FS).
  5. FS - Federal Specification; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
    - a. Available from Defense Standardization Program; [www.dsp.dla.mil](http://www.dsp.dla.mil).
    - b. Available from General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
    - c. Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide; [www.wbdg.org/ccb](http://www.wbdg.org/ccb).
  6. MILSPEC - Military Specification and Standards; (See DOD).
  7. USAB - United States Access Board; [www.access-board.gov](http://www.access-board.gov).
  8. USATBCB - U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; (See USAB).
- F. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
1. CBHF; State of California; Department of Consumer Affairs; Bureau of Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation; [www.bearhfti.ca.gov](http://www.bearhfti.ca.gov).
  2. CCR; California Code of Regulations; Office of Administrative Law; California Title 24 Energy Code; [www.calregs.com](http://www.calregs.com).
  3. CDHS; California Department of Health Services; (See CDPH).
  4. CDPH; California Department of Public Health; Indoor Air Quality Program; [www.cal-iaq.org](http://www.cal-iaq.org).
  5. CPUC; California Public Utilities Commission; [www.cpuc.ca.gov](http://www.cpuc.ca.gov).
  6. SCAQMD; South Coast Air Quality Management District; [www.aqmd.gov](http://www.aqmd.gov).
  7. TFS; Texas A&M Forest Service; Sustainable Forestry and Economic Development; [www.txforestservation.tamu.edu](http://www.txforestservation.tamu.edu).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 4200**

SECTION 01 5000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.
  - 2. Section 01 1200 "Multiple Contract Summary" for responsibilities for temporary facilities and controls for projects utilizing multiple contracts.

1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Water Service: Pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- D. Electric Power Service: Pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Implementation and Termination Schedule: Within 15 days of date established for commencement of the Work, submit schedule indicating implementation and termination dates of each temporary utility.

- C. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.
- D. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- E. Moisture- and Mold-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage and mold.
- F. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Include the following:
  - 1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
  - 2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
  - 3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
  - 4. Waste-handling procedures.
  - 5. Other dust-control measures.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the United States Access Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch-thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch-OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch-OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch-OD top rails.

- B. Fencing Windscreen Privacy Screen: Polyester fabric scrim with grommets for attachment to chain link fence, sized to height of fence, in color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
- C. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, 10-mil minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less per ASTM E 84 and passing NFPA 701 Test Method 2.
- D. Dust-Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-Off Mats: Provide mats minimum 36 by 60 inches.
- E. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.

## 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
  - 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction and clean HVAC system as required in Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Air-Filtration Units: Primary and secondary HEPA-filter-equipped portable units with four-stage filtration. Provide single switch for emergency shutoff. Configure to run continuously.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

- A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.

1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
  1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 01 1000 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### 3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
  1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
  1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
- D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- E. Temporary Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- F. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
  1. Install electric power service underground unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
  1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.

- H. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install WiFi cell phone access equipment and single land-based telephone line(s) for each field office.
  - 1. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
    - a. Police and fire departments.
    - b. Ambulance service.
    - c. Contractor's home office.
    - d. Contractor's emergency after-hours telephone number.
    - e. Architect's office.
    - f. Engineers' offices.
    - g. Owner's office.
    - h. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
- I. Electronic Communication Service: Provide a desktop computer in the primary field office adequate for use by Architect and Owner to access Project electronic documents and maintain electronic communications. Equip computer with not less than the following:
  - 1. Processor: Intel Core i5 or i7.
  - 2. Memory: 8 Insert number gigabyte.
  - 3. Disk Storage: 500 gigabyte hard-disk drive and combination DVD-RW/CD-RW drive.
  - 4. Display: 24-inch LCD monitor(s) with 256-Mb dedicated video RAM and a large screen 55" television monitor.
  - 5. Full-size keyboard and mouse.
  - 6. Network Connectivity: 10/100BaseT Ethernet.
  - 7. Operating System: Microsoft Windows.
  - 8. Productivity Software:
    - a. Microsoft Office Professional, including Word, Excel, and Outlook.
    - b. Adobe Reader, latest version.
    - c. Revit Viewer, latest version
  - 9. Printer: "All-in-one" unit equipped with printer server, combining color printing, photocopying, scanning, and faxing, or separate units for each of these three functions.
  - 10. Internet Service: Broadband modem, router and ISP, equipped with hardware firewall, providing minimum 1.0 Mbps upload and 15 Mbps download speeds at each computer.
  - 11. Internet Security: Integrated software, providing software firewall, virus, spyware, phishing, and spam protection in a combined application.
  - 12. Backup: External hard drive, minimum 2 terabyte, with automated backup software providing daily backups.

### 3.4 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the following:



1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.
  2. Maintain support facilities until Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas within construction limits indicated on Drawings.
1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and non-tracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- C. Temporary Use of Planned Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
  2. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas according to Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving."
  3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proof rolling, compacting, and testing.
  4. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Substantial Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course according to Section 32 1216 "Asphalt Paving."
- D. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
  2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- E. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.
- F. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
  2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- G. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
    - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.

3. Maintain and touch up signs so they are legible at all times.
  - H. Waste Disposal Facilities: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 7419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
  - I. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Section 01 7300 "Execution."
  - J. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
    1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
  - K. Temporary Elevator Use: See Section 14 2123.16 "Machine Room-Less Electric Traction Passenger Elevators" for temporary use of new elevators.
  - L. Temporary Stairs: Until permanent stairs are available, provide temporary stairs where ladders are not adequate.
  - M. Existing Stair Usage: Use of Owner's existing stairs will be permitted, provided stairs are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore stairs to condition existing before initial use.
    1. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect stairs and to maintain means of egress. If stairs become damaged, restore damaged areas so no evidence remains of correction work.
  - N. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Use of new stairs for construction traffic will be permitted, provided stairs are protected and finishes restored to new condition at time of Substantial Completion.
- 3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION
- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
    1. Where access to adjacent properties is required in order to affect protection of existing facilities, obtain written permission from adjacent property owner to access property for that purpose.
  - B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
    1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 01 1000 "Summary."
  - C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and

to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings or requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.

1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant-protection zones.
  2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
  3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
  4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- E. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- F. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
  2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel.
- G. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each workday.
- H. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- I. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- J. Covered Walkway: Erect protective, covered walkway for passage of individuals through or adjacent to Project site. Coordinate with entrance gates, other facilities, and obstructions. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Provide overhead decking, protective enclosure walls, handrails, barricades, warning signs, exit signs, lights, safe and well-drained walkways, and similar provisions for protection and safe passage.
  2. Paint and maintain appearance of walkway for duration of the Work.

- K. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
  - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- L. Temporary Partitions: Provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof partitions to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas occupied by Owner and tenants from fumes and noise.
  - 1. Construct dustproof partitions with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheet on each side. Cover floor with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheet, extending sheets 18 inches up the sidewalls. Overlap and tape full length of joints. Cover floor with fire-retardant-treated plywood.
    - a. Construct vestibule and airlock at each entrance through temporary partition with not less than 48 inches between doors. Maintain water-dampened foot mats in vestibule.
  - 2. Where fire-resistance-rated temporary partitions are indicated or are required by authorities having jurisdiction, construct partitions according to the rated assemblies.
  - 3. Insulate partitions to control noise transmission to occupied areas.
  - 4. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with gasketed dustproof doors and security locks where openings are required.
  - 5. Protect air-handling equipment.
  - 6. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.
- M. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
  - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas. Comply with additional limits on smoking specified in other Sections.
  - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
  - 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

### 3.6 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe delivery, handling, storage, installation, and protection provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.

1. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.
  2. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
  3. Indicate methods to be used to avoid trapping water in finished work.
- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
  2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
  3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
  4. Remove standing water from decks.
  5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
  2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
  3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
  4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
  5. Do not install material that is wet.
  6. Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
  7. Perform work in a sequence that allows wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in gypsum board or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Period: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
  2. Use temporary or permanent HVAC system to control humidity within ranges specified for installed and stored materials.
  3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
    - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective and require replacing.
    - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.

- c. Remove and replace materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

### 3.7 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
  - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- B. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- C. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  - 2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures."

**END OF SECTION 01 5000**

## SECTION 01 6000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
  - 2. Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
  - 3. Section 01 4200 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved by Architect through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

- C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications. Submit a comparable product request, if applicable.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Comparable Product Request Submittal: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify basis-of-design product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
  - 2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
    - a. Form of Architect's Approval of Submittal: As specified in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."
    - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
  - 1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
  - 2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service-connected or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:



- a. Name of product and manufacturer.
  - b. Model and serial number.
  - c. Capacity.
  - d. Speed.
  - e. Ratings.
3. See individual identification sections in Divisions 21, 22, 23, and 26 for additional identification requirements.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
  1. Schedule delivery to minimize any storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
  4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
  1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
  2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
  3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
  4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
  6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
  7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

#### 1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.

1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
  2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
  3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
  4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
  5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
  6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
    - a. Submit additional documentation required by Architect in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Evaluation of "or equal" product status is by the Architect, whose determination is final.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
1. Sole Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.

- a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following: ..."
2. Sole Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  - a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following: ..."
3. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following: ..."
4. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: ..."
5. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
  - a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample," provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
  1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
  - 1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant product qualities include attributes such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
  - 2. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  - 3. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  - 4. Samples, if requested.
- B. Submittal Requirements: Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 6000**

SECTION 01 7300 - EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Construction layout.
  - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
  - 3. Installation of the Work.
  - 4. Cutting and patching.
  - 5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
  - 6. Progress cleaning.
  - 7. Starting and adjusting.
  - 8. Protection of installed construction.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for limits on use of Project site.
  - 2. Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
  - 3. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.
  - 4. Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping" for patching penetrations in fire-rated construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.

- B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- C. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.
- D. Certified Surveys: Submit PDF copy signed by land surveyor or professional engineer.
- E. Final Property Survey: Submit PDF copy showing the Work performed and record survey data.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
  - 1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
  - 2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include the following:
    - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
    - b. Fire separation assemblies.
    - c. Air or smoke barriers.
    - d. Fire-suppression systems.
    - e. Plumbing piping systems.
    - f. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
    - g. Control systems.
    - h. Communication systems.
    - i. Fire-detection and -alarm systems.
    - j. Conveying systems.
    - k. Electrical wiring systems.
    - l. Operating systems of special construction.
  - 3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
    - b. Membranes and flashings.
    - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.

- d. Sprayed fire-resistive material.
  - e. Equipment supports.
  - f. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
  - g. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
  - h. .Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services; and other utilities.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.

1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination."

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Engage a land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
  2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
  3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
  6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.



7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

### 3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
  1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
  2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- B. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
  1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
  3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- C. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.
- D. Final Property Survey: Engage a land surveyor to prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by land surveyor, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.
  1. Show boundary lines, monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
  - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Where possible, select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work.

1. Comply with Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for repairing or removing and replacing defective Work.

### 3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to minimize interruption to occupied areas.
- F. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- G. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.

1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
  2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
    - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
  3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
  4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- H. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

### 3.7 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.
  1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
  2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

### 3.8 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.

1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
  3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
    - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to ensure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.
- 3.9 STARTING AND ADJUSTING
- A. Coordinate startup and adjusting of equipment and operating components with requirements in Section 01 9113 "General Commissioning Requirements."

- B. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- C. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- D. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements."

3.10 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

**END OF SECTION 01 7300**

SECTION 01 7700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
  - 2. Final completion procedures.
  - 3. Warranties.
  - 4. Final cleaning.
  - 5. Repair of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 2. Section 01 7839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cleaning agent.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at final completion.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 14 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  - 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  - 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  - 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
    - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Owner's signature for receipt of submittals.
  - 5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
  - 6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 14 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  - 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  - 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
  - 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
  - 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 01 7900 "Demonstration and Training."
  - 6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.
  - 7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
  - 8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  - 9. Complete final cleaning requirements.



10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 14 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
  1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
  2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

#### 1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
  1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 01 2900 "Payment Procedures."
  2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
  4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
  5. Submit final completion photographic documentation.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 14 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
  1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

#### 1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
  1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.

2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
  - a. Project name.
  - b. Date.
  - c. Name of Architect.
  - d. Name of Contractor.
  - e. Page number.

## 1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- C. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
  1. Submit two (2) copies on USB thumb drive and by email to Architect.
- D. Warranties in Paper Form:
  1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
  2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
- E. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    - c. Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
    - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
    - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
    - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
    - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
    - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
    - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
    - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
    - l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
    - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
    - n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.

- o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
- p. Clean luminaires, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
- q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

### 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair, or remove and replace, defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
  - 1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
  - 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
    - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
  - 3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
  - 4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

**END OF SECTION 01 7700**

SECTION 01 7823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
  - 4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
  - 5. Product maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

## 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit operation and maintenance manuals indicated. Provide content for each manual as specified in individual Specification Sections, and as reviewed and approved at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
  - 1. Architect will comment on whether content of operation and maintenance submittals is acceptable.
  - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operation and maintenance manuals in the following format:

1. Submit two (2) copies in PDF format on USB thumb drive and by email to Architect.
- C. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
  1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.
- D. Comply with Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

#### 1.5 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
  1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  2. File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

#### 1.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization of Manuals: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
  1. Title page.
  2. Table of contents.
  3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
  1. Subject matter included in manual.
  2. Name and address of Project.
  3. Name and address of Owner.
  4. Date of submittal.
  5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  6. Name and contact information for Architect.
  7. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.

8. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
- D. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

#### 1.7 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Operation Manual: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
  1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
  1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
  3. Operating standards.
  4. Operating procedures.
  5. Operating logs.
  6. Wiring diagrams.
  7. Control diagrams.
  8. Piped system diagrams.
  9. Precautions against improper use.
  10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- C. Descriptions: Include the following:
  1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Manufacturer's name.
  3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
  4. Equipment function.
  5. Operating characteristics.
  6. Limiting conditions.
  7. Performance curves.
  8. Engineering data and tests.

9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- D. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Startup procedures.
  2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  4. Regulation and control procedures.
  5. Instructions on stopping.
  6. Normal shutdown instructions.
  7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- E. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.
- F. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color coding where required for identification.

#### 1.8 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventive maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, lists of spare parts, and warranty information.
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Include the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins; include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a



tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.

- a. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
    2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
    3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
    4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
  - E. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
    1. Test and inspection instructions.
    2. Troubleshooting guide.
    3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
    4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
    5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
    6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
  - F. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
    1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
    2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
  - G. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
  - H. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
  - I. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
    1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
    2. Do not use original project record documents as part of maintenance manuals.
- 1.9 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS
- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.

- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Product name and model number.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  - 4. Material and chemical composition.
  - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  - 5. Repair instructions.
- F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 7823**

SECTION 01 7839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
  - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 7300 "Execution" for final property survey.
  - 2. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
  - 3. Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
  - 2. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
    - a. Final Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and the original set of prints.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
  - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.

- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
- E. Reports: Submit written report indicating items incorporated into project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

#### 1.4 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.
  - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.
    - h. Duct size and routing.
    - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
    - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
    - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  - 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  - 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.

6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
  1. Record Prints: Organize record prints into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
  2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
  3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
  4. Identification: As follows:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
    - d. Name of Architect.
    - e. Name of Contractor.

#### 1.5 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
  1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
  5. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Specifications.

#### 1.6 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.
- C. Format: Submit record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Product Data.
1. Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

#### 1.7 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.
- B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up miscellaneous record submittals.
1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

#### 1.8 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store record documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### **END OF SECTION 01 7839**

SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, vapor retarder and finishes.
- B. Exposed concrete walls over 8-inches in height shall have an architectural finish per 2.2-FORM-FACING MATERIALS.

## 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 99 656 – Epoxy Floor Coatings.
- B. Section 99 726 – Liquid Hardener-Densifier Floor Sealant

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing Drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.
- D. Below Grade sheet Vapor Retarder.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material certificates.
- B. Material test reports.
- C. Formwork Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer, detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of formwork.
- D. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements indicating compliance with specified tolerances.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

#### 1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on concrete mixtures.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1.
  1. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
  1. ACI 117.
  2. ACI 301.
  3. ACI 318.
  4. Except as modified by the structural engineer's construction documents.

#### 2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
- B. Consistent panel size across the length of the pour are required and shall have a smooth finish free of pockets, gaps, panel marks (plywood).

#### 2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed. Reference structural documents for grade of steel.



- B. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706 deformed. Reference structural documents for grade of steel.
- C. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- D. Deformed-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, flat sheet.
- E. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."
- F. Reference structural documents for EXPOSURE CONDITION and COVERAGE.
- G. For additional information not stated here, reference structural documents.

## 2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Materials:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II elsewhere, Type V in contact with the earth.
  - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618.
  - 3. Slag Cement: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
  - 4. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33 U.N.O., graded.
  - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches nominal for slabs on grade.
  - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
  - 3. 3/4 inches normal or less for other concrete, U.N.O.
- C. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- D. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
  - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
  - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type B.
  - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
  - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
  - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type G.
  - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017, Type II.
- E. Water: ASTM C 94 and potable.
- F. Calcium Chloride shall not be added to the concrete mix.
- G. Maximum slump as per structural engineer's documents.

- H. For additional information not stated here, reference structural documents.

## 2.5 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder: Polyethylene sheet with pressure taped seams, ASTM D 4397, 15mils thick shall be placed directly beneath the Concrete Slab over the Compacted Granular fill.
  - 1. Stego; Wrap Vapor Barrier (15-mil).
  - 2. W.R. Meadows; Perminator (15-mil).
  - 3. ISI Building Products; Viper II Under-Slab Vapor Barrier (15-mil).
- B. Installed over level surface.

## 2.6 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.

## 2.7 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.

## 2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, pozzolan, slag cement, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 20 percent.
- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  - 2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.

## 2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

### A. Normal-Weight Concrete:

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: As indicated in Structural Drawings.
2. Maximum W/C Ratio: As indicated in Structural Drawings.
3. Slump Limit: 5 inches for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, plus or minus 1 inch.
4. Air Content: As indicated in Structural Drawings.

## 2.10 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

## 2.11 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and furnish batch ticket information.

1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

- 2.12 Grout beneath column bases or bearing plates shall be per structural engineer's project documents.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FORMWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Do not chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

### 3.2 EMBEDDED ITEM INSTALLATION

1. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

### 3.3 VAPOR-RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Pressure Tape Seams.
  - 1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.

### 3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

### 3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
  - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
  - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
- E. Fibrous Expansion Joint Material: Cellular fibers securely bonded together and uniformly saturated with asphalt. Material shall be no less than 1/2-inch thick x depth of slab minus voidcap (see item 1 below). See project original construction documents. Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and requirements.
  - 1. Install Zip-Strip (voidcap) polystyrene cap placed over asphalt impregnated expansion joint, the top section (removeable cap) can be separated from the bottom section creating a 1/2-inch x 1/2-inch void on the surface of the concrete. Fill surface void with recommended sealant, continues length of surface void.

### 3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections are completed.
- B. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
  - 1. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.

### 3.7 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view.
- C. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.8 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
  - 1. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated.
- C. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
  - 1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated.

2. Finish and measure surface, so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, 10-ft.-long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/4 inch.

### 3.9 CONCRETE SLAB FINISH

- A. Reference specification section 09 9565 – Epoxy Floor Coatings for concrete slab on grade and elevated concrete slab Floor Coating.

### 3.10 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period.
- D. Cure concrete according to ACI 318, by one or a combination of the following methods:
  1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days.
  2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
  3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
    - a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
  4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

5. Curing Compound shall be compatible with anticipated floor finish (e.g., carpet tiles) prior to curing compound application

#### 3.11 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

#### 3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

**END OF SECTION 033000**

SECTION 04 2200 - CONCRETE MASONRY UNIT (CMU)

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes unit masonry assemblies consisting of the following:
  - 1. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
  - 2. Grout and Mortar.
  - 3. Rubber Expansion Joint
- B. See Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for furnishing steel lintels and shelf angles for unit masonry.
- C. See Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for furnishing manufactured reglets installed in masonry joints for metal flashing.

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For reinforcing steel. Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement." Show elevations of reinforced walls.
- C. Samples for each type and color of exposed masonry units and colored mortars.
- D. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies with fire-resistance ratings determined per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency, by equivalent concrete masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects.
  - 1. Build sample panels for typical exterior wall in sizes approximately 48 inches long by 48 inches high showing grout color, mortar joint types (raked and concave) and.
  - 2. Mockup may be built-in-place and the approved mockup may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.



#### 1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- B. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
    - a. Should an alternate product to the basis-of-design be submitted for substitution, the procedure outlined in Section 01 2500 must be followed. A sample of the substituted product must be provided with matching colors to the basis-of-design. Substituted products may be incorporated into the work only once written approval has been provided.
  - 2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work includes but are not limited to manufacturers specified.

#### 2.2 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS (CMUs)

- A. Manufacturer and Supplier: **Block-Life Masonry and Hardscape Products Forever**, 3900 East Industrial Drive, Flagstaff AZ. 86004, Phone (928) 526-1118 or approved equal by Architect.
- B. CMU: Basis-of-Design Products subject to compliance with requirements provide face brick, and accessories for a complete masonry veneered application.
  - 1. CMU Type 1: See drawings for location on Exterior Building Elevations.
    - a. Manufacturer: **Block-Life Masonry**
    - b. Color: Submit Manufacturer's full range of colors for Architect's selection.
    - c. Texture: Ground Face (Burnished).
  - 2. CMU Type 2: See drawings for location on Exterior Building Elevations
    - a. Manufacturer: **Block-Life Masonry**
    - b. Color: Submit Manufacturer's full range of colors for Architect's selection.
    - c. Texture: Ground Face (Burnished).

- C. Shapes: Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
- D. Sizes: 8-inch x 8-inch x 16-inch.
- E. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength for exposed units and where indicated.
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a. Addiment Incorporated; Block Plus W-10.
    - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block.
    - c. Master Builders, Inc.; Rheopel.
- F. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90:
  - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2000 psi in accordance with ASTM C 1314.
  - 2. Weight Classification: Medium Weight (115 PCF).

## 2.3 MASONRY LINTELS

- A. Masonry Lintels: Made from bond beam concrete masonry units with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout.

## 2.4 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Portland cement to be less than six months old.
- B. Compressive Strength:
  - 1. Grout: 2,000 psi.
  - 2. Mortar: 2,000 psi.
- C. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- D. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329, Type S.
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a. Capital Materials Corporation; Flamingo Color Masonry Cement.
    - b. Essroc, Italcementi Group.
    - c. Lafarge North America Inc.
    - d. Lehigh Cement Company.
    - e. National Cement Company, Inc.; Coosa Masonry Cement.

- E. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
  - 1. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
  - 2. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color. Provide mock-up with CMU mock-up panel for color selection.
- F. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- G. Cold-Weather Admixture: Non-chloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a. Addiment Incorporated; Mortar Kick.
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Accel-Guard 80.
    - c. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Morset.
    - d. Sonneborn, Div. of Chem-Rex; Trimix-NCA.
- H. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with concrete masonry units, containing integral water repellent by same manufacturer.
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a. Addiment Incorporated; Mortar Tite.
    - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block Mortar Admixture.
- I. Water: Potable.

## 2.5 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60.
- B. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: ASTM A 951; mill galvanized, carbon-steel wire for interior walls and hot-dip galvanized, carbon-steel wire for exterior walls.
  - 1. Wire Size for Side Rods: W1.7 or 0.148-inch diameter.
  - 2. Wire Size for Cross Rods: W1.7 or 0.148-inch diameter.
  - 3. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: W1.7 or 0.148-inch diameter.
  - 4. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches on center.
  - 5. Single-Wythe Masonry: Either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.
  - 6. Veneers Anchored with Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Single 0.188-inch diameter, hot-dip galvanized, carbon-steel continuous wire.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Pre-molded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; formulated from neoprene, urethane, or PVC.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from neoprene / rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall.
  - 1. Rubber (352 Heckmann) or Neoprene (354 Heckmann) expansion joint products
  - 2. Basis-of-design: Heckmann Building Products; 110 Richards Ave., Norwalk, CT 06854-1685, (800) 621.4140, [www.heckmannanchors.com](http://www.heckmannanchors.com).
  - 3. ASTM D 2000-18 and ASTM D 2240-15e1 for Rubber.
  - 4. ASTM D 1056-14 Neoprene.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
- D. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Break.
    - b. Archovations, Inc.; CavClear Masonry Mat.
    - c. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Polytite MortarStop.
    - d. Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Mortar Net.
  - 2. Provide one of the following configurations:
    - a. Strips, full depth of cavity and 10 inches high, with dovetail shaped notches 7 inches deep that prevent clogging with mortar droppings.

## 2.7 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains from new masonry without damaging masonry. Use product approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
    - b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
    - c. ProSoCo, Inc.

## 2.8 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.

2. Limit cementitious materials in mortar for exterior and reinforced masonry to portland cement and lime.
  3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Property Specification.
1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type S.
  2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
  3. For mortar parge coats, use Type S.
  4. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
  5. For interior non-load-bearing partitions, Type O may be used instead of Type N.
- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  2. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement by weight.
  3. Color: As selected by Architect from samples submitted.
- E. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
  2. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- B. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures.
- C. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.
- D. Comply with tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and with the following:

1. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.

### 3.2 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- D. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.3 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow brick and concrete masonry units as follows:
  1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
  2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
  3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
  4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Tool exposed joints raked and slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness for slightly concaved joints, unless otherwise indicated. See drawings for locations of Raked Joints. All others shall be slightly concaved.
- D. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint), unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.4 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

### 3.5 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL MEMBERS

- A. Anchor masonry to structural members where masonry abuts or faces structural members to comply with the following:
  - 1. Provide an open space not less than 1/2 inch in width between masonry and structural member, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Anchor masonry to structural members with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
  - 3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches on center vertically and 36 inches on center horizontally.

### 3.6 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
  - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
  - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until the entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
  - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspectors: Owner will engage qualified independent inspectors to perform inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform inspections.

1. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
  - B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections indicated below and prepare test reports:
    1. Payment for these services will be made by Owner.
  - C. Clay Masonry Unit Test: Per SPECIAL INSPECTION noted in construction drawings, GENERAL STRUCTURAL NOTES.
  - D. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: Per SPECIAL INSPECTION noted in construction drawings, GENERAL STRUCTURAL NOTES.
  - E. Mortar Test: Per SPECIAL INSPECTION noted in construction drawings, GENERAL STRUCTURAL NOTES.
  - F. Grout Test: Per SPECIAL INSPECTION noted in construction drawings, GENERAL STRUCTURAL NOTES.
- 3.8 Damp Proofing: Applied to below grade CMU as noted on the drawings.
- 3.9 CLEANING
- A. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
  - B. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
    1. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes.
    2. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner.
    3. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
    4. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
    5. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    6. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.
- 3.10 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL
- A. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
    1. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.



2. Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

**END OF SECTION 04 2200**

SECTION 05 1200 – STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Structural steel.
  - 2. Grout.

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD or is accredited by the IAS Fabricator Inspection Program for Structural Steel (AC 172).
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
  - 1. AISC 303.
  - 2. AISC 360.
  - 3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. STRUCTURAL – STEEL MATERIALS
- B. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M.
- C. Channels, Angles: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

- D. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- E. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade B, structural tubing.
- F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or Type S, Grade B.
- G. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

## 2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F 3125, Grade A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish, or as noted in Structural Drawings.
- B. Zinc-Coated High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade DH heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers, or as noted in Structural Drawings.
  - 1. Finish: Hot-dip or mechanically deposited zinc coating.
- C. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36, or as noted in Structural Drawings.
  - 1. Finish: Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50.

## 2.3 PRIMER

- A. Primer: Comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

## GROUT

- B. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," and to AISC 360.

## 2.5 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

## 2.6 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
  1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
  2. Surfaces to be field welded.
  3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
  4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
  5. Galvanized surfaces.
  6. Surfaces enclosed in interior construction.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
  1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
  2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

## 2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.
  1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
  1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
  2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
  3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
  4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedment's for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  - 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
  - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
  - 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

## 3.3 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - 1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  - 1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.
  - 2. Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
  - 3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Bolted Connections: Inspect bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- D. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  - 1. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
    - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
    - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
    - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
    - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

**END OF SECTION 05 1200**

## SECTION 05 4000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
  - 2. Exterior load-bearing wall framing.
  - 3. Interior non-load-bearing wall framing.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for masonry shelf angles and connections.
  - 2. Section 09 2900 "Gypsum Board" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud-framed walls.
  - 3. Section 09 2216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.

## 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed steel framing product and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
  - 2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For cold-formed steel framing.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each listed product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Steel sheet.
  - 2. Expansion anchors.
  - 3. Power-actuated anchors.
  - 4. Mechanical fasteners.
  - 5. Vertical deflection clips.
  - 6. Horizontal drift deflection clips
  - 7. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.
- D. Research Reports: For non-standard cold-formed steel framing, from ICC-ES.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect cold-formed steel framing from corrosion, moisture staining, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :
  - 1. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company,  
[www.dietrichindustries.com](http://www.dietrichindustries.com)
  - 2. MarinoWARE, [www.marinoware.com](http://www.marinoware.com).
  - 3. SCAFCO Corporation, [www.scafco.com](http://www.scafco.com).
  - 4. Substitutions: See Section 01 25 00 - Substitution Procedures.



## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design cold-formed steel framing.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed steel framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - 1. Design Loads: As indicated.
  - 2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
    - a. Select deflection ratios to suit finish material(s) to be used on the specific project. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the wall height.
    - b. Soffit Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span for live loads and 1/240 for total loads of the span.
  - 3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members located outside the insulated building envelope without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F.
  - 4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
    - a. Upward and downward movement of 3/4 inch.
  - 5. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.
- C. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Design Standards:
  - 1. Wall Studs: AISI S211.
  - 2. Headers: AISI S212.
  - 3. Lateral Design: AISI S213.
- D. AISI Specifications and Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with AISI S100 and AISI S200.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

## 2.3 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.

- B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
  - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
  - 2. Coating: G90 or equivalent.
- C. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection and Drift Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
  - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
  - 2. Coating: G90.

#### 2.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
  - 1. 20 gauge metal framing for interior Non-Load-Bearing metal framing, 18 gauge for exterior Non-Load-Bearing metal framing and exterior Load-Bearing metal framing gauge per structural drawings.
  - 2. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch.
  - 3. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.
- B. Deflection Track
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company, [www.dietrichindustries.com](http://www.dietrichindustries.com), MaxTrak
    - b. Super Stud Metal US; [www.infor@buysuperstud.com](mailto:www.infor@buysuperstud.com), Slotted Deflection Track.
    - c. US Frame Factory; [www.sales@usframefactory.com](mailto:www.sales@usframefactory.com), Slotted Deflection Track.
- C. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:
  - 1. Gauge of track shall match metal wall framing gauge.
  - 2. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs.
  - 3. Flange Width: 2-1/2 inches with 1-1/2 inches long slot.
- D. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries company, [www.dietrichindustries.com](http://www.dietrichindustries.com).
    - b. MarinoWARE, [www.marinoware.com](http://www.marinoware.com).
    - c. SCAFCO Corporation, [www.scafco.com](http://www.scafco.com).
    - d. Substitutions: See Section 01 25 00 - Substitution Procedures.

- E. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web and structure.

## 2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
  - 1. Supplementary framing.
  - 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
  - 3. Web stiffeners.
  - 4. Anchor clips.
  - 5. End clips.
  - 6. Foundation clips.
  - 7. Gusset plates.
  - 8. Stud kickers and knee braces.
  - 9. Joist hangers and end closures.
  - 10. Hole reinforcing plates.
  - 11. Backer plates.

## 2.6 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC70, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.
  - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- D. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

- B. Nonmetallic, Non-shrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, non-staining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- C. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multi-monomer plastic, and non-leaching; or of cold-formed steel of same grade and coating as framing members supported by shims.
- D. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200 and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
  - 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  - 2. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw

penetration.

- C. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- D. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- E. Do not bridge building expansion joints with cold-formed steel framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- F. Install insulation, specified in Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- G. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.
- H. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
  - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

### 3.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
  - 1. Stud Spacing: As indicated.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for non-plumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support, as detailed on drawings.
  - 1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
  - 2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
  - 3. Connect vertical deflection clips to infill or by-passing studs and anchor to building structure.
  - 4. Connect drift clips to cold-formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.
- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.

1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging, within 12 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of bridging and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs, secured to stud webs or flanges.
    - a. Install solid blocking at centers indicated.
  2. Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall- framing system.

#### 4.1 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Provide final protection and maintain, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, conditions that ensure that cold-formed steel framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 05 4000**

SECTION 05 5000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Miscellaneous steel framing and supports.
2. Prefabricated building columns.

## B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:

1. Loose steel lintels.
2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
3. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

## A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Prefabricated building columns.
2. Paint products.
3. Grout.

## B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

## C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For ladders, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

## A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design ladders.

## B. Structural Performance of Aluminum Ladders: Aluminum ladders, including landings, shall withstand the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions specified in ANSI A14.3.

## C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling,

opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces

## 2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36.
- C. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- D. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
- E. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793.
- F. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500/A 500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T6.
- I. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
- J. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.

## 2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
  1. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
  2. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
- B. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
- C. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
  1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.



2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- C. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- D. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 4500 psi.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended.
- D. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- E. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
- C. Fabricate steel girders for wood frame construction from continuous steel shapes of sizes indicated.
  - 1. Where wood nailers are attached to girders with bolts or lag screws, drill or punch holes at 24 inches on center.
- D. Fabricate steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction from steel pipe with steel baseplates and top plates as indicated. Drill or punch baseplates and top plates for anchor and connection bolts and weld to pipe with fillet welds all around. Make welds the same size as pipe wall thickness unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 PREFABRICATED BUILDING COLUMNS

- A. General: Provide prefabricated building columns consisting of load-bearing structural-steel members protected by concrete fireproofing encased in an outer non-load-bearing steel shell. Fabricate connections to comply with details shown or as needed to suit type of structure indicated.

## 2.8 METAL LADDERS

- A. General:
  - 1. Comply with ANSI A14.3.
- B. Steel Ladders:
  - 1. Space siderails 18-inches apart unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Siderails: Continuous, 1/2 thick-by-3-1/2-by-8-inch steel flat bars, with eased edges.
  - 3. Rungs: 3/4-inch-diameter slip-resistant steel ladder rung bars.
  - 4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
  - 5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung.
  - 6. Galvanize exterior ladders, including brackets.

## 2.9 LADDER SAFETY CAGES

- A. Fabricate ladder safety cages to comply with ANSI A14.3. Assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.

- B. Provide primary hoops at tops and bottoms of cages and spaced not more than 20 feet on center. Provide secondary intermediate hoops spaced not more than 48 inches on center between primary hoops.
- C. Galvanize exterior steel ladder safety cages, including brackets and fasteners.

## 2.10 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe
  - 1. Cap bollards bottom end with 3/16-inch-thick steel plate.
  - 2. Cap bollards top end with pre-cast dome cap.
    - a. 6-inch Diameter.
    - b. Manufacturer: **Bases for Design**; White Cap, 555 South 1325 West, Orem, Utah 84058, (801) 765-1440.
- B. Fabricate bollards with 3/16-inch-thick steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab. Drill baseplates at all four corners for 3/4-inch anchor bolts.
- C. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage from steel pipe or tubing with 1/4-inch-thick steel plate welded to bottom of sleeve.

## 2.11 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

## 2.12 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

## 2.13 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123 for other steel and iron products.
- B. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Shop prime with universal shop primer indicated.
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning.
- D. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

### 3.2 INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
- B. Anchor bollards to existing construction with anchor bolts. Provide four 3/4-inch bolts at each bollard unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.
- D. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

**END OF SECTION 05 5000**

Section 05 5400 - TRENCH AND ACCESS COVER SPECIFICATIONS

## PART 1 — GENERAL

## 1.01 SUMMARY

- A.** This section includes the following:
  - 1. Trench covers
  - 2. Access covers

## 1.02 RELATED WORK

- A.** Related work that is specified elsewhere
  - 1. Section 03000: Concrete work
  - 2. Section 03300: Cast-In-Place Concrete
  - 3. Section 03600: Grout

## 1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A.** Define industry and product terms as necessary.

## 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A.** Submission must be made within fifteen (15) working days of the General Contract award to avoid project delay.
- B.** Submittals shall contain the following as required for each specified system
  - 1. Shop Drawings; showing complete fabrication details for all trench and access covers, including required anchorage to surrounding construction, recesses, blocking, backing, and connections between similar and dissimilar trench and access cover assemblies.
  - 2. Manufacturer's product data; including product details, installation instructions, maintenance and cleaning instructions, Safety Data Sheets, and LEED documentation.
  - 3. Two (2) complete sets of color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.
  - 4. Three (3) 6" (152mm) samples of the specified systems

## 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A.** Manufacturer: Obtain trench and access cover assemblies through one source from a single manufacturer.
  - 1. Manufacturer shall have a third party certified ISO 9001 quality management system.
    - a. The manufacturer shall have documented management and control of the processes that influence the quality of its products
    - b. The manufacturer shall have documented management and control of the processes that influence the quality of its customer service.
  - 2. Manufacturer shall have a minimum of ten (10) years of experience in the fabrication of trench and access covers.
- B.** Installer: All products listed in this section shall be installed by a single installer with demonstrated experience in installing products of the same type and scope as specified. Installer shall be insured and licensed as required by agencies within the project's jurisdiction and acceptable to the manufacturer.

## 1.06 COORDINATION

- A.** Submittals shall be completed and approved prior to fabrication and shipment of material to jobsite.
- B.** Subcontract for the work of this section shall be planned to allow sufficient time for manufacturer's production and delivery scheduling.
- C.** Coordinate installation of products and systems with interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a successful installation without failure.
- D.** Verify field conditions affecting trench and access cover fabrication and installation. Show field measurements on submittal drawings. Coordinate field measurement schedule to avoid delay.

## 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A.** Provide temporary protective cover on anodized aluminum finished surfaces.
- B.** Deliver trench and access covers to jobsite in clean, unopened crates of sufficient size and strength to protect materials during transit.
- C.** Store components in original containers in a clean, dry location.

## 1.08 WARRANTY

- A.** Submit manufacturer's warranty that materials furnished will perform as specified for a period of not less than five (5) years when installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

# PART 2 — PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A.** Bases of Design: Furnish and install as noted in specifications and as indicated on drawings as manufactured by Balco, Inc., PO Box 17249, 2626 S. Sheridan, Wichita, KS 67217; phone: 800-767-0082 or (316) 945-0789.
- B.** Substitutions: Submit proposed substitutions in writing to the architect not less than 10 days before bids are due. Submit samples and product data to demonstrate acceptability of proposed substitute. Acceptance will be by addendum.
- C.** Balco model: TSA-12-250.

## 2.02 TRENCH AND ACCESS COVERS

- A.** Trench and Access Covers: Fabricate trench and access cover assemblies as detailed. Provide fasteners as required for complete installation.
  - 1. Trench and access covers shall have an abrasive 1/8-inch recessed surface.
  - 2. Trench and access covers shall cover the trench completely and be flush with surrounding finished floor surfaces to allow unrestricted pedestrian traffic.
  - 3. Load capacity: Gurney/Bed [X-Ray]
  - 4. Access Covers no longer than 48-inches sections and are removable for ease of access. Field verify conditions and Field measure prior to fabrication. Coordinate with Architect.

## 2.03 MATERIALS

- B.** Metals
  - 1. Aluminum extrusions: ASTM B221, alloys 6063-T5, 6005A-T6, 6061-T6
  - 2. Aluminum plate and sheet: ASTM B209, alloys 6061-T6, 5052-H32
- C.** Trench Liners

1. Exposed smooth troweled finished and sealed concrete side walls and floor. Trench construction by others as detailed in the Construction Documents.
- D. Abrasive: Two (2) part Epoxy combined with aluminum oxide grit
- E. Cast-in or Block-out Anchors for assembly and installation shall be included. Coordinate with General Contractor.
- F. All surfaces in contact with masonry or concrete shall be protected by a factory-applied coating.

## 2.04 FINISHES

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: Mill finish, AA-M10 (As fabricated, unspecified)
- B. Aluminum Plates: AA-M30 (Directional textured finish, unspecified)
- C. Galvanized Steel shall be galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123.
- D. Abrasive: Manufacturer's full range of color options as selected by Architect during the submittal review.

## 2.05 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate trench and access covers as detailed.
  1. Fabricate trench and access covers of width and length as shown on shop drawings.
  2. Fabricate splices, special transitions, corner units, corner fittings, intersections, and end closures as required.
  3. Miter and weld joints shall be factory manufactured.
  4. Standard fasteners required for assembly and installation shall be included.

## PART 3 — EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify product types, quantities, dimensions, and attachment methods shown on shop drawings against field conditions prior to releasing materials for fabrication by the manufacturer.
- B. Installer shall examine conditions under which work is to be performed and shall notify the contractor in writing of unsatisfactory conditions. Installer shall not proceed until all unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the installer.
- C. If field conditions require modifications to the trench and access covers, communicate necessary changes on the manufacturer's shop drawings

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surfaces using methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the required results within project conditions.
- B. Corner block-outs should be square, level, free of spalling or laitance, and meet the dimensions shown on shop drawings. Repairs should be made using appropriate materials as recommended by concrete repair material manufacturer, based on project-specific conditions.
- C. Concrete repair material must be applied and allowed to cure in accordance to the manufacturer of the product recommendations and instructions.
- D. Clean dirt, debris, and other contaminants from both the blockout and trench opening
- E. Mask areas adjacent to the trench and access covers as required to achieve a neat and clean installation. Remove masking prior to the curing process.



### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install trench and access covers in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Rigidly anchor to substrate.
- B. Locate fasteners at interval recommended by manufacturer as shown on shop drawings.
- C. Repair or grout block-outs as required for continuous frame support. Bring base members to proper level; shimming is not allowed.

### 3.04 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect the installation from damage by work of other sections.
- B. Where required, remove and store cover plates and install temporary protection over trenches; re-install cover plates prior to substantial completion of work.
- C. Do not remove protective coverings until finish work in adjacent areas is complete.
- D. Prior to project closeout, clean exposed surfaces with a suitable cleaner as recommended by manufacturer.

### END SECTION - 055400

SECTION 06 1000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Framing with dimension lumber.
  - 2. Framing with engineered wood products.
  - 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - 4. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
  - 5. Wood furring and grounds.
  - 6. Plywood backing panels.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1600 "Sheathing" for sheathing, subflooring, and underlayment.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. OSB: Oriented strand board.
- E. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal size or greater in least dimension.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with

- requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
  - 4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
- B. Fastener Patterns: Full-size templates for fasteners in exposed framing.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
- 1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
  - 2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
  - 3. Engineered wood products.
  - 4. Power-driven fasteners.
  - 5. Post-installed anchors.
  - 6. Metal framing anchors.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
- 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.

2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
  3. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less; 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Engineered Wood Products: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
1. Allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

## 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
  2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
  3. Insect and termite treated per ASTM D3345.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
  2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
  4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
  5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

## 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials shall comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
  - 1. Treatment shall not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  - 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
  - 3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
  - 4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according to ASTM D 5664 and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841. For enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where high temperature fire-retardant treatment is indicated, provide material with adjustment factors of not less than 0.85 modulus of elasticity and 0.75 for extreme fiber in bending for Project's climatological zone.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
  - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
- E. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  - 1. Concealed blocking.
  - 2. Plywood backing panels.

## 2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

- A. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Construction or No. 2 grade.
  - 1. Application: Interior partitions not indicated as load bearing.
  - 2. Species:
    - a. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
- B. Load-Bearing Partitions: Grade Varies, See Structural Drawings.
  - 1. Application: Exterior walls and interior load-bearing partitions.
  - 2. Species:
    - a. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
- C. Ceiling Joists: Construction or No. 2 grade.

1. Species:
  - a. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWP.
- D. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing Not Listed Above: Construction or No. 2 grade.
  1. Species:
    - a. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWP.
- E. Exposed Framing Indicated to Receive a Stained or Natural Finish: Hand-select material for uniformity of appearance and freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot-holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.
  1. Species and Grade: Douglas fir-larch; No. 1 grade; WCLIB or WWP. Locations as indicated on Architectural & Structural Drawings.
  2. Species and Grade: Western cedars; No. 1 grade; WCLIB or WWP. Locations as indicated on Architectural & Structural Drawings.

## 2.5 TIMBER FRAMING

- A. Comply with the following requirements, according to grading rules of grading agency indicated:
  1. Species and Grade: Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (north), or Douglas fir-south; No. 1 grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP.
  2. Maximum Moisture Content: 20 percent.
  3. Additional Restriction: Free of heart centers.

## 2.6 ENGINEERED WOOD PRODUCTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of engineered wood product from single source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Laminated-Veneer Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood veneers with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D 5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Boise Cascade Corporation.
    - b. Louisiana-Pacific Corporation.
    - c. Red Built Company.
    - d. Standard Structures Inc.
    - e. Weyerhaeuser Company.
  2. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: 2600 psi for 12-inch nominal-depth members unless indicated otherwise in Structural Drawings. Most stringent governs.
  3. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: 1,800,000 psi unless indicated otherwise in Structural Drawings. Most stringent governs.
- C. Parallel-Strand Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood strand elements with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D 5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Louisiana-Pacific Corporation.
    - b. Red Built Company.
    - c. Weyerhaeuser Company.
  2. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: 2900 psi for 12-inch nominal-depth members unless indicated otherwise in Structural Drawings. Most stringent governs.
  3. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: 2,200,000 psi unless indicated otherwise in Structural Drawings. Most stringent governs.
- D. Wood I-Joists: Prefabricated units, I-shaped in cross section, made with solid or structural composite lumber flanges and wood-based structural panel webs, let into and bonded to flanges. Comply with material requirements of and with structural capacities established and monitored according to ASTM D 5055.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Boise Cascade Corporation.
    - b. Louisiana-Pacific Corporation.
    - c. Red Built Company.
    - d. Standard Structures Inc.
    - e. Weyerhaeuser Company.
  2. Web Material: Either OSB or plywood, complying with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1.
  3. Structural Properties: Depths and design values not less than those indicated in Structural Drawings.
  4. Comply with APA PRI-400. Factory mark I-joists with APA-EWS trademark indicating nominal joist depth, joist class, span ratings, mill identification, and compliance with APA-EWS standard.
- E. Rim Boards: Product designed to be used as a load-bearing member and to brace wood I-joists at bearing ends, complying with research or evaluation report for I-joists.
1. Manufacturer: Provide products by same manufacturer as I-joists.
  2. Material: All-veneer product, glued-laminated wood, or product made from any combination solid lumber, wood strands, and veneers.
  3. Thickness: 1-1/4 inches.
  4. Comply with APA PRR-401, rim board grade. Factory mark rim boards with APA-EWS trademark indicating thickness, grade, and compliance with APA-EWS standard.
- F. Insulated Rim Boards: Insulated product designed to be used as a load-bearing member and to brace wood I-joists at bearing ends, complying with research/evaluation report for I-joists.
1. Manufacturer: Provide products by same manufacturer as I-joists.
  2. Rim Board Material: All-veneer product, glued-laminated wood, or product made from any combination solid lumber, wood strands, and veneers.
  3. Rim Board Thickness: 1-1/4 inches.
  4. Insulation: 1-1/2-inch-thick polyisocyanurate foam complying with ASTM C 1289.
  5. Inside Facing: 7/16-inch-thick OSB.
  6. Comply with APA PRR-401, rim board grade. Factory mark rim boards with APA-EWS trademark indicating thickness, grade, and compliance with APA-EWS standard.

## 2.7 SHEAR WALL PANELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  - 2. Weyerhaeuser Company.
- B. Wood-Framed Shear Wall Panels: Prefabricated assembly consisting of wood perimeter framing, tie downs, and Exposure I, Structural I plywood or OSB sheathing.
- C. Steel-Framed Shear Wall Panels: Prefabricated assembly consisting of cold-formed galvanized-steel panel, steel top and bottom plates, and wood studs.
- D. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Blocking.
  - 2. Nailers.
  - 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - 4. Cants.
  - 5. Furring.
  - 6. Grounds.
  - 7. Utility shelving.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of
  - 1. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
- C. Utility Shelving: Lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content of any of the following species and grades:
  - 1. Eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; Premium or No. 2 Common (Sterling) grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - 2. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. 1 grade; SPIB.
  - 3. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - 4. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir; Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- D. Concealed Boards: 15 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
  - 1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. 2 grade; SPIB.
  - 2. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - 3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir; Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - 4. Western woods; Construction or No. 2 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.



- E. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- F. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- G. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

## 2.9 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1, Exterior, A-C, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2-inch nominal thickness.

## 2.10 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01, ICC-ES AC58, ICC-ES AC193, or ICC-ES AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.
  - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.

## 2.11 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. KC Metals Products, Inc.
  - 2. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  - 3. USP Structural Connectors.
- B. Allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency. Framing anchors shall be punched for fasteners adequate to withstand same loads as framing anchors.

- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 coating designation.
  - 1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch-long seat and 1-1/4-inch-wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.
  - 1. Thickness: 0.050 inch.
- E. I-Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch-long seat and 1-1/4-inch-wide nailing flanges full depth of joist. Nailing flanges provide lateral support at joist top chord.
  - 1. Thickness: 0.050 inch.
- F. Top Flange Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers, full depth of joist, formed from metal strap with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.
  - 1. Strap Width: 1-1/2 inches.
  - 2. Thickness: 0.050 inch.
- G. Bridging: Rigid, V-section, nailless type, 0.050 inch thick, length to suit joist size and spacing.
- H. Post Bases: Adjustable-socket type for bolting in place with standoff plate to raise post 1 inch above base and with 2-inch-minimum side cover, socket 0.062 inch thick, and standoff and adjustment plates 0.108 inch thick.
- I. Joist Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying joists together over supports.
  - 1. Width: 3/4 inch.
  - 2. Thickness: 0.050 inch.
  - 3. Length: As indicated.
- J. Rafter Tie-Downs: Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, 1-1/2 inches wide by 0.050 inch thick. Tie fastens to side of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.
- K. Rafter Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, 2-1/4 inches wide by 0.062 inch thick. Tie fits over top of rafter or truss and fastens to both sides of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.
- L. Floor-to-Floor Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying upper floor wall studs to band joists and lower floor studs, 1-1/4 inches wide by 0.050 inch thick by 36 inches long.
- M. Hold-Downs: Brackets for bolting to wall studs and securing to foundation walls with anchor bolts or to other hold-downs with threaded rods and designed with first of two bolts placed seven bolt diameters from reinforced base.
  - 1. Bolt Diameter: 3/4 inch.
  - 2. Width: 2-1/2 inches.
  - 3. Body Thickness: 0.108 inch.
  - 4. Base Reinforcement Thickness: 0.108 inch.
- N. Wall Bracing: T-shaped bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, 1-1/8 inches wide by 9/16 inch deep by 0.034 inch thick with hemmed edges.

- O. Wall Bracing: Angle bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, 15/16 by 15/16 by 0.040 inch thick with hemmed edges.

## 2.12 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.
- C. Adhesives for Gluing to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
- D. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chlorpyrifos as its active ingredient.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- E. Install shear wall panels to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- G. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.
- H. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.

1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- J. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
  1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
  2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal thickness.
  3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. and to solidly fill space below partitions.
  4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet o.c.
- K. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- L. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- M. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- N. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC). (OR) Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings as required for Building Code governing project.
  2. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- O. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- P. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
  1. Comply with indicated fastener patterns where applicable. Before fastening, mark fastener locations, using a template made of sheet metal, plastic, or cardboard.

2. Use fasteners as indicated in Drawings. If not indicated confirm desired method with Architect and Structural Engineer.

### 3.2 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

### 3.3 WOOD FURRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
- B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal-size furring horizontally at 24 inches o.c.
- C. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal-size furring vertically at 16 inches o.c.

### 3.4 WALL AND PARTITION FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of 2-inch nominal thickness whose widths equal that of studs, except single top plate may be used for non-load-bearing partitions and for load-bearing partitions where framing members bearing on partition are located directly over studs. Fasten plates to supporting construction unless otherwise indicated.
  1. For exterior walls, provide 2-by-6-inch nominal- size wood studs spaced 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For interior partitions and walls, provide 2-by-6-inch nominal where indicated and required for plumbing walls and 2-by-4-inch nominal- size wood studs spaced 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Provide continuous horizontal blocking at midheight of partitions more than 96 inches high, using members of 2-inch nominal thickness and of same width as wall or partitions.
- B. Construct corners and intersections with three or more studs.
- C. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Support headers on jamb studs.
  1. For non-load-bearing partitions, provide double-jamb studs and headers not less than 4-inch nominal depth for openings 48 inches and less in width, 6-inch

nominal depth for openings 48 to 72 inches in width, 8-inch nominal depth for openings 72 to 120 inches in width, and not less than 10-inch nominal depth for openings 10 to 12 feet in width.

2. For load-bearing walls, provide double-jamb studs for openings 60 inches and less in width, and triple-jamb studs for wider openings. Provide headers of depth indicated or, if not indicated, according to Table R502.5(1) or Table R502.5(2), as applicable, in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

### END OF SECTION 06 1000

## SECTION 061325 – TIMBER CONSTRUCTION

## PART 1 – GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Furnish all labor, materials, transportation, and services to complete the timber frame system and connectors.
- B. Related Work:
  - 1. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry.
  - 2. Section 099113 – Exterior Painting.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data: submit product data for proprietary timber connectors.
- B. Shop Drawings: submit detailed shop drawings of the timber frame including timber sizes, dimensions, grades, edge treatment, surface treatment, finishes, and connection joinery details. Shop drawings may take the form of paper drawings, electronic Computer Aided Drafting (CAD) files or a Building Information Model (BIM).
- C. Shop drawings shall be prepared under the supervision and direction of a Professional Engineer licensed in the jurisdiction where the project is located. Drawings submitted for approval shall be signed and sealed by the engineer.
- D. Samples: submit samples and mock-ups of timber materials, including surface treatment and finishes.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The timber frame contractor shall be a company member of the Timber Framers Guild.
- B. Work shall be in conformance with the ***TFEC 2-2018 Code of Standard Practice for Timber Frame Structures***.
- C. All timbers shall be graded by a grader certified by an approved lumber grading agency or a qualified individual who has completed a timber grading training course. Timbers shall bear a grade stamp or a certificate of grade from the lumber grader.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Keep timbers dry during delivery and storage. Store timbers off of the ground and covered.
- B. Cut and stack timbers so as not to encourage the growth of sap-stain fungi, mold or mildew. Stack timbers with stickers and spacers between bundles to allow air circulation.
- C. Provide reasonable protection during transportation, storage, handling and erection of the timbers to avoid marring, staining, or the accumulation of excess moisture, dirt and foreign matter.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TIMBER

- A. Timber species: [Douglas fir] [eastern white pine] [red oak] [white oak] [southern pine] [Alaska yellow cedar].
- B. Timber grade: [select structural] [No. 1] [No. 2].
- C. [Moisture content: timbers shall be dried in a radio frequency kiln to a maximum moisture content of 19%]
- D. Timbers 8x12 and smaller shall be free of heart center (FOHC). Timbers larger than 8x12 shall be boxed heart.
- E. Dressing: timbers shall be surfaced four sides (S4S) [rough sawn] [hewn]. Timber sizes are [nominal] [actual] dimensions.

### 2.2 TIMBER CONNECTORS

- 1. Wood Main Beam to CMU Column Post Base – Simpson APVB88. Black Color.
  - a. All fasteners are Outdoor Accents SDWS22312DBB structural wood screw inserted through STN22 Hex-head washers – Black color
- 2. Wood Main Beam to Wood Secondary Beam Heavy Angle – Simpson APVA6 (1)-each side of Secondary Beam, top mount as shown on drawings. Black Color.
  - a. All fasteners are Outdoor Accents SDWS22312DBB structural wood screw inserted through STN22 Hex-head washers – Black color.
- 3. Wood Secondary Beam to Trellis Beam Light Rafter Tie – Simpson APVA21 (1)-each side of Trellis Beam, under mount as shown on drawings. Black Color.
  - a. All fasteners are Outdoor Accents SD10112DBB screw – Black color.
- 4. Verify fastener quantity with Bracket Post Base, Heavy Angle and Light Rafter Tie hardware.
- 5. See drawings for additional information.



6. Verify exact size of connector and related timber prior to fabrication of Trellis.

### 2.3 FINISHES

- A. Bases of Design - Penetrating sealer: Heritage Natural Finishes – Original finish [exterior finish], 2-coats. Submit Sealer color samples for Architect's selection.
- B. Approved product by Architect during bidding.

### 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Timbers shall be fabricated in strict conformance to approved shop drawings. Fabrication prior to receipt of approved shop drawings shall be at the Contractor's risk.
- B. Chamfers: Exposed edges of posts and beams shall be chamfered with ski tip stops.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 ERECTION

- D. Field measure and verifying that the foundations and any structural framing that supports the timber framing are in the correct location, alignment, and at the proper elevation. The Contractor shall not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in an acceptable manner. Commencement of erection implies acceptance of conditions.
- E. The Contractor shall be responsible for all temporary shoring and bracing necessary to maintain the stability of the timber frame during erection of the timber frame.
- F. Timbers shall be stored off of the ground and protected prior to erection.

### 3.2 FINAL CLEAN UP

- A. Repair any marred or damaged surfaces, clean soiled or stained timbers, and apply one coat of penetrating sealer to all exposed surfaces.

**END OF SECTION 06 1325**

SECTION 06 1600 - SHEATHING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Wall sheathing.
  - 2. Roof sheathing.
  - 3. Parapet sheathing.
  - 4. Composite nail base insulated roof sheathing.
  - 5. Sheathing joint and penetration treatment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.
  - 2. Section 07 2500 "Weather Barriers" for water-resistive barrier applied over wall sheathing.

## 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing requirements and installation, special details, transitions, mockups, air-leakage testing, protection, and work scheduling that covers air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preserved treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
  - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5516.

4. For products receiving waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
  5. For air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing, include manufacturer's technical data and tested physical and performance properties of products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assemblies.
1. Show locations and extent of sheathing, accessories, and assemblies specific to Project conditions.
  2. Include details for sheathing joints and cracks, counterflashing strips, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
  3. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: From air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing manufacturer, certifying compatibility of sheathing accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the sheathing.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assembly, indicating compliance with specified requirements, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
1. Wood-preserved-treated plywood.
  2. Fire-retardant-treated plywood.
  3. Air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer of air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing.
1. Installer shall be licensed by ABAA according to ABAA's Quality Assurance Program and shall employ ABAA-certified installers and supervisors on Project.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to set quality standards for materials and execution.
1. Build integrated mockup of exterior wall assembly, 150 sq. ft., incorporating backup wall construction, window, storefront, door frame and sill, ties and other penetrations, and flashing to demonstrate crack and joint treatment and sealing of gaps, terminations, and penetrations of air-barrier sheathing assembly.
    - a. Coordinate construction of mockups to permit inspection and testing of sheathing before external insulation and cladding are installed.
    - b. Include junction with roofing membrane, building corner condition, and foundation wall intersection.

- c. If Architect determines mockups do not comply with requirements, reconstruct mockups until mockups are approved.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications:
- 1. For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.
  - 2. For testing and inspecting agency providing tests and inspections related to air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing: an independent agency, qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, and certified by Air Barrier Association of America, Inc.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As tested according to ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
  - 2. Air-Barrier Performance: Air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assembly, and seals with adjacent construction, shall be capable of performing as a continuous air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air-barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, penetrations, tie-ins to installed waterproofing, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.

### 2.2 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Emissions: Products shall meet the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

- B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.
- C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

## 2.3 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Application: Treat all plywood unless otherwise indicated and plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
- D. Insect and termite treated per ASTM D3345.

## 2.4 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: See Structural Drawings.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: See Structural Drawings.
- B. Oriented-Strand-Board Sheathing: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: See Structural Drawings.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than See Structural Drawings.
- C. Paper-Surfaced Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, gypsum sheathing; with water-resistant-treated core and with water-repellent paper bonded to core's face, back, and long edges.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - c. National Gypsum Company.
    - d. USG Corporation.
  - 2. Type and Thickness: Type X, 5/8 inch thick.
  - 3. Edge and End Configuration: V-shaped, tongue-and-groove long edges; square ends.
  - 4. Size: 48 by 96 inches for vertical installation.

## 2.5 ROOF SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: See Structural.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: See Structural.

- B. Oriented-Strand-Board Sheathing: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: See Structural.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: See Structural.
- C. Provide Fire Retardant Treated plywood at roof as indicated for 4'-0" either side of fire walls or unit demising walls.

## 2.6 PARAPET SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: See Structural.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: See Structural.
- B. Oriented-Strand-Board Sheathing: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: See Structural.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: See Structural.
- C. Provide Fire Retardant Treated plywood at parapets as indicated for 4'-0" either side of fire walls or unit demising walls.

## 2.7 SUBFLOORING AND UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Plywood Combination Subfloor-Underlayment: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, Underlayment single-floor panels.
  - 1. Span Rating: See Structural.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: See Structural.
  - 3. Edge Detail: Tongue and groove.
  - 4. Surface Finish: Fully sanded face.
- B. Oriented-Strand-Board Combination Subfloor-Underlayment: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 single-floor panels.
  - 1. Span Rating: See Structural.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: See Structural.
  - 3. Edge Detail: Tongue and groove.
  - 4. Surface Finish: Fully sanded face.
- C. Plywood Subflooring: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 single-floor panels or sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: See Structural.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: See Structural.
- D. Oriented-Strand-Board Subflooring: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 single-floor panels or sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: See Structural.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: See Structural.

## 2.8 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.

1. For roof parapet and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Screws for Fastening Sheathing to Wood Framing: ASTM C 1002.
- E. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- F. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.
  1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 1002.
  2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 954.
- G. Screws for Fastening Composite Nail Base Insulated Roof Sheathing to Metal Roof Deck: Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117. Provide washers or plates if recommended by sheathing manufacturer.

## 2.9 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. Sealant for Paper-Surfaced Gypsum Sheathing: Elastomeric, medium-modulus, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant compatible with joint substrates formed by gypsum sheathing and other materials, recommended by sheathing manufacturer for application indicated and complying with requirements for elastomeric sealants specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.

2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in the ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
  3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate wall, parapet, and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

### 3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
1. Combination Subfloor-Underlayment:
    - a. Glue and nail to wood framing.
    - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
    - c. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
  2. Subflooring:
    - a. Glue and nail to wood framing.
    - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
    - c. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
  3. Wall and Roof Sheathing:
    - a. Nail to wood framing.
    - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
    - c. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.

### 3.3 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to wood framing with nails.
  2. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
  3. Install panels with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
  4. Install panels with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.



- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.
- C. Horizontal Installation: Install sheathing with V-grooved edge down and tongue edge up. Interlock tongue with groove to bring long edges in contact with edges of adjacent panels without forcing. Abut ends over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent panels not less than one stud spacing. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.
  - 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of panels.
  - 2. For sheathing under stucco cladding, panels may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.
- D. Vertical Installation: Install vertical edges centered over studs. Abutt ends and edges with those of adjacent panels. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.
  - 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of panels.
  - 2. For sheathing under stucco cladding, panels may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.
- E. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient amount of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.
  - 2. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.
- F. Air-Barrier and Water-Resistant Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing:
  - 1. Install accessory materials according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions and details to form a seal with adjacent construction, to seal fasteners, and ensure continuity of air and water barrier.
    - a. Coordinate the installation of sheathing with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
    - b. Install transition strip on roofing membrane or base flashing, so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate.
  - 2. Connect and seal sheathing material continuously to air barriers specified under other Sections as well as to roofing-membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to-floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials.
  - 3. Apply joint sealants forming part of air-barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
  - 4. Wall Openings: Prime concealed, perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply transition strip, so that a minimum of 3 inches

of coverage is achieved over each substrate. Maintain 3 inches of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames, with not less than 1 inch of full contact.

- a. Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
  - b. Preformed Silicone Extrusion: Set in full bed of silicone sealant applied to walls, frame, and air-barrier material.
5. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of sheathing material with foam sealant.
  6. Seal strips and transition strips around masonry reinforcing or ties and penetrations with termination mastic.
  7. Seal top of through-wall flashings to sheathing with an additional 6-inch-wide, transition strip.
  8. Seal exposed edges of strips at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
  9. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition strips extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in strip direction.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. ABAA Quality Assurance Program: Perform examinations, preparation, installation, testing, and inspections under ABAA's Quality Assurance Program.
- B. Inspections: Air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing, accessories, and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:
  1. Continuity of air-barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes.
  2. Laps in strips and transition strips have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
  3. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
  4. Strips and transition strips have been firmly adhered to substrate.
  5. Compatible materials have been used.
  6. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
  7. Connections between assemblies (sheathing and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, surface preparation and priming, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
  8. All penetrations have been sealed.
- C. Air barriers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Repair damage to air barriers caused by testing; follow manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### END OF SECTION 06 1600

SECTION 06 2023 - INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Interior trim, including non-fire-rated interior door frames.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for furring, blocking, and other carpentry work not exposed to view.
  - 2. Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting" for priming and back-priming of interior finish carpentry.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials, dimensions, profiles, textures, and colors and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. Include chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions for finishing treated material.
  - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced before shipment to Project site to levels specified.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation.
  - 1. Protect materials from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored.
  - 2. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

- B. Deliver interior finish carpentry materials only when environmental conditions comply with requirements specified for installation areas. If interior finish carpentry materials must be stored in other than installation areas, store only where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified for installation areas.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install interior finish carpentry materials until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet-work in space is completed and nominally dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or blotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the American Lumber Standard Committee's (ALSC) Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC's Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.

### 2.2 INTERIOR TRIM

- A. Lumber Trim for Opaque Finish (Painted Finish):
  - 1. Species and Grade: As indicated on drawings and schedules.
  - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 13 percent.
  - 3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
  - 4. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth).
  - 5. Primed MDF as indicated in drawings and schedules.
- B. Moldings for Opaque Finish (Painted Finish): Made to patterns included in WMMPA WM 12.
  - 1. Hardwood Moldings: WMMPA HWM 2, P-grade.
    - a. Species: As indicated on drawings and schedules.
    - b. Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.
  - 2. Material: Primed MDF as indicated on drawings and schedules.
  - 3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
  - 4. Base Pattern: As indicated on drawings and schedules.
  - 5. Shoe-Mold Pattern: As indicated on drawings and schedules.
  - 6. Casing Pattern: As indicated on drawings and schedules.

7. Mull-Casing Pattern: As indicated on drawings and schedules.
8. Stop Pattern: As indicated on drawings and schedules.
9. Chair-Rail Pattern: As indicated on drawings and schedules.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Interior Finish Carpentry: Nails, screws, and other anchoring devices of type, size, material, and finishes required for application indicated to provide secure attachment, concealed where possible.
- B. Glue: Aliphatic-resin, polyurethane, or resorcinol wood glue recommended by manufacturers for general carpentry use.
- C. Multipurpose Construction Adhesive: Formulation, complying with ASTM D 3498, that is recommended for indicated use by adhesive manufacturers.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Back out or kerf backs of the following members, except those with ends exposed in finished work:
  1. Interior standing and running trim, except shoe and crown molds.
- B. Ease edges of lumber less than 1 inch in nominal thickness to 1/16-inch radius and edges of lumber 1 inch or more in nominal thickness to 1/8-inch radius.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine finish-carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
- B. Before installing interior finish carpentry, condition materials to average prevailing humidity in installation areas for a minimum of 24 hours.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials that are unsound; warped; improperly treated or finished; inadequately seasoned; too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements; or with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
- B. Install interior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and align with adjacent materials.
  - 1. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
  - 2. Scribe and cut interior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Where face fastening is unavoidable, countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Install to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches for level and plumb. Install adjoining interior finish carpentry with 1/32-inch maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch maximum offset for reveal installation.
  - 5. Coordinate interior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate interior finish carpentry.

### 3.4 STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Install trim with minimum number of joints as is practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available.
  - 1. Do not use pieces less than 24 inches long, except where necessary.
  - 2. Stagger joints in adjacent and related standing and running trim.
  - 3. Miter at returns, miter at outside corners, and cope at inside corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint.
  - 4. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.
  - 5. Plane backs of casings to provide uniform thickness across joints where necessary for alignment.
  - 6. Install trim after gypsum-board joint finishing operations are completed.
  - 7. Install without splitting; drill pilot holes before fastening where necessary to prevent splitting.
  - 8. Fasten to prevent movement or warping.
  - 9. Countersink fastener heads on exposed carpentry work and fill holes.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Replace interior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements.
  - 1. Interior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.
- B. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior finish carpentry on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces.
- B. Restore damaged or soiled areas and touch up factory-applied finishes if any.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during construction.
- B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

**END OF SECTION 06 2023**

SECTION 06 4116 – PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Plastic-Laminate-Clad architectural cabinets.
  - 2. Wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing architectural cabinets that are not concealed within other construction.
  - 3. Shop finishing of architectural cabinets.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets that are concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.
  - 2. Section 06 4000 "Plastic-Laminate-Clad Countertops"

## 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to support loads imposed by installed and fully loaded cabinets.
- B. Hardware Coordination: Distribute copies of approved hardware schedule specified by Owner to manufacturer of architectural cabinets; coordinate Shop Drawings and fabrication with hardware requirements.

## 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- 1. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at project site during project construction site meeting.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For architectural cabinets.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Show large-scale details.
  - 3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.



4. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in architectural cabinets.
  5. Show veneer leaves with dimensions, grain direction, exposed face, and identification numbers indicating the flitch and sequence within the flitch for each leaf.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each Plastic Laminate color and finish specified, in manufacturer's standard size.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of Plastic Laminate exposed finish.
- E. Samples for Verification: For the following:
1. Plastic Laminate: Not less than 8 inches wide by 10 inches long, for each color pattern and surface required.
    - a. Provide one sample applied to core material with specified edge material applied to one edge.
  2. Thermally Fused Laminate (TFL) Panels: Not less than 8 inches wide by 10 inches long, for each color pattern and surface required.
  3. Corner Pieces:
    - a. Cabinet-front frame joints between stiles and rails and at exposed end pieces, 18 inches high by 18 inches wide by 6 inches deep.
    - b. Miter joints for standing trim.
  4. Exposed Cabinet Hardware and Accessories: One full-size unit for each type and finish.

#### 1.6 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Manufacturer and Installer.
- B. Product Certifications: For Each type of product.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For fire-retardant-treated materials, from ICC-ES.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
1. Manufacturer's Certification: Licensed participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer of products.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar finish operations that might damage architectural cabinets have been completed in installation areas. Store cabinets in

installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 17 and 50 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets by field measurements before being enclosed/concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- C. Established Dimensions: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CABINETS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of architectural cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
  - 1. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the referenced woodwork quality standard. Comply with requirements of Contract Documents in addition to those of the referenced quality standard.

### 2.2 Plastic-Laminate-Clad Cabinets

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
- B. Type of Construction: Frameless Face frame.
- C. Door and Drawer-Front Style: Flush overlay.
- D. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to sub-front with mounting screws from interior of body.
  - 1. Join sub-fronts, backs, and sides with glued dovetail joints.

## 2.3 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Wood Moisture Content: 5 to 10 percent.
- B. Composite Wood and Agrifiber Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. MDF: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
  - 2. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
  - 3. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1.
  - 4. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or MDF finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of NEMA LD 3, Grade VGL, for Test Methods 3.3, 3.4, 3.6, 3.8, and 3.10.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Particle board: 45 lbs. minimum density and balance construction, with moisture content less than 8%. Particle board shall conform to ANSI A208.1 and meet or exceed CS-236-66, FS LLL-B-800A and ASTM D1037-78.
  - 1. Surface shall be smooth with all chips, shavings or flakes well scoured so that there shall be no visible telegraphing of the core face through the plastic laminate.
  - 2. Square and rectangular cutouts shall have radiused corners not less than 1/2-inches.
  - 3. At cut edges, exposed or not and where cutouts occur, the edges shall be completely sealed to prevent moisture absorption. Cutouts for pipes shall be round.
  - 4. Meet the following performance requirements: submit compliance data from the manufacturer prior to fabrication.
    - a. Screw holding face: 371 lbs.
    - b. Modulus of rupture: 2400 psi.
    - c. Modulus of elasticity: 450,000 psi.
    - d. Internal bond: 90 psi.
    - e. Surface hardware: 90 psi.
- B. Edging: Flat edge design for cabinet body in color matched laminate or PVC. Color as selected by architect.
- C. Plastic Laminate: High Pressure Laminate (HPL) Chemical-Resistant Laminate surfacing material meeting the minimum NEMA Standards for abrasion resistance, heat resistance, stain resistance, moisture resistance, dimensional stability and general rules for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Plastic laminate materials shall be as selected by the architect from FULL product line of national manufacturers such as:
    - a. Formica
    - b. Wilsonart
    - c. Pionite
    - d. Nevamar
    - e. Arborite

2. Exposed horizontal work surfaces: NEMA GP50, PF (Post-forming) satin surface.
  3. Exposed vertical work surfaces: NEMA GP28 laminate.
  4. Interior Cabinet Finish: 18mm Melamine finish adhesively applied.
  5. Backing sheet: NEMA BK20 and shall be used where laminate covered work is not restrained from warping or twisting by the method of attachment or by supports. Minimum standard of AWI Custom work shall apply.
  6. Bonding adhesive: Water resistant type and as recommended by the approved plastic laminate manufacturer. Plastic laminate shall be applied to the core in the shop, using commercial methods, application and presses.
  7. Sealant used for sealing particle board or plywood edges shall be HYBOND 80 by Pierce Steven Corporation.
- D. The interior of cabinet box shall be finished in chemical- resistant Melamine.
1. Color: White
- E. Assembly adhesives used in assembly, installation and other applications, shall be one of the following:
1. HYBOND 80
  2. HYBOND WHITE
  3. CANPLAST 100

## 2.5 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets except for items specified in as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, 135 degrees of opening, self-closing.
- C. Wire Pulls:
1. Wall mounted cabinets door: 6-inch wire pull.
  2. Base cabinet drawer: 4-inch wire pull.
  3. Base cabinet door: 6-inch wire pull.
  4. Back mounted, solid metal.
  5. BHMA A156.9, B02011.
- D. Catches: Magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03141.
- E. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.
- F. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal.
- G. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9.
1. Grade 1 and Grade 2: Side mounted and extending under bottom edge of drawer.
    - a. Type: Full extension.
    - b. Material: Zinc-plated steel with polymer rollers.
  2. Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200: Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated-steel, ball-bearing slides.
  3. For drawers not more than 3 inches high and not more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 1.

4. For drawers more than 3 inches high, but not more than 6 inches high and not more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 1HD-100.
5. For drawers more than 6 inches high or more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 1HD-100.
6. For computer keyboard shelves, provide Grade 1.
7. For trash bins not more than 20 inches high and 16 inches wide, provide Grade 1HD-200.

H. Slides for Sliding Glass Doors: BHMA A156.9, B07063

I. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.

J. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.

K. Door and Drawer Silencers: BHMA A156.16, L03011.

L. Grommets for Cable Passage: 1-1/4-inch OD, molded-plastic gromets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.

1. Color: Black
2. Coordinate location with owner prior to drill cable passage hole.

M. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated on Drawings.

1. Satin Nickel: BHMA 620 for satin nickel finish. Provide sample for Architect's approval.

N. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use non-ferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

A. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.

B. Fabricate architectural cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges and corners to 1/16-inch radius unless otherwise indicated.

C. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.

1. Trial fit assemblies at manufacturer's shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements before disassembling for shipment.
- D. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Install cabinets to comply with quality standard grade of item to be installed.
- B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with cabinet surface.
  1. For shop-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- D. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches using concealed shims.
  1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
  2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawer fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
  3. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.
  4. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than 1-1/2-inch penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips and cover with screw caps to match neighboring finish color.
- E. Shop Finishes: Touch up finishing after installation of architectural cabinets. Fill nail holes with matching filler.
  1. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are shop applied.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace architectural cabinets. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces. Touch up finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

**END OF SECTION 06 4113**

## SECTION 07 1000 - FLUID-APPLIED DAMPPROOFING

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Fluid-Applied Damp-proofing.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 033000 – Cast in Place Concrete
  - 2. Section 042200 – Masonry
  - 3. Section 076000 – Flashing & Sheet Metal

## 1.02 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM International:
  - 1. ASTM C-836 Standard Specification for High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Separate Wearing Course.
  - 2. ASTM D-412 Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Rubbers and Thermoplastic Elastomers-Tension.
  - 3. ASTM D-1653 Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Organic Coating Films.
  - 4. ASTM D-1227/2939 Type 2 Standard Test Methods for Emulsified Bitumens Used as Protective Coatings.
  - 5. ASTM D-3273 Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber.
  - 6. ASTM D-3274 Standard Test Method for Evaluating Degree of Surface Disfigurement of
  - 7. Paint Films by Microbial (Fungal or Algal) Growth or Soil and Dirt Accumulation.
- B. Federal Specifications
  - 1. TT-C-555B Ability to Resist Hydrostatic Pressure Over Non-Structural Cracks.

## 1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit listed submittals in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Submittal Procedures Section.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data and installation instructions.
- C. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals: Submit the following:
  - 1. Certificates: Submit certificate that applicator complies with requirements of this section.

## 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Utilize an applicator trained and approved by the waterproofing manufacturer.
- B. Regulatory Requirements and Approvals: Comply with requirements of the following:
  - 1. ICC Evaluation Services, Inc. (ICC)
    - a. Legacy Report NER-656.

## 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE &amp; HANDLING

- A. General: Comply with Division 1 Product Requirement Section.
- B. Delivery: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- C. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful environmental conditions and at temperature and humidity conditions recommended by the manufacturer.



## 1.06 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Requirements: Comply with application temperature range of 0-150°F (-18 - 66° C) for Solvent-Based product and 0-130°F (-18 - 55°C) for Water-Based product.

## 1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Material Only One Year Warranty available.
- B. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals: Submit the following:
  - 1. Certificates: Submit certificate that applicator complies with requirements of this section.
- C. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals: Submit the following:
  - 1. Certificates: Submit certificate that applicator complies with requirements of this section.

## 1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Utilize an applicator trained and approved by the waterproofing manufacturer.
- B. Regulatory Requirements and Approvals: Comply with requirements of the following:
  - 1. ICC Evaluation Services, Inc. (ICC)
    - a. Legacy Report NER-656.

## 1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE &amp; HANDLING

- A. General: Comply with Division 1 Product Requirement Section.
- B. Delivery: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- C. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful environmental conditions and at temperature and humidity conditions recommended by the manufacturer.

## 1.10 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Requirements: Comply with application temperature range of 0-150°F (-18 - 66° C) for Solvent-Based product and 0-130°F (-18 - 55°C) for Water-Based product.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Material Only One Year Warranty available.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

## 2.01 DAMPPROOFING

- A. Manufacturer: **Bases of Design**, Marflex Waterproofing & Building Products
  - 1. Contact: 500 Business Pkwy, OH 45005; Telephone: (800) 498-1411, (513) 422-7285; Fax: (513) 422-7282
  - 1. E-mail: [info@mar-flex.com](mailto:info@mar-flex.com); Website: [www.Mar-flex.com](http://www.Mar-flex.com)
- B. Proprietary Products/Systems. Should be purchased through an authorized dealer of Marflex products.
- C. Fluid-Applied Damp-proofing and related products, including the following:
  - 1. Moisture Block Armorbloc 361 WB Damp-proofing
    - a. Material: WB – Emulsion
    - b. Color: Black
    - c. Total Solids Average: WB - 55-60%
    - d. Application Method: Spray
    - e. Coverage Rate: 2-gal/100 ft² (0.82 L/m²)

- f. Dry Film Thickness: 20 mil (0.5 mm) min.
- g. Total Cure Time: 24 hours.
- h. Weight/Gallon: 7.6 lb (3.4 kg).
- i. Elongation at 70°F (21°C), Minimum: 180%.
- j. Tensile Strength (ASTM D-412): 32 psi (220 kPa) min.
- k. Application Temperature Range: WB - 20-130°F
- l. Ability to Stay in Place (ASTM C-836): 30 mils.
- m. Durability and Surface Disfigurement Due To Microbial Growth (ASTM D-3273, ASTM D- 3274): None.
- n. Water Vapor Transmission (ASTM D-1653): 0.42 perms.
- o. Water Solubility (ASTM D-1227/2939):
  - i. Blistering: None.
  - ii. Re-emulsification: None.
- p. Ability to Resist Hydrostatic Pressure - (Federal Specification TT-C-555B):
  - i. Water Leaks: None
  - ii. Weight Gain: 1.0 oz.

## 2.02 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions: Submittals issued per section 01 3300, "Submittal Procedures".

## 2.03 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Provide proprietary accessory materials as **Bases of Design**, including the following:
  - 1. Marflex's 362 Mastic:
    - a. Material: Plastic or resin material compatible with the waterproofing membrane.
    - b. Patching.
    - c.

# PART 3 EXECUTION

## 3.01 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Comply with the instructions and recommendations of the waterproofing manufacturer.

## 3.02 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions:
  - 1. Verify that site conditions are acceptable for application of the damp-proofing material.
  - 2. Do not proceed with application until unacceptable conditions are corrected.

## 3.03 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation:
  - 1. Ensure that the surfaces to receive damp-proofing are structurally sound and free of moisture, dust, mud, loose mortar, fins, metal projections or any substances that would be detrimental to the bonding of the material to the surface.
  - 2. Remove wall ties.
  - 3. Patch cracks, voids and holes with non-shrink grout or mastic.

Specifier Note: Coordinate article below with manufacturer's recommended application requirements.

## 3.04 APPLICATION

- A. Spray apply a uniform coat of damp-proofing material to entire wall area. Obtain a seamless coating with a minimum dry film thickness of 20 mil (0.5 mm).
- B. Allow material to cure for 24 hours before placing any backfill against the wall.
- C. Follow the current installation instructions

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

**END OF SECTION – 07 1000**

SECTION 07 2100 - THERMAL INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board.
2. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board.
3. Batts Glass-Fiber Blanket.
4. Mineral-wool blanket.
5. Air-Impermeable Spray Foam Insulation.
6. Batts Glass-Fiber Sound Blankets.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 1600 "Sheathing" for foam-plastic board sheathing installed directly over wood or steel framing.
2. Section 07 5423 "Thermoplastic-Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.
3. Section 09 2900 "Gypsum Board" for sound attenuation blanket used as acoustic insulation.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with

manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:

1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Extruded polystyrene boards in this article are also called "XPS boards." Roman numeral designators in ASTM C 578 are assigned in a fixed random sequence, and their numeric order does not reflect increasing strength or other characteristics.
- B. Extruded Polystyrene Board, Type IV: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi minimum compressive strength; unfaced; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. DiversiFoam Products.
    - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
    - c. Kingspan Insulation Limited.
    - d. Owens Corning
  2. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
  3. Foil-Faced Rigid Insulation Board in locations indicated by wall types on the "G"-sheets of the Construction Drawings.
- C. Reference drawings for INSULATION SCHEDULE.

### 2.2 POLYISOCYANURATE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Polyisocyanurate Board, Foil Faced: ASTM C 1289, foil faced, Type I, Class 1 or 2.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
    - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
    - c. Firestone Building Products.
    - d. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.

2. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

- B. Reference drawings for INSULATION SCHEDULE.

## 2.3 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET

- A. Glass-Fiber Blanket, Unfaced: ASTM E 136, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM C 665

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
  - c. Knauf Insulation.
  - d. Owens Corning.

- B. Reference drawings for INSULATION SCHEDULE.

## 2.4 AIR-IMPERMEABLE SPRAY FOAM INSULATION

- A. ASTM C 1848, Standard Practice for installation of High-Pressure Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation for the Building Enclosure.

- B. Reference drawings for INSULATION SCHEDULE.

## 2.5 MINERAL-WOOL BLANKETS

- A. Mineral-Wool Blanket, Unfaced Insert drawing designation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
  - b. Rockwool International.
  - c. Thermafiber, Inc.; an Owens Corning company.

- B. Reference drawings for INSULATION SCHEDULE.

## 2.6 BATT GLASS-FIBER SOUND BLANKETS.

- A. Glass-Fiber Blanket, Unfaced: ASTM E 136, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM C 665.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
  - c. Knauf Insulation.
  - d. Owens Corning.
- B. Sound Attenuation Batts (SABs) flexible fiber glass insulation batts. Friction-fit installation. Sound Transmission Class (STC) is measured in accordance to ASTM E 90 test methods, which measure the transmission loss characteristics of a partition.
- C. Reference drawings for INSULATION SCHEDULE.

## 2.7 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches square or in diameter.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. AGM Industries, Inc.
    - b. Gemco.
    - c. Strong-Tie.
      - 1) 1/4-inch x 6-inch Hex Head Titen Turbo concrete and Masonry screw anchor, Blue Zinc for Expanded Polystyrene bonded to plywood sheathing panel attachment to substrate or approved equal.
  - 2. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in the following locations:
    - a. Ceiling plenums.
- B. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates without damaging insulation, fasteners, or substrates.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. AGM Industries, Inc.
    - b. Gemco.
    - c. Loctite
      - 1) Optional: applying Expanded Polystyrene bonded to plywood sheathing panel to substrate or approved equal.
  - 2. Compatible with the insulation types and materials list in this section.

## 2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
- 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E 84.
  - 2. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C 1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.

- B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.
- C. Eave Ventilation Troughs: Preformed, rigid fiberboard or plastic sheets designed and sized to fit between roof framing members and to provide ventilation between insulated attic spaces and vented eaves.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLAB INSULATION

- A. On vertical slab edge and foundation surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches below exterior grade line.
- B. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly about insulation units.
  - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 36 inches in from exterior walls.



### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  - 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
  - 4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
  - 5. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.
    - a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward interior of construction.
    - b. Interior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward areas of high humidity.
- B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft..
  - 2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Mineral-Wool Blankets.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

### 3.6 INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. See Architectural Drawings for Insulation Schedule.

## END OF SECTION 07 2100

SECTION 07 2500 - WEATHER BARRIERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Building wrap.
  - 2. Flexible flashing.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. For building wrap, include data on air and water-vapor permeance based on testing according to referenced standards.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For water-resistive barrier and flexible flashing, from ICC-ES.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

- A. Building Wrap: ASTM E 1677, Type I air barrier; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E 84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. DuPont Safety and Construction.
    - b. TYPAR.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Not less than 20 perms per ASTM E 96/E 96M, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
  - 3. Water-resistant barrier Drainable Wrap.
  - 4. Air Permeance: Not more than 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. at 0.3-inch wg when tested according to ASTM E 2178.
  - 5. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not less than nine months.

6. Flame Propagation Test: Materials and construction shall be as tested according to NFPA 285.
- B. Building-Wrap Tape: Install Pressure-sensitive plastic tape as recommended by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints, seams, corners, edge, and penetrations in building wrap. Reference FLEXIBLE FLASHING item 2.2 of this Section for penetration seal.

## 2.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING

- A. Butyl Rubber Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.030 inch.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. DuPont Safety and Construction.
    - b. TYPAR.
  2. Flame Propagation Test: Materials and construction shall be as tested according to NFPA 285.
- B. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended in writing by flexible flashing manufacturer for substrate.
- C. Nails and Staples: Product recommended in writing by flexible flashing manufacturer and complying with ASTM F 1667.

## 2.3 DRAINAGE MATERIAL

- A. Drainage Material: Product shall maintain a continuous open space between water-resistive barrier and exterior cladding to create a drainage plane and shall be used under siding, portland cement plaster, adhered masonry veneer.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. DuPont Safety and Construction.
    - b. TYPAR.
  2. Flame Propagation Test: Materials and construction shall be as tested according to NFPA 285.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Cover exposed exterior surface of sheathing with water-resistive barrier securely fastened to framing immediately after sheathing is installed.

- B. Cover sheathing with water-resistive barrier as follows:
  - 1. Cut back barrier 1/2 inch on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.
  - 2. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch overlap unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
  - 1. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
  - 2. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

### 3.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  - 2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
  - 3. Lap flashing over water-resistive barrier at bottom and sides of openings.
  - 4. Lap water-resistive barrier over flashing at heads of openings.
  - 5. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

### 3.3 DRAINAGE MATERIAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install drainage material over building wrap and flashing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION 07 2500**

SECTION 07 4113 - FORMED METAL ROOFING PANELS

## PART I - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

## 1.01 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

## A. Section Includes:

The extent of each type of formed metal roofing panel as indicated on the drawings and by the provisions of this section. The scope of work includes, but shall not be limited to: preformed metal roof panels, flashing required to weatherproof the system (ridge, hip, valley, cleat, eave, rake wall, rake edge, apron, inside corner, outside corner, gutter, downspout, drip sill, end wall, and other miscellaneous flashing), related accessories necessary for attachment of the roofing system, all butyl tape and sealant used in conjunction with the roofing system, and necessary attachment hardware as required to meet the performance standards and complete the roofing enclosure as indicated by Contract Documents.

## 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS:

- A. Section 051200: Structural Steel Framing
- B. Section 055000: Miscellaneous Metal Fabrication
- C. Section 061000: Rough Carpentry
- D. Section 072100: Building Insulation
- E. Section 076200: Flashing and Sheet Metal
- F. Section 079200: Sealant

## 1.03 REFERENCES:

- A. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI), Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members (2008).
- B. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC) Manual of Steel Construction (Current Edition).
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A792: Specification for Sheet Steel, Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process.
  - 2. ASTM E283-91: Test Method for Rate of Air Leakage over Solid Substrate.
  - 3. ASTM E331-93: Test Method for Rate of Water Penetration over Solid Substrate.
  - 4. ASTM E1680-95: Test Method for Rate of Air Leakage over Open Framed Structure.
  - 5. ASTM E1646-95: Test Method for Rate of Water Penetration over Open Framed Structure.
  - 6. ASTM E1592-95: Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Sheet Metal and Siding Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.

D. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA):

1. Architectural Sheet Metal Manual (2003 edition).

E. Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) Roofing Materials and Systems Directory:

1. Roofing Materials and Systems Directory listings and classifications of Underwriter's Laboratory roofing construction assemblies.

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION:

A. Design Requirements:

1. Continuous, one-piece, preformed, prefinished single length roof panels.
2. Panels, clips, and other components required for specific project conditions.
3. Manufacturer is responsible for providing evidence acceptable to Architect that manufacturer's specified roof system is capable of meeting thermal, wind uplift, and performance requirements specified.

B. Thermal Movement:

1. Complete metal roofing and flashing system shall be capable of withstanding expansion and contraction of components caused by changes in temperature without buckling, producing excess stress on structure, anchors or fasteners, or reducing performance ability.
2. Interface between panel and expansion clip shall provide for applicable thermal movement in each direction along longitudinal direction.

C. Performance Requirements:

1. Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. (UL) Wind Uplift Resistance Classification for Roof Assembly shall be Class 90, as installed, pursuant to Construction Number (selected from available assemblies in technical section of architectural binder) 431, 431A, 432, 433, 498, 498A, or 498B as defined by UL 580. Certified statements from manufacturer without proper UL classification will not be acceptable.
2. Complete metal roof system shall have maximum static pressure air infiltration of 0.046 cfm / square foot with 1.57 psf air pressure differential when tested in accordance with ASTM E283-91 or 0.014 cfm / square foot with 1.57 psf air pressure differential when tested in accordance with ASTM E1680-95.
3. Complete metal roof system shall have no uncontrolled water penetration (dynamic water pressure), other than condensation, when exposed to dynamic rain at 6.24 psf differential static pressure when tested for not less than fifteen (15) minutes in duration in accordance with ASTM E331-93 or ASTM E1646-95.
4. Entire roofing system (metal panels, flashing, expansion joints, and penetrations), are to be detailed to provide watertight roof under peak weather conditions.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. LEED Submittals for Sustainable Design Requirements (OPTIONAL):

1. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof panels, indicating that panels comply with solar reflectance index requirement. Submit roof material's reflectance and emittance values in addition to calculated SRI.

2. Product Data for Credit MR 4.2: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
  - a. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Documentation for Credit MR 5.2: For materials showing locations and origin of material extracted, harvested or recovered, as well as manufactured within 500 miles of the project site.
  - a. Include statement indicating product name, material manufacturer, total product cost, percentage of product, by weight that meets both the extraction and manufacturer criteria, distance between the project site and extraction/harvest/recovery site, and distance between the project site and the final manufacturing location.
4. Energy Performance: Provide roof panels with solar reflectance index not less than 29 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products with a roof slope > 2:12 by a qualified testing agency.

B. Shop Drawings Submittals:

1. Manufacturer of the metal roof system shall provide complete shop drawings in accordance with the requirements specified in Section 01340.
2. Shop drawings must be submitted and returned as acceptable prior to the beginning of product production.

C. Product Data Submittals:

1. Submit manufacturer's detailed product literature including the system profile sheet, system description including: material base-sheet gauge, seam height, panel on-center, finish, and sealant as required.
2. Submit manufacturer's installation guidelines of the specified product.
3. Submit a sample of each type of roof panel, complete with factory finish. In the case where custom color is specified, send a custom color chip for written approval along with a standard color product sample for review.

D. Quality Control Submittals:

1. Submit shop drawings signed by a registered licensed engineer certifying the design of the roof system meets the specified performance criteria.

## 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Qualification of installers:

1. Competent and skilled sheet metal applicators familiar with Dimensional Metals' products, standard details and recommendations. Applicator shall have at least two (2) years of experience applying these types of materials with successful completion of projects with similar scope and is an approved installer with company-issued documentation accordingly.
2. Installers shall be thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with and comply to the recommendations and details of the manufacturer and the Architectural Sheet Metal Manual published by SMACNA.
3. Installers shall follow the manufacturers' installation details without exception.

unless written authorization from the manufacturer and architect are provided on an installation detail revision. Detail revision authorization must be made in advance of product installation.

B. Qualification of the product manufacturer:

1. Manufacturer shall be a company specializing in Architectural Sheet Metal Products with at least ten (10) years experience. Being listed as a prequalified manufacturer does not release manufacturer from providing complete, current and acceptable test data for each performance, thermal, and wind load requirement specified for specific profile proposed.
2. Manufacturer shall operate a permanent, full-time, manufacturing facility where the metal roof panels are produced on fixed based multi-station roll forming machines that are included in the Underwriter's Laboratory field inspection services. These facilities must be currently under inspection at least four times per year by Underwriter's Laboratory personnel to verify compliance that the products fabricated are in accordance with the specifications of the products which were originally tested. Portable on-site roll-formers may not be used unless roof panels exceed 90' in length.

C. Product Substitutions:

1. Substitutions to the specified systems shall be submitted to the Architect no later than fifteen (15) days prior to the official bid date. Acceptance of any substitutions shall be put forth in written addendum within ten (10) days prior to the official bid date.
2. No product substitutions will be permitted without meeting all of the performance criteria set forth in this specification.
3. No product substitutions shall be submitted after the official bid date.
4. Product substitutions, when submitted, must include all applicable testing documentation defined in paragraph 1.04.C, panel sample profiles, appropriate panel descriptions and/or literature for review, and a list of 3 successfully installed projects of similar scope and complexity including supervising architectural firm or owner for those projects.

## 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roof system components to project site in manufacturer's unopened original containers.
- B. Protect roof system components during shipment, storage, handling and erection from mechanical abuse, stains, dis-coloration and corrosion.
- C. Provide strippable plastic film on all painted surfaces between contact areas to prevent abrasion during shipping, storage and handling.
- D. Store materials off the ground, providing for drainage, under protective cover which allows for air circulation and protection from foreign material contamination, mechanical damage, cement, lime, or other corrosive materials
- E. Handle materials to prevent damage to surfaces, edges and ends of roofing components. Damaged material shall be rejected and removed from site.



- F. Examine materials upon delivery to job-site. Reject and remove physically damaged, stained or marred material from project site.
- G. Metal roof components with strippable film must not be stored with exposure to direct sunlight.
- H. Stack material to prevent damage and allow for adequate ventilation and drainage.

#### 1.08 SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Determine that work of other trades will not hamper or conflict with necessary fabrication and storage requirements for preformed metal roofing system.
- B. Protection:
  - 1. Provide protection or avoid traffic on completed roof surfaces.
  - 2. Do not overload roof with stored materials.
  - 3. Support no roof-mounted equipment directly on roofing system.
- C. Determine that work of other trades which penetrates roof or is to be made watertight by roof is coordinated by location, in place, and accepted prior to installation of roofing system.

#### 1.09 WARRANTIES

- A. Furnish manufacturer's Standard Twenty (20) Year Warranty stating the architectural fluorocarbon coating will:
  - 1. Not crack, chip, peel or exhibit any other mechanical failure of paint to adhere to the substrate.
  - 2. Not exhibit fading or color change in excess of five (5) hunter delta E units as determined by ASTM D2244-79.
  - 3. Not chalk in excess of a numerical rating of eight (8) as determined by ASTM D4214-98
- B. Furnish manufacturer's Standard Watertightness Warranty for a period of (select one of the following three warranty periods) [five (5) years, ten (10) years or twenty (20) years] after the date of substantial completion. Entire source of material and labor shall be the sole responsibility of one subcontractor.
  - 1. Warranty shall be limited to the value of the metal roofing system, installed and is non-prorated.
  - 2. Warranty shall be signed by the manufacturer of the metal roof system and his authorized installer, agreeing at their option to replace or repair defective materials and workmanship as required to maintain the metal roof system in watertight condition.
  - 3. Warranty shall not exclude any conditions such as flashing, valleys, penetrations, etc. that are an integral part of the roof system.
  - 4. The manufacturer of the metal roof system shall review installation details and perform on site inspections as required to certify proper watertight roofing material installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCT

### 2.01 MANUFACTURER

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Berridge Manufacturing Company: **Double-Lock Zee-Lock Panel**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, smooth finish, 16-inch coverage, Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000 PVDF Resin-Based coating. 2-inch seam height
  - b. Fabral: **Stand 'N Seam**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, smooth finish, 16-inch coverage, Siliconized Modified Polyester (SMP) paint system.
  - c. MBCI: **Battenlok HS Panel**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, smooth finish, 16-inch coverage, signature 300 coating.
- B. Additional manufacturers approved to bid this project are listed below. Being listed as a prequalified manufacturer does not release the manufacturer from providing a similar product that meets the performance criteria as listed in this specification. It is the responsibility of the manufacturers to provide evidence of meeting the specification parameters.

### 2.02 SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Finish color shall be selected by the architect from the manufacturer's current standard 26 standard colors and 4 metallic finishes and premium colors on their color selection guide. Unless otherwise noted all products shall be of the same finish and color.
- B. Strippable film shall be applied to the topside of the painted coil to protect the finish during fabrication, shipping and field handling. This strippable film must be removed during installation.

### 2.03 PREFORMED METAL ROOFING SYSTEM

- A. Preformed Metal Panels:
- 1. System Name: Standing Seam Metal Roofing.
  - 2. Model Name: As listed above under, Section 2.01 - MANUFACTURERS.
  - 3. Seam Height: 2-inch minimum seam height
  - 4. Seam On-center: 16-inch minimum coverage.
  - 5. Slope: 1/2-inch minimum slope per 12-inches.
  - 6. Fasteners: Concealed.
- B. Standing seams shall incorporate a continuous engineered interlocking connection with concealed anchor clips that prevents the entrance of water passage (select for engineered snap-together panels). Or, standing seams shall incorporate a continuous mechanically seamed connection with concealed anchor clips that prevents the entrance of water passage (select for mechanically seamed panels).
- C. Standing seams shall contain factory injected non-curing sealant that runs continuously throughout the panel length as job conditions dictate.

- D. Panel clips shall be as recommended by the manufacturer to meet the performance criteria of this specification.
- E. All exposed adjacent flashing shall be of the same material and finish as the roof panels.
- F. Fasteners:
  - 1. As per Roofing Panel manufacturer.
- G. Closures:
  - 1. Hip and ridge closures shall be factory fabricated from similar material to the roof panels. Hip and ridge closures shall be field cut to fit properly between the panel seams.
- H. Sealant:
  - 1. Factory-applied seam sealant shall be non-curing butyl designed for metal to metal connection in concealed joints, if specified.
  - 2. Field applied sealant and/or butyl tape shall be as recommended by the manufacturer of the metal roof system.
- I. Underlayment:
  - 1. Install approved polypropylene sheet material in 10 square rolls equal to the product listed, applied in shingle-like application in continuous coverage from eave to ridge per roof area with approved mechanical attachment procedures.  
See -Part 3—Execution.
    - a. Bases of Design DMI DynaClad® Premium Roofing Underlayment
    - b. Or approved equal by architect per Section 01-2500 "Substitution Procedures"
  - 2. Consult DMI for self-adhering ice and water underlayment approval for use in critical areas such as valleys, aprons, rakes, rake walls, and penetrations, particularly as they apply to watertight warranty requirements. See Part 3--Execution.
  - 3. **Metal Roof Panels:** Per IBC 2021, Section 1507.4 and Table 1507.1.1(1). Maximum Basic Design Wind Speed, V less than 140 MPH per Manufacturer's instructions. Maximum Basic Design Wind Speed, V greater than or equal to 140 MPH per ASTM D 226, Type II and ASTM D 4869, Type IV.
  - 4. Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with Table 1507.1.1(2), IBC 2021.
  - 5. Underlayment shall be attached in accordance with Table 1507.1.1(3), IBC 2021.

## 2.04 FABRICATION

- A. Panels shall be fabricated in permanent fabrication facilities in continuous lengths as required and indicated in paragraph 1.6.B. No horizontal end lap joints will be accepted, unless panels exceed 90' in length or jobsite conditions dictate.
- B. Panel design shall incorporate concealed clips and fasteners. Exposed fasteners in roofing panels will not be accepted.
- C. Standing seam design shall prevent water infiltration by utilizing a capillary break to prevent siphoning.

- D. Fabricate roofing and related sheet metal work in accordance with approved shop drawings and applicable standards set forth in the Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association - Architectural Sheet Metal Manual (2003 edition).
- E. All roofing and sheet metal flashing shall be fabricated in minimum 10'-0" lengths except as noted otherwise. All flashing shall have a minimum 3/4" hemmed edges in exposed locations. Provide field fabricated miters for components that change direction on the project.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 INSPECTION:**

- A. Examine alignment and placement of building roof structure before proceeding with installation of preformed metal roofing.
- B. Examine metal roof deck before starting installation. Deck must be clear, clean and smooth, free of depressions, waves, or projections, dry and must remain dry and free of ice and snow, after roofing application commences. Deck flutes must be clean and dry.
- C. Field check dimensions and check support alignment with taut string or wire. Support misalignment may cause additional stresses in the panels and contribute to oil canning.
- D. Do not proceed with installation until conditions are satisfactory. Notify the architect in writing of unsatisfactory conditions.
- E. Underlayment Installation:
  - 1. Verify that DMI DynaClad® Underlayment has been installed over solid substrate.
  - 2. Ensure DMI DynaClad® underlayment is installed horizontally, starting at the eave working to the ridge with a 6" minimum overlap as described in paragraph 2.03.I.
  - 3. Ensure that all fasteners are totally flush with the substrate.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION:**

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Install roofing and flashing in accordance with approved shop drawings and manufacturer's product data, within specified tolerances.
  - 2. Isolate dissimilar metals, masonry and concrete from metal roof system with bituminous coating.
  - 3. Anchorage shall allow for thermal expansion and contraction without stress or elongation of panels, clips or anchors.
  - 4. Coordinate flashing and sheet metal work to provide watertight conditions at roof terminations. Fabricate and install in accordance with standards set forth in the SMACNA Manual using continuous cleats at all exposed edges.
- B. Underlayment:
  - 1. Install proper protection to finished substrate to prevent moisture infiltration to roofing assembly prior to placement of panels. Cover complete roof area to receive metal roof panels with a self-adhered ice and water underlayment

membrane or a combination of DMI DynaClad® and self-adhered ice and water underlayment at the eaves, valleys, rake edges, and around all penetrations as described in paragraph 2.03.1.

C. Preformed Metal Panels:

1. Fasten anchor clips with fasteners as recommended by the manufacturer as required to meet the performance criteria specified.
2. Install starter and edge trim before installing roof panels.
3. Remove strippable plastic film prior to installation of roof panels.
4. Erect metal roofing with lines, planes, rises and angles sharp and true, and plane surfaces free from objectionable warp, dents, buckle or other physical defects.
5. Do not allow traffic on completed roof.
6. Protect installed roof panels and trim from damage caused by adjacent construction until completion of installation.
7. Remove and replace any panels or flashing components that are damaged beyond successful repair.

D. Flashing:

1. Comply with SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" recommendations for installation work where the manufacturer's approved shop drawings do not define a specific detail.
2. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions wherever possible.
3. Hem all exposed edges of sheet metal flashing that are exposed with at least 3/4" fold under.
4. Insert metal flashing into reglets, anchor with wedges and seal all joints.
5. Set sheet metal items level, true to line and plumb.
6. Secure all metal flashing to wood nailers with screws as indicated on the approved shop drawings.
7. Use cleats to keep flashing end laps closed when face width exceeds eight (8) inches.

### 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tolerances:

1. Applicable erection tolerances: Maximum variation from true planes or lines shall be 1/4" in 20'-0" or 3/8" in 40'-0".
2. Metal roof systems cannot correct any previously installed support or wood nailer problems that do not meet the above tolerances.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service:

1. Manufacturer representative shall inspect all Watertight Warranted projects during the installation of the metal roof system.
2. Inspections shall be scheduled as required by the manufacturer of the roofing system.
3. Two mandatory visits are required:
  - a. Inspection of proper panel and flashing installation.
  - b. Final inspection upon completion of the metal roof installation.
4. Upon final inspection a report will be issued to the installer of any discrepancies and requirements for additional work. If additional work required by the manufacturer will provide another final inspection to verify acceptance of completed work.

### 3.04 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of work promptly after completion of installation. To prevent rust from staining the painted finish, immediately remove filings produced by drilling or cutting.
- B. Clean roof in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Touch up minor abrasions and scratches in finish with manufacturer's supplied Kynar® touch up paint.
- D. Remove all scrap and construction debris from the site.

**END OF SECTION 07 4113**

SECTION 07 4213 - FORMED METAL WALL AND SOFFIT PANELS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Concealed-fastener, lap-seam metal wall panels.
  - 2. Concealed-fastener, metal fascia panels.
  - 3. Metal liner panels.
  - 4. Includes Metal Fascia Panels
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal panels.

## 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
  - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
  - 5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
  - 6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
  - 7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel assembly during and after installation.
  - 8. Review of procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
  - 9. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
  2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied finishes.
  1. Include Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
  1. Metal Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal panel accessories.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing metal panels warranted by manufacturer to be the same as factory-formed products. Maintain UL certification of portable roll-forming equipment for duration of work.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.



- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.
- E. Copper Panels: Wear gloves when handling to prevent fingerprints and soiling of surface.

#### 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

#### 1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
    - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
  - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on the Drawings.
  - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/180 of the span.
- B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
  - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
- C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
  - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

## 2.2 CONCEALED-FASTENER, LAP-SEAM METAL WALL PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal panels designed to be field assembled by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in-side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. **WALL PANEL TYPE 1:** Flush-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Flush Panel Metal Panel: (FPMP) formed installed seams vertically on wall substrate and between panel edges; with flush joint between panels. Panel thickness is 1-1/2 inches.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Berridge Manufacturing Company: **FW-12 Panel with two beads**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, smooth finish with two beads, 12-inch coverage, Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000 PVDF Resin-Based coating.
    - b. Fabral: **Select Series 12-R2 with two beads**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, smooth finish with two beads, 12-inch coverage, Siliconized Modified Polyester (SMP) paint system.
    - c. MBCI: **FW-120-2 with two beads**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, smooth finish with two beads, 12-inch coverage, signature 300 coating.

- d. Finish color shall be selected by the architect from the manufacturer's current standard 26 standard colors and 4 metallic finishes and premium colors on their color selection guide. Unless otherwise noted all products shall be of the same finish and color.
- C. **WALL PANEL TYPE 2:** Standing Seam Panel, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: (FPMP) Formed with Standing Seam Panel (Match Standing Seam Metal Roof Panel, Section 07 4113) and between panel edges; with flush joint between panels. Panel seams are installed vertically.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. **Berridge Manufacturing Company: Double-Lock Zee-Lock Panel**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, 16-inch coverage, Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000 PVDF Resin-Based coating.
    - b. **Fabral: Stand 'N Seam**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, smooth finish, 16-inch coverage, Siliconized Modified Polyester (SMP) paint system.
    - c. **MBCI: BattenLok HS Panel**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, smooth finish, 16-inch coverage, signature 300 coating.
    - d. Finish color shall be selected by the architect from the manufacturer's current standard 26 standard colors and 4 metallic finishes and premium colors on their color selection guide. Unless otherwise noted all products shall be of the same finish and color.
- D. **WALL PANEL TYPE 3:** Flush-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Flush Panel Metal Panel: (FPMP) formed installed seams horizontally on wall substrate and between panel edges; with flush joint between panels. Panel thickness is 1-1/2 inches.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. **Berridge Manufacturing Company: FW-12 Panel with striations**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, with striations, 12-inch coverage, Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000 PVDF Resin-Based coating.
    - b. **Fabral: Select Series 12-RW with v-grooves**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, smooth finish with two beads, 12-inch coverage, Siliconized Modified Polyester (SMP) paint system.
    - c. **MBCI: FW-120-2 with embossed finish**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, smooth finish with embossed finish, 12-inch coverage, signature 300 coating.
    - d. Finish color shall be selected by the architect from the manufacturer's current standard 26 standard colors and 4 metallic finishes and premium colors on their color selection guide. Unless otherwise noted all products shall be of the same finish and color.
- E. **SOFFIT PANEL:** Flush-Profile, concealed-fastener Metal Soffit Panels: Panel is 1 inch thickness.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. **Berridge Manufacturing Company: L-Panel**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, smooth finish, 12-inch coverage, Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000 PVDF Resin-Based coating. Vented and non-vented.

- b. **Fabral: Décor-Flush**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, smooth finish, 12-inch coverage, Siliconized Modified Polyester (SMP) paint system. Vented and non-vented.
  - c. **MBCI: Artisan**, 24-gauge steel with concealed fastening system, smooth finish, 12-inch coverage, signature 300 coating. Vented and non-vented.
  - d. **Color**: Premium/Metallic colors as selected by Architect from Manufactures full range of colors.
- F. **FASCIA PANEL TYPE A**: Flush-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Flush Panel Metal Panel: (FPMP) formed installed seams vertically on wall substrate and between panel edges; with flush joint between panels. Panel thickness is 1-1/2 inches
- 1. Similar to Metal Wall Panel Type 1 with smooth finish – **WITHOUT BEADS**.
- G. **FASCIA PANEL TYPE B**: Standing Seam Panel, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: (FPMP) Formed with Standing Seam Panel (Match Standing Seam Metal Roof Panel, Section 07 4113) and between panel edges; with flush joint between panels. Panel seams are installed vertically.
- 1. Typical to Metal Wall Panel Type 2.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Sub-framing and Furring: ASTM C 645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
- 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
  - 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch-thick, flexible closure strips; cut or pre-molded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, end-walls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.
- E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.

1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- E. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
  1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
  3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  4. Sealed Joints: Form non-expansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
  5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
  6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
    - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
  - 1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.
- D. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:
  - 1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
  - 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
    - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install sub-framing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.3 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
  - 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
  - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
  - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
  - 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
  - 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
  - 7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
  - 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
  - 1. Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
  - 2. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
  - 3. Copper Panels: Use copper, stainless-steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
  - 4. Stainless-Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- D. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Fasten metal panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib. Apply panels and associated items true to line for neat and weathertight enclosure.
  - 2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
  - 3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
  - 4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
  - 5. Flash and seal panels with weather closures at perimeter of all openings.

- E. Watertight Installation:
  - 1. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal lapped joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend by manufacturer on side laps of nesting-type panels; and elsewhere as needed to make panels watertight.
  - 2. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
  - 3. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
  - 1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal wall panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.
- G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.
  - 1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof performance.
  - 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect completed metal wall panel installation, including accessories.
- B. Remove and replace metal wall panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as



recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

- B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 07 4213**

SECTION 07 5423 - THERMOPLASTIC-POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Mechanically fastened thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
2. Accessory roofing materials.
3. Roof insulation.
4. Insulation accessories.
5. Walkway / Working.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking; and for wood-based, structural-use roof deck panels.
2. Section 06 1600 "Sheathing" for wood-based, structural-use roof deck panels.
3. Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation" for insulation beneath the roof deck.
4. Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
5. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to Work of this Section.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:
  1. Layout and thickness of insulation crickets.
  2. Base flashings and membrane termination details.
  3. Flashing details at penetrations.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Installers: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
  - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all

components of roofing system such as roof membrane, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate boards, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing system and flashings to withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roof system and flashings to remain watertight.
  1. Accelerated Weathering: Roof to withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
  2. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane to resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D3746, ASTM D4272, or the "Resistance to Foot Traffic Test" in FM Approvals 4470.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials to be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roof membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Wind Uplift Resistance: Design roofing system to resist the following wind uplift pressures when tested according to FM Approvals 4474, UL 580, or UL 1897:
  1. Zone 1 (Roof Area Field):
  2. Zone 2 (Roof Area Perimeter):
    - a. Location: From roof edge to inside roof edge.
  3. Zone 3 (Roof Area Corners):
    - a. Location: in each direction from each building corner.
- D. FM Approvals' Roof-Nav Listing: Roof membrane, base flashings, and component materials comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 or FM Approvals 4470 as part of a roofing system and are listed in FM Approvals' Roof-Nav for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals Certification markings.
  1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-90.
- E. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E108 or UL 790, Class B; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- F. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

## 2.2 THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

- A. TPO Sheet: ASTM D6878/D6878M, internally fabric- or scrim-reinforced, TPO sheet.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Carlisle SynTec Incorporated; Carlisle Construction Materials; Sure-Weld® TPO or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Firestone Building Products.
    - b. Flex Membrane International Corp.
    - c. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - d. Mule-Hide Products Co., Inc.
    - e. Versico Roofing Systems; Carlisle Construction Materials.
    - f. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated; Carlisle Construction Materials.
  - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from roof membrane manufacturer or manufacturers approved by roof membrane manufacturer.
  - 3. Thickness: 60 mils, nominal.
  - 4. Exposed Face Color: Gray.

## 2.3 ACCESSORY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Accessory materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing components.
  - 1. Adhesive and Sealants: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard unreinforced TPO sheet flashing, 55 mils thick, minimum, of same color as TPO sheet.
- C. Prefabricated Pipe Flashings: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.
- D. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard.
- E. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- F. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing components to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- G. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

## 2.4 ROOF INSULATION CRICKETS

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by TPO roof membrane manufacturer.
- B. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C578, Type IV, 1.45-lb/cu. ft. minimum density, 25 psi minimum compressive strength, square edged.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Insulfoam; Carlisle Construction Materials Company
2. Size: 48 by 96 inches.
3. Thickness:
  - a. Base Layer: 2-inches.
  - b. Upper Layer: Thickness as to slope to drains or scuppers.
4. Slope: 1/4-inch per foot, minimum.

## 2.5 INSULATION ACCESSORIES AND COVER BOARD

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with other roofing system components.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners with metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

## 2.6 WALKWAY / WORKING

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway rolls, approximately 3/16 inch thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
  1. Size: Approximately 36-inches wide minimum from face of Roof Top Equipment.
  2. Color: Consistent with roof membrane color.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing system installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.

- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Perform fastener-pullout tests according to roof system manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Submit test result within 24 hours after performing tests.
    - a. Include manufacturer's requirements for any revision to previously submitted fastener patterns required to achieve specified wind uplift requirements.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOFING, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, listed roof assembly requirements, and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
- B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning Work on adjoining roofing.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION CRICKETS

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and roof insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Installation Over Wood Decking:
  - 1. Mechanically fasten slip sheet to roof deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening slip sheet to wood decks.
    - a. Fasten slip sheet according to requirements in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity.
    - b. Fasten slip sheet to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
  - 2. Install base layer of insulation with joints staggered not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
    - a. Where installing composite and non-composite insulation in two or more layers, install non-composite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
    - b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
    - c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
    - d. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
      - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.

- e. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
  - f. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
  - g. Loosely lay base layer of insulation units over substrate.
- 3. Mechanically attach base layer of insulation and substrate board using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to wood decks.
  - a. Fasten insulation according to requirements in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity.
  - b. Fasten insulation to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
- 4. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation with joints of each layer offset not less than 12 inches from previous layer of insulation.
  - a. Staggered end joints within each layer not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
  - b. Install with long joints continuous and with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows.
  - c. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
  - d. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
  - e. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
    - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
  - f. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
  - g. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
  - h. Loosely lay each layer of insulation units over substrate.
  - i. Adhere each layer of insulation to substrate using adhesive according to SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listed roof assembly requirements for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29, as follows:
    - 1) Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MECHANICALLY FASTENED ROOF MEMBRANE

- A. Mechanically fasten roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Unroll roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- C. For in-splice attachment, install roof membrane with long dimension perpendicular to steel roof deck flutes.
- D. Start installation of roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel and Owners testing and inspection agency.
- E. Accurately align roof membrane and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- F. Mechanically fasten or adhere roof membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.



- G. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- H. In-Seam Attachment: Secure one edge of TPO sheet using fastening plates or metal battens centered within seam, and mechanically fasten TPO sheet to roof deck.
- I. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roof membrane, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roof membrane and sheet flashings to ensure a watertight seam installation.
  - 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of roof membrane and flashing sheet.
  - 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
  - 3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.
- J. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF BASE FLASHING

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF WALKWAY / WORKING SURFACE

- A. Roof Walkway / Working: Install walkway according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install roof walkways at the following locations:
    - a. Perimeter of each rooftop unit.
    - b. Between each rooftop unit location, creating a continuous path connecting rooftop unit locations.
    - c. Between each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
    - d. Locations indicated on Drawings.
    - e. As required by roof membrane manufacturer's warranty requirements.

### 3.8 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing system, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

**END OF SECTION 07 5423**

SECTION 07 6200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Manufactured through-wall flashing with snap-lock receiver with counterflashing.
2. Manufactured reglets with counterflashing.
3. Formed roof-drainage sheet metal fabrications.
4. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
5. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.
6. Formed equipment support flashing.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Section 07 7100 "Roof Specialties" for materials and installation of sheet metal flashing and trim integral with roofing.
3. Section 07 4213.19 "Insulated Metal Wall Panels" for sheet metal flashing and trim integral with metal wall panels.
4. Section 07 7200 "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.

## 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
  1. installation.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

## A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.

- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge flashing that is FM Approvals approved.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
  - 1. For copings and roof edge flashings that are FM Approvals approved, shop shall be listed as able to fabricate required details as tested and approved.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
  - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
  - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. FM Approvals Listing: Manufacture and install copings, roof edge flashings that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and approved for windstorm classification. Identify materials with name of fabricator and design approved by FM Approvals.
- D. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings and roof edge flashings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressure:
  1. Design Pressure:
    - a. 90 MPH Wind Speed.
    - b. 60 PSF Field Uplift.
    - c. 75MPH Perimeter Wind Uplift.
    - d. 75MPH Corner Wind Uplift.
- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

### 2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required; with smooth, flat surface.

1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
  - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Color: Premium/Metallic colors as selected by Architect from Manufactures full range of colors. Match adjacent material's color.
3. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

## 2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt; nonperforated.
- B. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 mils thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer according to written recommendations of underlayment manufacturer.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
    - b. Henry Company.
    - c. Protecto Wrap Company.
  2. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F or higher.
  3. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F or lower.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal.
  1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.

- c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
- 2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
- C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, non-sag, nontoxic, non-staining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- E. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion according to ASTM D 1187.
- F. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.
- G. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile required, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet.
  - 1. Material: Aluminum, 0.024 inch thick.
  - 2. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
  - 3. Stucco Type: Provide with upturned fastening flange and extension leg of length to match thickness of applied finish materials.
  - 4. Concrete Type: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
  - 5. Masonry Type: Provide with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
  - 6. Accessories:
    - a. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where Drawings show reglet without metal counterflashing.
    - b. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing's lower edge.
- 7. Finish: With manufacturer's standard color coating.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details shown and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.

1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  2. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  3. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, non-expansion-type joints are required, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant according to cited sheet metal standard.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard and by FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- G. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- H. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- I. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

## 2.6 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long but, not exceeding 12-foot-long sections. Furnish with 6-inch-wide, joint cover plates. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
1. Joint Style: Overlapped, 4 inches wide.
  2. Fabricate with scuppers spaced 10 feet apart, to dimensions required with 4-inch-wide flanges and base extending 4 inches beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fasten gravel guard angles to base of scupper.
  3. Fabricate from the Following Materials:



- a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
  - B. Copings: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and interior leg. Miter corners, fasten and seal watertight.
    - 1. Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and 6-inch-wide, concealed backup plate.
    - 2. Fabricate from the Following Materials:
      - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
  - C. Roof and Roof-to-Wall Transition, Roof-to-Roof Edge-Flashing (Gravel-Stop,) and Fascia-Cap Transition, Expansion-Joint Cover: Fabricate from the following materials: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
    - 1. Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
  - D. Base Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick.
  - E. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
  - F. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
  - G. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
- 2.7 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS
- A. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1. Aluminum 0.032 inch thick.
  - B. Wall Expansion-Joint Cover: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick.
- 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS
- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
  - B. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.040 inch thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
  - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
  - 3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment, wrinkle free, using adhesive to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.
- B. Synthetic Underlayment: Install synthetic underlayment, wrinkle free, according to manufacturers' written instructions, and using adhesive where possible to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal.
- C. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps and edges with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
- D. Apply slip sheet, wrinkle free, over underlayment, directly on substrate before installing sheet metal flashing and trim.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
  - 1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
  - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.

3. Space cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
  4. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
  5. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
  6. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
  2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
  2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum where necessary for strength.

### 3.4 ROOF-DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.

- B. Through Parapet Downspouts: Join sections with 1-1/2-inch telescoping joints.
  - 1. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c.
  - 2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system.
- C. Parapet Scuppers: Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
  - 1. Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and seal with elastomeric sealant to scupper.
  - 2. Loosely lock front edge of scupper with conductor head.
  - 3. seal with elastomeric sealant exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.
  - 4. Reference conductor detail on the drawings.
- D. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall, with elevation of conductor head rim at minimum of 1 inch below scupper or gutter discharge.

### 3.5 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.
- C. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.
- D. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of 4 inches over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.
- E. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches. Secure in waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

### 3.6 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Through-Wall Flashing: Installation of through-wall flashing is specified in Section 04 2000 "Unit Masonry."
- C. Reglets: Installation of reglets is specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." and Section 04 2000 "Unit Masonry." Section <Insert Section number> "."
- D. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings.

### 3.7 MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.
- B. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Suspend pans from structure above, independent of other overhead items such as equipment, piping, and conduit, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Pipe and install drain line to plumbing waste or drainage system.

### 3.8 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean off excess sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 07 6200**

SECTION 07 7100 - ROOF SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Copings.
  - 2. Roof-edge specialties.
  - 3. Roof-edge drainage systems.
  - 4. Reglets and counterflashings.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
  - 2. Section 07 4113.13 "Formed Metal Roof Panels" for roof-edge drainage-system components provided by metal-roof-panel manufacturer.
  - 3. Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for custom- and site-fabricated sheet metal flashing and trim.
  - 4. Section 07 7200 "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.
  - 5. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants between roof specialties and adjacent materials.

- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, roofing-system testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing-system manufacturer's representative, Installer, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roof specialties, including installers of roofing materials and accessories.
  - 2. Examine substrate conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
  - 3. Review special roof details, roof drainage, and condition of other construction that will affect roof specialties.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of roof specialty indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of roof specialty.
- C. Product Test Reports: For copings and roof-edge flashings, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer offering products meeting requirements that are FM Approvals listed for specified class and SPRI ES-1 tested to specified design pressure.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof-specialty installation.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify profiles and tolerances of roof-specialty substrates by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate roof specialties with flashing, trim, and construction of parapets, roof deck, roof and wall panels, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Roofing-System Warranty: Roof specialties are included in warranty provisions in Section 07 5423 - "Thermoplastic-Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing."
- B. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

- 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:



- a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
  - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
  - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof specialties shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. FM Approvals' Listing: Manufacture and install roof-edge specialties that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and approved for windstorm classification. Identify materials with FM Approvals' markings.
- C. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install roof-edge specialties tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressures:
  1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

### 2.2 COPINGS

- A. Metal Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of metal coping cap in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, concealed anchorage; with corner units, end cap units, and concealed splice plates with finish matching coping caps.
  1. Formed Aluminum Sheet Coping Caps: Aluminum sheet, 0.050 inch thick.
    - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
    - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
    - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
  3. Coping-Cap Attachment Method: Snap-on, fabricated from coping-cap material.

- a. Snap-on Coping Anchor Plates: Concealed, galvanized-steel sheet, 12 inches wide, with integral cleats.
- b. Face-Leg Cleats: Concealed, continuous galvanized-steel sheet.

## 2.3 ROOF-EDGE SPECIALTIES

- A. Canted Roof-Edge Fascia: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet and a continuous formed galvanized-steel sheet cant, 0.028 inch thick, minimum, with extended vertical leg terminating in a drip-edge cleat. Provide matching corner units.
  - 1. Formed Aluminum Sheet Fascia Covers: Aluminum sheet, 0.050 inch thick.
    - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
    - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
    - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 2. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
  - 3. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
- B. Roof-Edge Fascia: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet and a continuous metal receiver with integral drip-edge cleat to engage fascia cover and secure single-ply roof membrane. Provide matching corner units.
  - 1. Formed Aluminum Sheet Fascia Covers: Aluminum sheet, 0.050 inch thick.
    - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
    - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
    - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 2. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
  - 3. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
  - 4. Receiver: Aluminum sheet, 0.050 inch thick.
  - 5. Fascia Accessories: Fascia extenders with continuous hold-down cleats, Wall cap, Soffit trim.
  - 6. Formed Aluminum Sheet Gravel Stops: Aluminum sheet, 0.050 inch thick.
    - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
    - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
    - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 7. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
  - 8. Accessories: Fascia extenders with continuous hold-down cleats, Wall cap, Soffit trim.

## 2.4 REGLETS AND COUNTERFLASHINGS

- A. Reglets: Manufactured units formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, from the following exposed metal:

1. Formed Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
  2. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
  3. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide reglets with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
  4. Stucco Type, Embedded: Provide reglets with upturned fastening flange and extension leg of length to match thickness of applied finish materials.
  5. Concrete Type, Embedded: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
  6. Masonry Type, Embedded: Provide reglets with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
  7. Multiuse Type, Embedded: For multiuse embedment in masonry mortar joints.
- B. Counter-flashing: Manufactured units of heights to overlap top edges of base flashings by 4 inches and in lengths not exceeding 12 feet designed to snap into reglets or through-wall-flashing receiver and compress against base flashings with joints lapped, from the following exposed metal:
1. Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
- C. Accessories:
1. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where reglet is provided separate from metal counterflashing.
  2. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing lower edge.
- D. Aluminum Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
- C. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, finished as follows:

## 2.6 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.](#)
    - b. [Henry Company.](#)
    - c. [Owens Corning.](#)
  2. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970/D 1970M; stable after testing at 240 deg F.
  3. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970/D 1970M; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F.
- B. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
  2. Fasteners for Aluminum: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  3. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
- B. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant of type, grade, class, and use classifications required by roofing-specialty manufacturer for each application.

## 2.8 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Coil-Coated Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finishes:
1. High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M and coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - b. Concealed Surface Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

## E. Coil-Coated Aluminum Sheet Finishes:

1. High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.
- C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage where applicable, and securely anchored.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
  1. Apply continuously under copings, roof-edge specialties, and reglets and counter flashing.
  2. Coordinate application of self-adhering sheet underlayment under roof specialties with requirements for continuity with adjacent air barrier materials.
- B. Felt Underlayment: Install with adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.
- C. Slip Sheet: Install with tape or adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, underlayments, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
  - 1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  - 2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
  - 3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in weathertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
  - 4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
  - 5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
  - 1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet with no joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
- E. Seal concealed joints with butyl sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.
- F. Seal joints as required for weathertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F.

### 3.4 COPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, anchor plates, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor copings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.
  - 1. Interlock face and back leg drip edges of snap-on coping cap into cleated anchor plates anchored to substrate at manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements.

### 3.5 ROOF-EDGE SPECIALITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, cants, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor roof edgings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.

### 3.6 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install components to produce a complete roof-edge drainage system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-edge drainage system.
- B. Gutters: Join and seal gutter lengths. Allow for thermal expansion. Attach gutters to firmly anchored gutter supports spaced not more than 24 inches apart. Attach ends with rivets and seal with sealant to make watertight. Slope to downspouts.
  - 1. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated but not exceeding 50 feet apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
- C. Downspouts: Join sections with manufacturer's standard telescoping joints. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls and 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c.
  - 1. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- D. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-slope roofs. Set in elastomeric sealant.
- E. Parapet Scuppers: Install scuppers through parapet where indicated. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
  - 1. Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and seal or solder to scupper.

### 3.7 REGLET AND COUNTERFLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Coordinate installation of reglets and counter-flashings with installation of base flashings.
- B. Embedded Reglets: See Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and Section 04 2000 "Unit Masonry" for installation of reglets.
- C. Surface-Mounted Reglets: Install reglets to receive flashings where flashing without embedded reglets is indicated on Drawings. Install at height so that inserted counter-flashings overlap 4 inches over top edge of base flashings.
- D. Counter-flashings: Insert counter-flashings into reglets or other indicated receivers; ensure that counter-flashings overlap 4 inches over top edge of base flashings. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches and bed with butyl sealant. Fit counter-flashings tightly to base flashings.

### 3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 07 7100**



SECTION 07 7200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Roof curbs.
  - 2. Equipment supports.
  - 3. Preformed flashing sleeves.
  - 4. Ceiling Access Panel

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for metal vertical ladders, ships' ladders, and stairs for access to roof hatches.
  - 2. Section 05 5213 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for safety railing systems not attached to roof-hatch curbs.
  - 3. Section 07 4113 "Formed Metal Roofing Panels" for shop- and field-formed roof curbs and snow guards for sheet metal roofing.
  - 4. Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.
  - 5. Section 07 7100 "Roof Specialties" for manufactured fasciae, copings, gravel stops, gutters and downspouts, and counterflashing.
  - 6. Section 23 0548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for special curbs designed to accommodate seismic and vibration controls.
  - 7. Section 23 7413 "Packaged, Outdoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units" for standard curbs specified with rooftop units.

## 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Wind-Restraint Performance: As indicated on Drawings.

#### 2.2 ROOF CURBS

- A. Roof Curbs: Internally reinforced roof-curb units capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings, bearing continuously on roof structure, and capable of meeting performance requirements; with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, straight sides, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. AES Industries, Inc.
    - b. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
    - c. Kingspan Light + Air, North America.
    - d. Roof Curb Systems.

- e. [Roof Products and Systems \(RPS\); a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.](#)
  - f. [Roof Products, Inc.](#)
- B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
- C. Supported Load Capacity: Coordinate with supported equipment.
- D. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.064 inch thick.
  - 1. Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- E. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.090 inch thick.
  - 1. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
  - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- F. Construction:
  - 1. Curb Profile: Manufacturer's standard compatible with roofing system.
  - 2. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
  - 3. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Top Surface: Level top of curb, with roof slope accommodated by sloping deck-mounting flange or by use of leveler frame.
  - 5. Sloping Roofs: Where roof slope exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb with perimeter curb height tapered to accommodate roof slope so that top surface of perimeter curb is level. Equip unit with water diverter or cricket on side that obstructs water flow.
  - 6. Nailer: Factory-installed wood nailer under top flange on side of curb, continuous around curb perimeter.
  - 7. Wind Restraint Straps and Base Flange Attachment: Provide wind restraint straps, welded strap connectors, and base flange attachment to roof structure at perimeter of curb, of size and spacing required to meet wind uplift requirements.
  - 8. Platform Cap: Where portion of roof curb is not covered by equipment, provide weathertight platform cap formed from 3/4-inch-thick plywood covered with metal sheet of same type, thickness, and finish as required for curb.
  - 9. Metal Counterflashing: Manufacturer's standard, removable, fabricated of same metal and finish as curb.
  - 10. Security Grille: Provide where indicated.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Equipment Supports: Internally reinforced perimeter metal equipment supports capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads between structural supports, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings, spanning between structural supports; capable of meeting performance requirements; with welded corner joints, stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation, and integrally formed structure-mounting flange at bottom.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. AES Industries, Inc.
  - b. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
  - c. Kingspan Light + Air, North America.
  - d. Roof Curb Systems.
  - e. Roof Products and Systems (RPS); a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
  - f. Roof Products, Inc.
- B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
- C. Supported Load Capacity: Coordinate with supported equipment.
- D. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.064 inch thick.
  1. Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- E. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.090 inch thick.
  1. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
  2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- F. Construction:
  1. Curb Profile: Manufacturer's standard compatible with roofing system.
  2. Nailer: Factory-installed continuous wood nailers 3-1/2 inches wide under top flange on side of curb, continuous around support perimeter.
  3. Wind Restraint Straps and Base Flange Attachment: Provide wind restraint straps, welded strap connectors, and base flange attachment to roof structure at perimeter of curb of size and spacing required to meet wind uplift requirements.
  4. Platform Cap: Where portion of equipment support is not covered by equipment, provide weathertight platform cap formed from 3/4-inch-thick plywood covered with metal sheet of same type, thickness, and finish as required for curb.
  5. Metal Counterflashing: Manufacturer's standard, removable, fabricated of same metal and finish as equipment support.
  6. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
  7. Fabricate equipment supports to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
  8. Sloping Roofs: Where roof slope exceeds 1:48, fabricate each support with height to accommodate roof slope so that tops of supports are level with each other. Equip supports with water diverters or crickets on sides that obstruct water flow.
  9. Security Grille: Provide where indicated on Drawings.

## 2.4 CEILING ACCESS PANEL

- A. Ceiling Access Panel: Metal Ceiling Access Panel units with lids and wood trim to allow for positive connection to Roof Hatch access way.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Elmdor Access Doors (Basic of Design)
  - b. Hallmann Sales, LLC
  - c. Access Doors
  - d. Larsen's Manufacturing Company
- B. DW Series 36" x 36" ceiling access panel.
- C. 16 gage galvanized steel.
- D. Factory primer coat white and Field painted.
- E. Mortise cylinder lock (prep).
- F. Cylinder Lock.
- G. Concealed pivoting rod hinges.
- H. Pre-drilled mounting holes in frame.
- I. Frame shall be one-piece construction with no miters or welds on the face. All corners shall have rounded safety corners.

## 2.5 PREFORMED FLASHING SLEEVES

- A. Exhaust Vent Flashing: Double-walled metal flashing sleeve or boot, insulation filled, with integral deck flange, 12 inches high, with removable metal hood and slotted metal collar.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
    - b. Menzies Metal Products.
    - c. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
  2. Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.063 inch thick.
  3. Diameter: As indicated on Drawings.
  4. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- B. Vent Stack Flashing: Metal flashing sleeve, uninsulated, with integral deck flange.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
    - b. Menzies Metal Products.
    - c. Milcor; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
    - d. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.

2. Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.063 inch thick.
3. Height: 13 inches.
4. Diameter: As indicated on Drawings.
5. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.6 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation and mill phosphatized for field painting where indicated.
  1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color top-coat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
- B. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, AZ50 coated.
  1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
- C. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, manufacturer's standard alloy for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
  1. Mill Finish: As manufactured.
  2. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil.
  3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 2605. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color top-coat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
- D. Aluminum Extrusions and Tubes: ASTM B 221, manufacturer's standard alloy and temper for type of use, finished to match assembly where used; otherwise mill finished.
- E. Stainless-Steel Sheet and Shapes: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- F. Steel Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Galvanized-Steel Tube: ASTM A 500/A 500M, round tube, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.

- H. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, galvanized.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 726, nominal density of 3 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F, thickness as indicated.
- C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and complying with AWWA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.
- D. Security Grilles: 3/4-inch diameter, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M steel bars spaced 6 inches o.c. in one direction and 12 inches o.c. in the other; factory finished as follows:
1. Surface Preparation: Remove mill scale and rust, if any, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
  2. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Apply shop primer specified below immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
  3. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's or fabricator's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer; selected for resistance to normal atmospheric corrosion, for compatibility with substrate and field-applied finish paint system indicated, and for capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats under prolonged exposure.
- E. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- F. Underlayment:
1. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
  2. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil-thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.
  3. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. minimum, rosin sized.
  4. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  5. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
  6. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
  7. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  8. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.

- G. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- H. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
- I. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.
- J. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586/D 4586M, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

## 2.8 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  - 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
  - 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.



4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum and stainless-steel roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.
  3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- C. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.
- D. Equipment Support Installation: Install equipment supports so top surfaces are level with each other.
- E. Heat and Smoke Vent Installation:
1. Install heat and smoke vent so top perimeter surfaces are level.
  2. Install and test heat and smoke vents and their components for proper operation according to NFPA 204.
- F. Gravity Ventilator Installation: Verify that gravity ventilators operate properly and have unrestricted airflow. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanisms.
- G. Pipe Support Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-89. Install supports and attachments as required to properly support piping. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together.
1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Space supports for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
- H. Preformed Flashing-Sleeve and Flashing Pipe Portal Installation: Secure flashing sleeve to roof membrane according to flashing-sleeve manufacturer's written instructions; flash sleeve flange to surrounding roof membrane according to roof membrane manufacturer's instructions.
- I. Security Grilles: Weld bar intersections and, using tamper-resistant bolts, attach the ends of bars to structural frame or primary curb walls.
- J. Seal joints with elastomeric or butyl sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.
- 3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING
- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780/A 780M.

- B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting."
- C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Clean off excess sealants.
- E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 07 7200**

## SECTION 07 8413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOP

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Contractor's attention is specifically directed, but not limited, to the following documents for additional requirements:

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
  - 2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
  - 3. Penetrations in smoke barriers.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 07 9200 – "Joint Sealants"

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For penetration firestopping sealants and sealant primers, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
  - 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For penetration firestopping sealants and sealant primers, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard

Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small- Scale Environmental Chambers."

- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire- resistance-rated assembly.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating penetration firestopping has been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for penetration firestopping.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."
- B. Installer Qualifications: A firm experienced in installing penetration firestopping similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Manufacturer's willingness to sell its penetration firestopping products to Contractor or to Installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Penetration firestopping shall comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Penetration firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Penetration firestopping is identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Penetration Firestopping" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:

- a. Penetration firestopping products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- b. Classification markings on penetration firestopping correspond to designations listed by the following:
  - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
  - 2) Intertek ETL SEMKO in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."
  - 3) FM Global in its "Building Materials Approval Guide."

D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure penetration firestopping per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping is installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping.
- C. Notify Owner's testing agency at least seven days in advance of penetration firestopping installations; confirm dates and times on day preceding each series of installations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. [A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.](#)
  - 2. [Grace Construction Products.](#)
  - 3. [Hilti, Inc.](#)
  - 4. [Nelson Firestop Products.](#)
  - 5. [NUCO Inc.](#)
  - 6. [RectorSeal Corporation.](#)
  - 7. [Specified Technologies Inc.](#)

8. [3M Fire Protection Products.](#)
9. [Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.](#)
10. [USG Corporation.](#)
11. Substitutions: See Section 01 25 00 – “Substitution Procedures”.

## 2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

- A. Provide penetration firestopping that is produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestopping indicated.
  1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
    - a. Slag-wool-fiber or rock-wool-fiber insulation.
    - b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
    - c. Fire-rated form board.
    - d. Fillers for sealants.
  2. Temporary forming materials.
  3. Substrate primers.
  4. Collars.
  5. Steel sleeves.

## 2.3 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer metallic sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a radial extended flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.
- B. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.
- C. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- D. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized-steel sheet.

- E. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening dielectric, water-resistant putties containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.
- F. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- G. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a non-shrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- H. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives. Where exposed, cover openings with steel-reinforcing wire mesh to protect pillows/bags from being easily removed.
- I. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, non-shrinking foam.
- J. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:
  - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces, and non-sag formulation for openings in vertical and sloped surfaces, unless indicated firestopping limits use of non-sag grade for both opening conditions.

## 2.4 MIXING

- A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping.
  - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent penetration firestopping from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of the Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove stains. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing fire-stopping's seal with substrates.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
  - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestopping.
- C. Install fill materials for firestopping by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
  - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.



### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify penetration firestopping with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of firestopping edge so labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
  - 1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
  - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
  - 3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 4. Date of installation.
  - 5. Manufacturer's name.
  - 6. Installer's name.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

### 3.7 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SCHEDULE

- A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.
- B. Where Intertek ETL SEMKO-listed systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers in Intertek ETL SEMKO's "Directory of Listed Building Products" under "Firestop Systems."

- C. Where FM Global-approved systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers listed in FM Global's "Building Materials Approval Guide" under "Wall and Floor Penetration Fire Stops."

END OF SECTION 07 84 13

## SECTION 07 9200 - JOINT SEALANTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Silicone joint sealants.
2. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
3. Urethane joint sealants.
4. Immersible joint sealants.
5. Silyl-terminated polyether joint sealants.
6. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
7. Polysulfide joint sealants.
8. Butyl joint sealants.
9. Latex joint sealants.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 07 9100 "Preformed Joint Seals" for preformed compressible foam and precured joint seals.
2. Section 07 9219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in sound-rated construction.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  4. Joint-sealant color.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

- B. Product Test Reports: For each kind of joint sealant, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Schedule: Include the following information for each joint sealant and substrate material to be tested:
  - 1. Joint-sealant location and designation.
  - 2. Manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Type of substrate material.
  - 4. Proposed test.
  - 5. Number of samples required.
- D. Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.
- E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- C. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
  - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
  - 1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
  - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
  - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
  - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 100/50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momenive Performance Materials Inc.
- B. Silicone, S, NS, 50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momenive Performance Materials Inc.
    - b. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.
    - c. The Dow Chemical Company.

- C. Silicone, S, NS, 35, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 35 percent and minus 35 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 35, Use NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - b. The Dow Chemical Company.
- D. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - b. The Dow Chemical Company.
- E. Silicone, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.
    - b. The Dow Chemical Company.
- F. Silicone, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.
    - b. The Dow Chemical Company.
- G. Silicone, S, NS, 50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses T and NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. The Dow Chemical Company.
- H. Silicone, S, NS, 25, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.

- I. Silicone, S, P, 100/50, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.

## 2.3 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested according to ASTM C 1248.

- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.

- C. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.

- b. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.

- c. The Dow Chemical Company.

- D. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. The Dow Chemical Company.

## 2.4 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, nontraffic-use, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation.
    - b. Pecora Corporation.
    - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
    - d. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.
- B. Urethane, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.
- C. Urethane, S, NS, 25, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T and NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation.
- D. Urethane, M, NS, 25, NT: Multicomponent, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation.
- E. Urethane, M, NS, 25, T, NT: Multicomponent, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T and NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation.
    - b. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.



- F. Urethane, M, P, 25, T, NT: Multicomponent, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.
1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [BASF Corporation.](#)
    - b. [Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.](#)

## 2.5 IMMERSIBLE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Immersible Joint Sealants. Suitable for immersion in liquids; ASTM C 1247, **[Class 1] [Class 2]**; tested in deionized water unless otherwise indicated
- B. Urethane, Immersible, S, NS, 100/50, NT, I: Immersible, single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses NT, and I.
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Urethane, Immersible, S, NS, 35, NT, I: Immersible, single-component, nonsag, plus 35 percent and minus 35 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 35, Use NT and I.
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- D. Urethane, Immersible, S, NS, 50, T, NT, I: Immersible, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses T, NT, and I.
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- E. Urethane, Immersible, S, NS, 35, T, NT, I: Immersible, single-component, nonsag, plus 35 percent and minus 35 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 35, Uses T, NT, and I.
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- F. Urethane, Immersible, S, NS, 25, T, NT, I: Immersible, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T, NT, and I.
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- G. Urethane, Immersible, S, P, 50, T, NT, I: Immersible, single-component, pourable, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 50, Uses T, NT, and I.

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  - H. Urethane, Immersible, S, P, 25, T, NT, I: Immersible, single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T, NT, and I.
    1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  - I. Polysulfide, Immersible, M, NS, 25, NT, I: Immersible, multicomponent, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, polysulfide joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses NT and I.
    1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  - J. Urethane, Immersible, M, NS, 50, T, NT, I: Immersible, multicomponent, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses T, NT, and I.
    1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  - K. Urethane, Immersible, M, NS, 25, T, NT, I: Immersible, multicomponent, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T, NT, and I.
    1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  - L. Polysulfide, Immersible, M, NS, 25, T, NT, I: Immersible, multicomponent, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, polysulfide joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T, NT, and I.
    1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  - M. Urethane, Immersible, M, P, 25, T, NT, I: Immersible, multicomponent, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T, NT, and I.
    1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- 2.6 SILYL-TERMINATED POLYETHER (STPE) JOINT SEALANTS
- A. STPE, S, NS, 50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. STPE, S, NS, 35, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 35 percent and minus 35 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 35, Use NT.
  1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. STPE, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- D. STPE, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100, Uses T and NT.
  1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- E. STPE, S, NS, 50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses T and NT.
  1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- F. STPE, S, NS, 35, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 35 percent and minus 35 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 35, Uses T and NT.
  1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- G. STPE, S, NS, 25, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T and NT.
  1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- H. STPE, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.
  1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

## 2.7 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - b. The Dow Chemical Company.
- C. STPE, Mildew Resistant, S, NS, 50, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation.

## 2.8 BUTYL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealants: ASTM C 1311.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Bostik, Inc.
    - b. Pecora Corporation.

## 2.9 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.
    - b. Pecora Corporation.
    - c. Tremco Incorporated.

## 2.10 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. BASF Corporation.
  - b. Construction Foam Products; a division of Nomaco, Inc.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin) or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

## 2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant

- manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
    - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
    - d. Exterior insulation and finish systems.
  3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Metal.
    - b. Glass.
    - c. Porcelain enamel.
    - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.
- ### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS
- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
  - B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
  - C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
    1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
    2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
    3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.

- D. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
  - 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
    - a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
    - b. Perform one test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
  - 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
    - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
  - 3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
    - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
    - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
    - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.

4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
  5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### 3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces <JS-A>.
1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Control and expansion joints in brick pavers.
    - b. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - c. Joints between plant-precast architectural concrete paving units.
    - d. Joints in stone paving units, including steps.
    - e. Tile control and expansion joints.
    - f. Joints between different materials listed above.
    - g. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, M, P, 50, T, NT.
  3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces subject to water immersion <JS-B>.



1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Joints in pedestrian plazas.
    - b. Joints in swimming pool decks.
    - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, immersible, S, P, 25, T, NT, I.
  3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces <JS-C>.
1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
    - b. Joints between plant-precast architectural concrete units.
    - c. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
    - d. Joints in dimension stone cladding.
    - e. Joints in glass unit masonry assemblies.
    - f. Joints in exterior insulation and finish systems.
    - g. Joints between metal panels.
    - h. Joints between different materials listed above.
    - i. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
    - j. Control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
    - k. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT.
  3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces <JS-D>.
1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - b. Control and expansion joints in stone flooring.
    - c. Control and expansion joints in brick flooring.
    - d. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
    - e. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, P, 25, T, NT.
  3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces <JS-E>.
1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
    - b. Tile control and expansion joints.

- c. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of unit masonry, concrete walls, and partitions.
    - d. Joints on underside of plant-precast structural concrete beams and planks.
    - e. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces not subject to significant movement <JS-F>.
- 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Control joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
    - b. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors windows and elevator entrances.
    - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- G. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces <JS-G>.
- 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
    - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
    - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone, mildew resistant, acid curing, S, NS, 25, NT.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- H. Joint-Sealant Application: Concealed mastics <JS-H>.
- 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Aluminum thresholds.
    - b. Sill plates.
    - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Butyl-rubber based.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

**END OF SECTION 07 9200**

SECTION 07 9219 - ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical joint sealants.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for elastomeric, latex, and butyl-rubber-based joint sealants for non-acoustical applications.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each acoustical joint sealant.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of acoustical joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch-wide joints formed between two 6-inch-long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- E. Acoustical-Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  - 4. Joint-sealant color.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each kind of acoustical joint sealant, for tests performed by
- B. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

## 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace acoustical joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish acoustical joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide acoustical joint-sealant products that effectively reduce airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction, as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

### 2.2 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard non-sag, paintable, non-staining latex acoustical sealant complying with ASTM C 834.
  - 1. Colors of Exposed Acoustical Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect
- B. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard non-sag, nondrying, nonhardening, non-skinning, non-staining, gunn-able, synthetic-rubber acoustical sealant.

### 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by acoustical-joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Non-staining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive acoustical joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing acoustical joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by acoustical-joint-sealant manufacturer. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Comply with acoustical joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical joint sealant. Install acoustical joint sealants at both faces of partitions, at perimeters, and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919, ASTM C 1193, and manufacturer's written recommendations for closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions to underside of floor slabs above acoustical ceilings.
- C. Acoustical Ceiling Areas: Apply acoustical joint sealant at perimeter edge moldings of acoustical ceiling areas in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
- D. Install acoustical sealants at top and bottom on both sides of walls indicated with sound insulations on drawings.

#### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of acoustical joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect acoustical joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated acoustical joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

**END OF SECTION 07 9219**

SECTION 08 1113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
  - 2. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.
  - 2. Section 09 9113 "Interior Painting" for field painting interior hollow metal doors and frames.
  - 3. Section 09 9123 "Exterior Painting" for field painting exterior hollow metal doors and frames.
  - 4. Section 09 9600 "High Performance Coatings" for field painting interior and exterior hollow metal doors and frames as noted with high performance coating.
  - 5. Division 26 Sections for electrical connections including conduit and wiring for door controls and operators.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or SDI A250.8.

## 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, temperature-rise ratings, and finishes.
  - B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
    1. Elevations of each door type.
    2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
    3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
    4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
    5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
    6. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
    7. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
    8. Details of accessories.
    9. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
    10. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.
  - C. Samples for Initial Selection: For hollow-metal doors and frames with factory-applied color finishes.
  - D. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Test Reports: For each type of fire-rated hollow-metal door and frame assembly and for tests performed by a qualified testing agency indicating compliance with performance requirements.
  - B. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire-rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.
  - C. Field quality control reports.
- 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.
- 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow metal work from single source from single manufacturer.



## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use non-vented plastic.
  - 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch-high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ceco Door; ASSA ABLOY.
  - 2. Curries Company; ASSA ABLOY.
  - 3. Deansteel Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - 4. Fleming Door Products Ltd.; Assa Abloy Group Company.
  - 5. Republic Doors and Frames.
  - 6. Robert I Merrill Co.
  - 7. Security Metal Products; a brand of ASSA ABLOY.
  - 8. Steelcraft; an Allegion brand.
  - 9. Timely Prefinished Steel Door Frames

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
  - 1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
  - 2. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
  - 3. Temperature-Rise Limit: Where indicated on Drawings and at vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.

- B. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Life Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9.
- C. Thermally Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door assemblies with U-factor of not more than 0.40 deg Btu/F x h x sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM C 518.

## 2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Standard-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 1; SDI A250.4, Level C. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
  - 1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
    - c. Face: Uncoated steel sheet, 16 gauge with minimum thickness of 0.053 inches.
    - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
    - e. Edge Bevel: Bevel lock and hinge edges 1/8 inch in 2 inches.
    - f. Core: Manufacturer's standard.
    - g. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard core for fire-rated and temperature-rise-rated doors.
  - 2. Frames:
    - a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, 16 gauge with minimum thickness of 0.053 inches.
    - b. Side-lite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
    - c. Construction: Knocked down, Slip-on drywall, or Face welded as indicated on Drawings.
    - d. 2-inch jamb profile and 4-inch head profile in Concrete Masonry Unit (CMU) wall.
    - e. 2-inch jamb profile and 2-inch head profile in metal stud framed wall.
  - 3. Exposed Finish: Primer ready for paint.

## 2.4 EXTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 2; SDI A250.4, Level B. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
  - 1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.

- b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
  - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, 16 gauge with minimum thickness of 0.053 inches, with minimum A40 coating.
  - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
  - e. Edge Bevel: Bevel lock and hinge edges 1/8 inch in 2 inches.
  - f. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures of same material as face sheets. Seal joints against water penetration.
  - g. Bottom Edges: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets. Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape.
  - h. Core: Manufacturer's insulated.
  - i. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard core for fire-rated doors.
  - j. Foamed-in-place polyurethane core
2. Frames:
- a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, 16 gauge with minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A40 coating.
  - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
  - c. 2-inch jamb profile and 4-inch head profile in Concrete Masonry Unit (CMU wall).
3. Exposed Finish: Galvanneal with Primer.

## 2.5 BORROWED LITES

- A. Fabricate of uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch.
- B. Construction: Full profile welded.
- C. Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as metal as frames.
- D. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 HOLLOW-METAL PANELS

- A. Provide hollow-metal panels of same materials, construction, and finish as adjacent door assemblies.

## 2.7 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
  - 1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.

2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each 24 inches of frame height above 7 feet.
  3. Post-installed Expansion Anchor: Minimum 3/8-inch-diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.
- B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.
- C. Floor Anchors for Concrete Slabs with Underlayment: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at top of underlayment.
- D. Material: ASTM A 879/A 879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M; hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.

## 2.8 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing."

## 2.9 FABRICATION

- A. Door Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted or as required to comply with published listing of qualified testing agency.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide

alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.

1. Side-lite and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by welding.
  2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
    - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
    - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
  4. Terminated Stops: Terminate stops 6 inches above finish floor with a 45-degree angle cut, and close open end of stop with steel sheet closure. Cover opening in extension of frame with welded-steel filler plate, with welds ground smooth and flush with frame.
- C. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive non-templated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
  2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.
- D. Glazed Lites: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
1. Provide stops and moldings flush with face of door, and with beveled stops unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
  3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal doors and frames.
  4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.
  5. Provide stops for installation with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.

## 2.10 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

## 2.11 LOUVERS

- A. Provide louvers for interior doors, where indicated, which comply with SDI 111, with blades or baffles formed of 0.020-inch-thick, cold-rolled steel sheet set into 0.032-inch-thick steel frame.
  - 1. Sight-proof Louver: Stationary louvers constructed with inverted-V or inverted-Y blades.
  - 2. Lightproof Louver: Stationary louvers constructed with baffles to prevent light from passing from one side to the other.
  - 3. Fire-Rated Automatic Louvers: Louvers constructed with movable blades closed by actuating fusible link and listed and labeled for use in fire-rated door assemblies of type and fire-resistance rating indicated by same qualified testing and inspecting agency that established fire-resistance rating of door assembly.
- B. Form corners of moldings with hairline joints. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive non-templated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with SDI A250.11.
  - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
    - a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
    - b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
  - 2. Fire-Rated Openings: Install frames according to NFPA 80.
  - 3. Floor Anchors: Secure with post-installed expansion anchors.

- a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of post-installed expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
- 4. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
- 5. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout or mortar.
- 6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with post-installed expansion anchors, Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- 7. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
  - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
  - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
  - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
  - 1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with SDI A250.8.
  - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
  - 3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors according to NFPA 105.
- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Inspections:
  - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door according to NFPA 80, section 5.2
  - 2. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements according to NFPA 101, section 7.2.1.15.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND TOUCHUP

- A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- B. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Factory-Finish Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with same material used for factory finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

**END OF SECTION 08 1113**



SECTION 08 1416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Five-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors for transparent finish.
- 2. Five-ply flush wood doors for opaque finish.
- 3. Factory priming finishing flush wood doors.
- 4. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 08 8000 "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.
- 2. Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting"
- 3. Section 09 9300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for field finishing doors.

## 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

- 1. Door core materials and construction.
- 2. Door edge construction
- 3. Door face type and characteristics.
- 4. Door trim for openings.
- 5. Door frame construction.
- 6. Factory-machining criteria.
- 7. Factory-finishing specifications.

- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each type of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:

- 1. Door schedule indicating door location, type, size, fire protection rating, and swing.
- 2. Door elevations, dimension and locations of hardware, lite and louver cutouts, and glazing thicknesses.
- 3. Details of frame for each frame type, including dimensions and profile.

4. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
5. Dimensions and locations of blocking for hardware attachment.
6. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
7. Clearances and undercuts.
8. Requirements for veneer matching.
9. Doors to be factory finished and application requirements.
10. Apply AWI Quality Certification Program label to Shop Drawings.

C. Samples for Verification:

1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches, for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.
2. Louver blade and frame sections, 6 inches long, for each material and finish specified.
3. Frames for light openings, 6 inches long, for each material, type, and finish required.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Special warranties.
- B. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.
- C. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Certification: Licensed participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.
- C. Mark each door on bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed and weathertight, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 17 and 50 percent during remainder of construction period.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Delamination of veneer.
    - b. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
    - c. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
  - 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
  - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors indicated to be blueprint matched with paneling and wood paneling from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Wood Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with UL 10C or NFPA 252.
  - 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
  - 2. Temperature-Rise Limit: Where indicated on Drawings, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
- B. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

## 2.3 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
  - 1. Provide labels and certificates from AWI certification program indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
    - a. Contractor shall register the Work under this Section with the AWI Quality Certification Program at [www.awiqcp.org](http://www.awiqcp.org) or by calling 855-345-0991.

## 2.4 FIVE-PLY FLUSH WOOD VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Interior Doors:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Oshkosh Door Company.
    - b. TruStile Door Company.
    - c. VT Industries Inc.
  - 2. Performance Grade:
    - a. WDMA I.S. 1A Heavy Duty unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
    - b. WDMA I.S. 1A Extra Heavy Duty: Public toilets, janitor's closets, exits, and where indicated on Drawings.
    - c. WDMA I.S. 1A Standard Duty: Closets (not including janitor's closets) and where indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
  - 4. Faces: Single-plywood veneer not less than 1/50 inch thick.
    - a. Species: Red Oak.
    - b. Cut: Plain sliced or flat sliced.
    - c. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book match.
    - d. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Center-balance match.
    - e. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
    - f. Room Match: Match door faces within each separate room or area of building. Corridor-door faces do not need to match where they are separated by 10 feet or more.
    - g. Blueprint Match: Where indicated, provide doors with faces produced from same flitches as adjacent wood paneling and arranged to provide blueprint match with wood paneling. Comply with requirements in Section 06 4216 "Flush Wood Paneling."
  - 5. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Same species as faces or a compatible species - Architectural Woodwork Standards edge Type A.
    - a. Fire-Rated Single Doors: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed vertical edges.

- b. Fire-Rated Pairs of Doors: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
- c. Mineral-Core Doors: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
  - 1) Screw-Holding Capability: 550 lbf in accordance with WDMA T.M. 10.
- 6. Core for Non-Fire-Rated Doors: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-1 particleboard.
  - a. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
  - b. Provide doors with glued-wood-stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors scheduled to receive exit devices in Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware."
- 7. Core for Non-Fire-Rated Doors: Core: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-1 particleboard.
- 8. Core for Fire-Rated Doors: Core: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-1 particleboard as required to achieve fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.
  - a. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
  - b. Provide doors with glued-wood-stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors scheduled to receive exit devices in Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware."
- 9. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.

## 2.5 FIVE-PLY FLUSH WOOD DOORS FOR OPAQUE FINISH

### A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Oshkosh Door Company.
  - b. TruStile Door Company.
  - c. VT Industries Inc.
- 2. Performance Grade:
  - a. WDMA I.S. 1A Heavy Duty unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - b. WDMA I.S. 1A Extra Heavy Duty: public toilets, janitor's closets, exits, and where indicated on Drawings.
  - c. WDMA I.S. 1A Standard Duty: Closets (not including janitor's closets) and where indicated on Drawings.

3. Architectural Woodwork Standards WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Premium.
4. Faces: MDO.
  - a. Apply MDO to standard-thickness, closed-grain, hardwood face veneers or directly to high-density hardboard crossbands.
  - b. Hardboard Faces: ANSI A135.4, Class 1 (tempered) or Class 2 (standard).
  - c. MDF Faces: ANSI A208.2, Grade 150 or Grade 160.
5. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Any closed-grain hardwood.
  - a. Fire-Rated Single Doors: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed vertical edges.
  - b. Fire-Rated Pairs of Doors: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
  - c. Mineral-Core Doors: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
    - 1) Screw-Holding Capability: 550 lbf in accordance with WDMA T.M. 10.
6. Core for Non-Fire-Rated Doors: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-1 particleboard.
  - a. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
  - b. Provide doors with glued-wood-stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors scheduled to receive exit devices in Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware."
7. Core for Non-Fire-Rated Doors: Glued wood stave.
8. Core for Non-Fire-Rated Doors: WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
  - a. Screw Withdrawal, Face: 700 lbf.
  - b. Screw Withdrawal, Edge: 400 lbf.
9. Core for Non-Fire-Rated Doors: Either glued wood stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
10. Core for Fire-Rated Doors: As required to achieve fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.
  - a. Blocking for Mineral-Core Doors: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
11. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated.
  - 1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.
  - 1. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3.
  - 2. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
  - 3. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames, to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
  - 4. For doors scheduled to receive electrified locksets, provide factory-installed raceway and wiring to accommodate specified hardware.
  - 5. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
- C. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
  - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
  - 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing indoors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing."
  - 3. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.

## 2.7 FACTORY PRIMING

- A. Doors for Opaque Finish: Factory prime faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises with one coat of wood primer specified in Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."

## 2.8 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing.
  - 1. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
  - 2. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
  - 3. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Factory finish doors as selected.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.

1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
  2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Install doors and frames to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
- C. Install frames level, plumb, true, and straight.
1. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
  2. Anchor frames to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates.
    - a. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
    - b. Use fine finishing nails for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.
      - 1) For factory-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
  3. Install fire-rated doors and frames in accordance with NFPA 80.
  4. Install smoke- and draft-control doors in accordance with NFPA 105.
- D. Job-Fitted Doors:
1. Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below.
    - a. Do not trim stiles and rails in-excess-of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors.
  2. Machine doors for hardware.
  3. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
  4. Clearances:
    - a. Provide 1/8 inch at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors.
    - b. Provide 1/8 inch from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
    - c. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
  5. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock and hinge edges.
  6. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.



- E. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- F. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- B. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- C. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

## **END OF SECTION 08 1416**

SECTION 08 3113 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 7200 "Roof Accessories" for roof hatches.
  - 2. Section 23 3300 "Air Duct Accessories" for heating and air-conditioning duct access doors.

## 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of applicable room name and number in which access door is located.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection and temperature-rise limit ratings indicated, according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.

## 2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges [AD-1]:
  - 1. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame. Provide manufacturer's standard-width exposed flange, proportional to door size.
  - 2. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
  - 3. Door Size: As indicated on drawings.
  - 4. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060-inch, 16 gauge.
    - a. Finish: Factory prime.
  - 5. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
  - 6. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 7. Hardware: Latch.

- B. Flush Access Doors with Concealed Flanges [AD-2]:
  - 1. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame. Provide frame with gypsum board beads for concealed flange installation.
  - 2. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
  - 3. Door Size: As indicated on drawings.
  - 4. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage.
    - a. Finish: Factory prime.
  - 5. Frame Material: Same material and thickness as door.
  - 6. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 7. Hardware: Latch.
- C. Exterior Flush Access Doors [AD-3]:
  - 1. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to be weatherproof and fit flush to frame. Provide manufacturer's standard 2-inch- thick fiberglass insulation and extruded door gaskets. Provide manufacturer's standard-width frame for surface mounting, proportional to door size.
  - 2. Locations: Wall.
  - 3. Door Size: As indicated on drawings.
  - 4. Stainless-Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.062 inch, 16 gage.
    - a. Finish: No. 4.
  - 5. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
  - 6. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 7. Hardware: Latch.
- D. Hardware:
  - 1. Latch: Self-latching bolt operated by screwdriver.

## 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M, with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 or A60 metallic coating.
- D. Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666, Type 304. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
- E. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063.
- F. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- G. Frame Anchors: Same material as door face.
- H. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish mounting holes, attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
  - 1. For concealed flanges with drywall bead, provide edge trim for gypsum panels securely attached to perimeter of frames.
  - 2. For concealed flanges with plaster bead for full-bed plaster applications, provide zinc-coated expanded-metal lath and exposed casing bead welded to perimeter of frames.
- D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling. Provide access sleeves for each latch operator and install in holes cut through finish.
  - 1. For recessed doors with plaster infill, provide self-furring expanded-metal lath attached to door panel.
- E. Latch and Lock Hardware:
  - 1. Quantity: Furnish number of latches and locks required to hold doors tightly closed.
  - 2. Keys: Furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.
- F. Aluminum: After fabrication, apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum that will come in contact with concrete.

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Painted Finishes: Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

1. Factory Primed: Apply manufacturer's standard, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
- E. Stainless Steel Finishes:
1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
  2. Polished Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
    - a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
    - b. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
  3. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 2B.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.

#### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Inspections:
  1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated access door in accordance with NFPA 80, section 5.2.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated access door indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.

**END OF SECTION 08 3113**

SECTION 08 41 13 – ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

- 1. Exterior storefront framing.
- 2. Exterior Storefront framing for window walls.
- 3. Exterior manual-swing entrance doors and door-frame units.

## B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 08 Section "Door Hardware" for hardware not specified herein.
- 2. Division 08 Section "Glazing" for glazing to be used per location.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA/ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disability Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."

## 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Aluminum-framed systems shall withstand the effects of the following performance requirements without exceeding performance criteria or failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction:
  - 1. Movements of supporting structure indicated on Drawings including, but not limited to, story drift and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
  - 2. Dimensional tolerances of building frame and other adjacent construction.
  - 3. Failure includes the following:
    - a. Deflection exceeding specified limits.
    - b. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
    - c. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movements to glazing.

- d. Glazing-to-glazing contact.
  - e. Noise or vibration created by wind and by thermal and structural movements.
  - f. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
  - g. Sealant failure.
  - h. Failure of operating units.
- B. Delegated Design: Design aluminum-framed systems, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Structural Loads:
  - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Basic Wind Speed: 99 mph.
    - b. Importance Factor: 1.0.
    - c. Exposure Category: C.
  - 2. Seismic Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members:
  - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane shall not exceed  $L/175$  of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to  $3/4$  inch, whichever is less.
  - 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to  $L/360$  of clear span or  $1/8$  inch, whichever is smaller.
- E. Structural-Test Performance: Provide aluminum-framed systems tested according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
  - 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
  - 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, and permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
  - 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not fewer than 10 seconds.
- F. Air Infiltration: Provide aluminum-framed systems with maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- G. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.



- H. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum-framed systems that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
  - 2. Test Performance: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
    - a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of 180 deg F.
    - b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: 0 deg F.
  - 3. Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F.
- I. Condensation Resistance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having condensation-resistance factor (CRF) of not less than 54 when tested according to AAMA 1503.
- J. Thermal Conductance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having an average U-factor of not more than 0.33 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F when tested according to AAMA 1503.
- K. Sound Transmission: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having the following sound-transmission characteristics:
  - 1. Sound Transmission Class (STC): Minimum 35 STC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 413.
  - 2. Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class (OITC): Minimum 30 OITC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 1332.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for aluminum-framed systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Include details of provisions for system expansion and contraction and for drainage of moisture in the system to the exterior.
  - 2. For entrance doors, include hardware schedule and indicate operating hardware types, functions, quantities, and locations.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied mill or clear anodized finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

- E. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed systems, made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
  - 1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
  - 2. Anchorage.
  - 3. Expansion provisions.
  - 4. Glazing.
  - 5. Flashing and drainage.
- F. Other Action Submittals:
  - 1. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.
- G. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of aluminum-framed systems.
  - 2. Include design calculations.
- H. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and testing agency.
- I. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For aluminum-framed systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
- J. Welding certificates.
- K. Preconstruction Test Reports: For sealant.
- L. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for aluminum-framed systems, indicating compliance with performance requirements.
- M. Source quality-control reports.
- N. Quality-Control Program for Structural-Sealant-Glazed System: Include reports.
- O. Field quality-control reports.
- P. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed systems to include in maintenance manuals.
- Q. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.
- C. Engineering Responsibility: Prepare data for aluminum-framed systems, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in systems similar to those indicated for this Project.
- D. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for systems' aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
  - 1. Do not revise intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If revisions are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- E. Accessible Entrances: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- F. Source Limitations for Aluminum-Framed Systems: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- G. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for aluminum-framed systems by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed systems that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration caused by thermal movements.

- c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - d. Adhesive or cohesive sealant failures.
  - e. Water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas.
  - f. Failure of operating components.
2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## 1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

### A. Entrance Door Hardware:

- 1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.
- 2. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide six months' full maintenance by skilled employees of entrance door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper entrance door hardware operation at rated speed and capacity. Provide parts and supplies the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: The design is based on the product named in the basis-of-design and within the Construction Drawings. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the other manufacturers specified and based on substitution request approval.
- B. See Div 01 Section 012500 for "Substitution Procedures".

### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Kawneer, Trifab VersaGlaze VG 451 SSC Framing System (Interior entrance) and Kawneer, Trifab VersaGlaze VG 451UT SSC (Ultra Thermal) Framing Systems (Exterior Entrance). and accessories to provide a complete entrance door system.
  - 1. System dimensions: 2-inch sightline x 4-1/2-inch frame depth.
  - 2. Glass: Center in frame, Exterior or Interior.
  - 3. Doors:

- a. 451 Framing System, Door 101A and 104A
  - b. 451UT Framing System, Doors 100A
- 4. Thermal Broken: Exterior window and window/door framing systems.
- 5. Non-Thermal Broken: Interior door framing systems.
- C. Manufactures: or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Arcadia Inc.
  - 2. EFCO Corporation.
  - 3. Thermal Windows, Inc.
  - 4. Wausau Window and Wall Systems.
  - 5. WinCo Window Company.

## 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
  - 1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
  - 2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
  - 3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
  - 4. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
  - 5. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.
- B. Color: Clear Anodized Aluminum
- C. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer, complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
  - 1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - 2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
  - 3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

## 2.4 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's standard extruded-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
  - 1. Construction: Thermally broken.
  - 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  - 3. Glazing Plane: Center.
- B. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with non-staining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, non-staining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
  2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
  3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- D. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- E. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, non-staining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- F. Framing System Gaskets and Sealants: Manufacturer's standard, recommended by manufacturer for joint type.

## 2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch- thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
    - a. Thermal Construction: High-performance plastic connectors separate aluminum members exposed to the exterior from members exposed to the interior.
  2. Door Design: Medium stile; 3-1/2-inch nominal width.
    - a. Medium Stile; 3-1/2inch nominal width
    - b. Accessible Doors: Smooth surfaced for width of door in area within 10 inches above floor or ground plane.
  3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
    - a. Provide non-removable glazing stops on outside of door.

## 2.6 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. General:
1. Entrance Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated and named manufacturers' products.
  2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
  3. Finish: Match Door Frame Finish.

4. Opening-Force Requirements:
  - a. Egress Doors Not more than 15lbf to release the latch and not more than 30 lbf to set the door in motion and not more than 15 lbf to open the door to its minimum required width.
  - b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf to fully open door.
- B. Hardware Sets: Provide Manufactures standard hardware and as specified in this section.
  1. Entrance Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color to be selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's full range of options and colors shall match frame color and named manufacturers' products complying with BHMA standard referenced.
- C. Opening-Force Requirements:
  1. Latches and Exit Devices: Not more than 15 lbf required to release latch.
- D. Continuous Hinges: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
  1. Continuous geared hinge with fasteners staggered at approximately 6-inches on center.
  2. Finish: To match color of door frame.
- E. Mortise Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.
- F. Panic Exit Devices: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1, listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.
- G. Cylinders: As specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
- H. Strikes: Provide strike with black-plastic dust box for each latch or lock bolt; fabricated for aluminum framing.
- I. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6.
- J. Closers: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1, with accessories required for a complete installation, sized as required by door size, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use; adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.
- K. Door-Stops: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, floor or wall mounted, as appropriate for door location indicated, with integral rubber bumper.
- L. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.
  1. Compression Type: Made of ASTM D 2000, molded neoprene, or ASTM D 2287, molded PVC.
  2. Sliding Type: AAMA 701, made of wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile with nylon-fabric or aluminum-strip backing.

- M. Weather Sweeps: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.
- N. Silencers: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- O. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21, raised thresholds beveled with a slope of not more than 1:2, with maximum height of 1/2 inch. ADA and ICC/ANSI A117.1-2003 compliant.
- P. Finger Guards: Manufacturer's standard collapsible neoprene or PVC gasket anchored to frame hinge-jamb at center-pivoted doors.

## 2.7 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Joint Sealants: For installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems, as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied, asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos; formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Framing Members, General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
  - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
  - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
  - 3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
  - 4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
  - 5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
  - 6. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior.
  - 7. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using shear-block system and head-and-sill-receptor system with shear blocks at intermediate horizontal members.
- F. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.



1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
  2. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.
- G. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
  2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- H. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- I. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

## 2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Do not install damaged components.
  3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
  4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
  5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration.
  6. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Protection:
1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or applying sealant or tape, or by installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.

2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
- D. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.
- E. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades, and without warp or rack.
- F. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
  1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
  2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.
- G. Install perimeter joint sealants as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.

### 3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Install aluminum-framed systems to comply with the following maximum erection tolerances:
  1. Location and Plane: Limit variation from true location and plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/4 inch over total length.
  2. Alignment:
    - a. Where surfaces a-but in line, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
    - b. Where surfaces meet at corners, limit offset from true alignment to 1/32 inch.
- B. Diagonal Measurements: Limit difference between diagonal measurements to 1/8 inch.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating entrance door hardware to function smoothly as recommended by manufacturer.
  1. For entrance doors accessible to people with disabilities, adjust closers to provide a 3-second closer sweep period for doors to move from a 70-degree open position to 3 inches from the latch, measured to the leading door edge.

## END OF SECTION 08 4113

## SECTION 084523 - FIBERGLASS-SANDWICH-PANEL ASSEMBLIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the insulated sandwich panel system and accessories as shown and specified. Work includes providing and installing:
  - 1. Wall assemblies
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim".
  - 2. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants".

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit manufacturer's product data. Include construction details, material descriptions, profiles and finishes of components.
- B. Submit shop drawings. Include plans, elevations and details.
- C. Submit manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available for factory finished aluminum.
  - 1. When requested, submit samples for each exposed finish required, in same thickness and material indicated for the work and in size indicated below. If finishes involve normal color variations, include sample sets consisting of two or more units showing the full range of variations expected.
    - a. Sandwich panels: 14" x 28" units
    - b. Factory finished aluminum: 5" long sections
- D. Submit Installer Certificate, signed by installer, certifying compliance with project qualification requirements.
- E. Submit product reports from a qualified independent testing agency indicating each type and class of panel system complies with the project performance requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products. Previously completed reports will be acceptable if for current manufacturer and indicative of products used on this project.
  - 1. Reports required (if applicable) are:
    - a. International Building Code Evaluation Report (AC 177)
    - b. Flame Spread and Smoke Developed (UL 723) – Submit UL Card

- c. Burn Extent (ASTM D 635)
- d. Color Difference (ASTM D 2244)
- e. Impact Strength (UL 972)
- f. Bond Tensile Strength (ASTM C 297 after aging by ASTM D 1037)
- g. Bond Shear Strength (ASTM D 1002)
- h. Beam Bending Strength (ASTM E 72)
- i. Insulation U-Factor (NFRC 100)
- j. NFRC System U-Factor Certification (NFRC 700)
- k. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (NFRC or Calculations)
- l. Condensation Resistance Factor (AAMA 1503) (Thermally Broken only)
- m. Air Leakage (ASTM E 283)
- n. Structural Performance (ASTM E 330)
- o. Water Penetration (ASTM E 331)
- p. 1200°F Fire Resistance (SWRI)
- q. ASTM E1886/1996 or TAS 201, 202 and 203 (Optional-Windborne Debris)
- r. Performance for Windows (AAMA/WDMA/CSA-101/I.S.2/A440) (Optional)
- s. Fall Through Resistance (ASTM E 661) (Optional)
- t. Class A Roof Covering Burning Brand (ASTM E 108) (Roof/Skylight only)
- u. UL Listed Class A Roof System (UL 790) (Optional) – Submit UL Card

### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide field maintenance manual to include in project maintenance manuals.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications:

- 1. Material and products shall be manufactured by a company continuously and regularly employed in the manufacture of specified materials for a period of at least ten consecutive years and which can show evidence of those materials being satisfactorily used on at least six projects of similar size, scope and location. At least three of the projects shall have been in successful use for ten years or longer.
- 2. Panel system must be listed by an ANSI accredited Evaluation Service, which requires quality control inspections and fire, structural and water infiltration testing of sandwich panel systems by an accredited agency.
- 3. Quality control inspections shall be conducted at least once each year and shall include manufacturing facilities, sandwich panel components and production sandwich panels for conformance with AC177 "Translucent Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Faced Panel Wall" as issued by the ICC-ES.

- B. Installer's Qualifications: Installation shall be by an experienced installer, which has been in the business of installing specified panel systems for at least two consecutive years and can show evidence of satisfactory completion of projects of similar size, scope and type.

### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. The manufacturer shall be responsible for the configuration and fabrication of the complete panel system.
  - 1. When requested, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 2. Standard panel system shall have less than 0.01 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> air leakage by ASTM E 283 at 6.24 PSF (50 mph) and no water penetration by ASTM E 331 at 15 PSF; and structural testing by ASTM E 330.
  - 3. Structural Loads (Wall Assemblies).
    - a. Basic Wind Velocity (3 Second Gust): 115mph.
    - b. Exposure Type: C
    - c. Clear-span at 25 PSF wind pressure.
- B. Windborne Debris Impact Resistance Performance (Optional):
  - 1. Translucent panels must be impact-resistant meeting the requirements of an approved impact-resisting standard: ASTM E 1996 and ASTM E 1886 or TAS 201, 202 and 203.
  - 2. Panel System designed to meet Large Missile D per ASTM E 1996.
- C. Deflection Limits:
  - 1. Wall Panel Assemblies: Limited to L/60 of clear span for each assembly component.

### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver panel system, components and materials in manufacturer's standard protective packaging.
- B. Store panels on the long edge; several inches above the ground, blocked and under cover in accordance with manufacturer's storage and handling instructions.

### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturer's and installer's written warranty agreeing to repair or replace panel system work, which fails in materials or workmanship within one year from the date of delivery. Failure of materials or workmanship shall include excessive deflection, deterioration of finish on metal in excess of normal weathering, defects in accessories, insulated translucent sandwich panels and other components of the work.
- B. Extended Manufacturer's factory applied Finish Warranty: 10 years from date of delivery.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. The **Basis-of-Design** for this specification is for products manufactured by Kalwall Corporation. Other manufacturers may bid this project subject to compliance with the performance requirements of this specification and submission of evidence thereof. Listing other manufacturers' names in this specification does not constitute approval of their products or relieve them of compliance with all the performance requirements contained herein.
- B. Kalwall Corporation, Tel: (800) 258-9777 – Fax: (603) 627-7905 – Email: info@kalwall.com
- C. Substitution Produces Section 01 2500 submitted prior to bid opening for Architect review.

## 2.2 PANEL COMPONENTS

- A. Face Sheets:
  - 1. Translucent faces: Manufactured from glass fiber reinforced thermoset resins, formulated specifically for architectural use.
    - a. Thermoplastic (e.g. polycarbonate, acrylic) faces are not acceptable.
    - b. Face sheets shall not deform, deflect or drip when subjected to fire or flame.
  - 2. Interior face sheets:
    - a. Flame spread: Underwriters Laboratories (UL) listed, which requires periodic unannounced retesting, with flame spread rating no greater than 50 smoke developed no greater than 250 when tested in accordance with UL 723.
    - b. Burn extent by ASTM D 635 shall be no greater than 1".
  - 3. Exterior face sheets:
    - a. Color stability: Full thickness of the exterior face sheet shall not change color more than 3 CIE Units DELTA E by ASTM D 2244 after 5 years outdoor South Florida weathering at 5° facing south, determined by the average of at least three white samples with and without a protective film or coating to ensure long-term color stability. Color stability shall be unaffected by abrasion or scratching.
    - b. Strength: Exterior face sheet shall be uniform in strength, impenetrable by handheld pencil and repel an impact minimum of 70 ft. lbs. without fracture or tear when impacted by a 3-1/4" diameter, 5 lb. free-falling ball per UL 972.
    - c. Strength: Exterior face sheet shall be uniform in strength, with panel meeting ASTM E1996 and ASTM E1886 or TAS 201, 202 and 203.
    - d. Erosion Protection: Integral, embedded-glass erosion barrier.
  - 4. Appearance:
    - a. Exterior face sheet: Smooth, White in color.
    - b. Interior face sheet: Smooth, White in color.
    - c. Face sheets shall not vary more than  $\pm 10\%$  in thickness and be uniform in color.

## B. Grid Core:

1. Thermally Broken Composite I-beam grid core shall be of 6063-T6 or 6005-T5 alloy and temper with provisions for mechanical interlocking of muntin-mullion and perimeter. Width of I-beam shall be no less than 7/16".
2. I-beam Thermal break: Minimum 1", thermoset fiberglass composite.

## 2.3 PANEL CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide sandwich panels of flat fiberglass reinforced translucent face sheets laminated to a grid core of mechanically interlocking I-beams. The adhesive bonding line shall be straight, cover the entire width of the I-beam and have a neat, sharp edge.
1. Thickness: 2-3/4 inches.
  2. Light transmission: 22% to 25%
  3. Solar heat-gain coefficient no greater than 0.25.
  4. Panel U-factor by NFRC certified laboratory:
    - a. 2-3/4" thermally broken grid U-value 0.23 (R-value 4.35)
  5. Grid pattern: Pattern as shown on Translucent Wall Panel elevations. See drawings.
- B. Standard panels shall deflect no more than 1.9" at 30 PSF in 10'-0" span without a supporting frame by ASTM E 72.
- C. Standard panels shall withstand 1200° F fire for minimum one hour without collapse or exterior flaming.
- D. Thermally broken panels: Minimum Condensation Resistance Factor of 80 by AAMA 1503 measured on the bond line.

## 2.4 BATTENS AND PERIMETER CLOSURE SYSTEM

- A. Closure system (Wall):
1. Thermally Broken extruded aluminum 6063-T6 and 6063-T5 alloy and temper clamp-tite screw type closure system.
- B. Sealing tape: Manufacturer's standard, pre-applied to closure system at the factory under controlled conditions.
- C. Fasteners: 300 series stainless steel screws for aluminum closures, excluding final fasteners to the building.
- D. Finish:
1. Manufacturer's factory applied finish, which meets the performance requirements of AAMA 2604. Color to be White.
  2. Anodized

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer shall examine substrates, supporting structure and installation conditions.
- B. Do not proceed with panel installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Metal Protection:
  - 1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
  - 2. Where aluminum will contact concrete, masonry or pressure treated wood, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint or method recommended by manufacturer.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install the panel system in accordance with the manufacturer's suggested installation recommendations and approved shop drawings.
  - 1. Anchor component parts securely in place by permanent mechanical attachment system.
  - 2. Install to accommodate thermal and mechanical movements.
  - 3. Set perimeter framing in a full bed of sealant compound, or with joint fillers or gaskets to provide weather-tight construction.
- B. Install joint sealants at perimeter joints and within the panel system in accordance with manufacturers suggested installation instructions.

#### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean the panel system interior and exterior, immediately after installation.
- B. Refer to manufacturer's written recommendations.

**END OF SECTION 084523**



SECTION 08 7100 - DOOR HARDWARE

## PART 1 – GENERAL

## 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Hardware for swinging, sliding, and folding doors except special types of unique and non-matching hardware specified in other sections.

## 1.02 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 08 11 00 - Steel Doors and Frames
- B. Section 08 21 00 - Flush Wood Doors
- C. Section 08 41 00 - Metal Frame Storefronts
- D. Division 26 – Electrical
- E. Division 28 – Fire Alarm/Detection

## 1.03 REFERENCES

- A. ADA - Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 including Accessibility Guidelines as amended by the D.O.J. September 15, 2010, as adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
- B. ANSI A117.1 - Buildings and Facilities - Providing Accessibility and Usability for Physically Handicapped People.
- C. ANSI/BHMA A156 (.1 through .21)
- D. ANSI/DHI – A115.1G Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware.
- E. NFPA 80 - Fire Doors and Windows.
- F. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
- G. IBC - International Building Code, as adopted by public Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).
- H. State and local Rules and Regulations for Barrier Free Facilities, as adopted by AHJ.

## 1.04 DOOR HARDWARE TYPES

- A. Types of finish hardware required include, but is not necessarily limited to, the following:
  - 1. Pivot sets and intermediate pivots.
  - 2. Hinges.
  - 3. Lock cylinders.
  - 4. Keys, keying, and key control.
  - 5. Locksets, latchsets, and privacy sets.
  - 6. Exit devices.
  - 7. Closers.
  - 8. Mullions.
  - 9. Overhead, wall, and floor stops.
  - 10. Protection plates.
  - 11. Gasketing for exterior and interior doors, as required.
  - 12. Door holders.
  - 13. Door bottoms.
  - 14. Thresholds.
  - 15. Silencers.

- B. Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware is indicated elsewhere in this section or in the Door Hardware Schedule at the end of this section. Refer to Part 2 Products for Manufacturer's identification and allowable substitutions.

#### 1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Under provisions of Section 01 34 00, submit the following:
  - 1. Product information: Manufacturer's published technical product data for all specified door hardware items indicating compliance with the requirements.
  - 2. Hardware Schedule:
    - a. Hardware schedules are intended for the Contractor's coordination of the work. Review and acceptance by the Architect or Owner does not relieve the Contractor of his exclusive responsibility to fulfill the requirements as shown and specified.
    - b. Submit hardware schedule in the manner and format as specified, complying with the actual construction progress schedule requirements for each draft. Include the following information:
      - 1) Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, codes, at the like, including door handing.
      - 2) Type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
      - 3) Door and frame sizes and materials cross referenced to the Architect's marks in the door schedule.
      - 4) Room identification (name and number) on each side of door opening as indicated on the drawings.
      - 5) Product name, model number, description, and name of manufacturer of each item.
      - 6) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
      - 7) Locations of hardware cross referenced to architectural floor plans and door schedules.
      - 8) Mounting heights and locations of each type of hardware.
  - 3. Key Schedule:
    - a. Require qualified representative of the hardware supplier to personally meet with the Owner and obtain the Owner's written key requirements.
    - b. Include a separate key schedule, showing clearly how the Owner's instructions on keying of locks has been fulfilled.
  - 4. Samples: Upon request, submit actual material samples of items indicated as for color selection.
  - 5. Templates: Hardware supplier will furnish hardware templates to the Contractor for each fabricator of doors, frames, and other work to be shop prepared or factory prepared for the installation of hardware. Upon request check shop drawings of such other work, to conform that adequate provisions are made for proper location and installation of hardware.
  - 6. Provide electrical operation technical sheets including product schematics, point to point diagrams, and electrical requirements of all electrified hardware. Completely coordinate with the general contractor, electrical engineer, electrician, security access subcontractor and the installer. Operational descriptions are for demonstration only – verify operational intent with the owner, architect and electrical engineer.
- B. Under provisions of Section 01 70 00, submit the following:
  - 1. Product information.

2. Hardware schedule.
3. Manufacturer's published operation and maintenance data. Include data on operating hardware, lubrication requirements, and inspection procedures related to preventative maintenance.
4. Tools and extra materials as required.
5. Manufacturer's warranties, revised to meet criteria as established within this section. Warranties shall commence upon acceptance of the building by the owner.
6. Provide physical samples as requested in writing.

#### 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

##### A. Acceptable Designs:

1. Items specified in this section are products which are of acceptable design.
2. Do not substitute other products without Architect's written prior approval per Section 01600. Requests for approval shall be submitted by factory authorized distributor firms representing the products proposed for substitution.

##### B. Qualifications:

1. Manufacturer: Manufacturers named in Part 2 of this section with not less than 5 years experience in manufacturing commercial door hardware of the type indicated.
2. Hardware Supplier:
  - a. A recognized architectural finish hardware supplier who has been furnishing hardware in the same state as the project for a period of not less than 5 years.
  - b. Hardware supplier's organization shall include an experienced Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC), certified by the Door and Hardware Institute (DHI), who is physically available, at reasonable times during the course of the work, for consultation about project's hardware requirements, to Owner, Architect and Contractor. Mail or telephone correspondence is not acceptable.
  - c. Hardware supplier shall have local warehousing facilities and shall maintain an adequate parts inventory of items supplied for future service to the owner. Supplier will be a factory authorized distributor of all hardware specified.
3. Installer: Company specializing in installing work of this section with not less than 3 years experience and acceptable to the manufacturer and the hardware supplier. Maintain regular work force of qualified personnel, trained, skilled, and experienced in installing door hardware and constant, competent supervision. The hardware installer shall meet with the representatives of the general contractor and hardware supplier to jointly inventory all hardware items. Upon satisfactory inventory of products, the hardware installer accepts responsibility for all hardware items inventoried.

##### C. Regulatory Requirements:

1. Provide hardware for fire rated openings, whether specified or not, in compliance with NFPA Standard No. 80 and local building code requirements. Provide only hardware which has been tested and listed by UL or FM for types and sizes of doors required and complies with requirements of door and door frame labels. Label hardware, as required, for compliance with pressure testing criteria as dictated in IBC.
2. Provide hardware which meets or exceeds handicap accessibility per local building code requirements. Conform to the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) of 1990 as amended by the D.O.J. September 15, 2010, as adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ).

##### D. Warranties:

1. Provide warranty periods that meet or exceed periods noted. Manufacturers that do not meet the required warranty periods shall supply a written statement on the manufacturer's

letterhead that the products will be warranted for the required period. All warranty periods commence upon the date of Owner's occupancy with no exceptions.

#### 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING, AND PROTECTION

- A. Deliver, store, handle, and protect products to project site under provisions of Section 01 60 00 and as specified herein.
- B. Require hardware supplier to:
  - 1. Tag each item or package separately, with identification related to final hardware schedule.
  - 2. Include manufacturer's basic installation instructions with each item or package.
  - 3. As material is received by hardware supplier from various manufacturers, sort and repackage in containers with each item clearly marked with appropriate opening numbers to match the approved hardware schedule. Two or more identical items may be packed in the same container.
  - 4. Deliver individually packaged hardware items at the proper times to the proper locations (shop or project site) for installation.
  - 5. Inventory hardware jointly with representatives of the general contractor, hardware supplier and the hardware installer until each is satisfied that count is correct. Refer to paragraph 1.6-B-3.
- C. Protect hardware from theft by cataloging and storing in a secure and lockable area. Control the handling and installation of hardware items which are not immediately replaceable, so that the completion of the work will not be delayed by hardware losses, both before and after installation. Replace lost, missing, damaged, or stolen door hardware items at no additional cost to the Owner as required to meet schedule requirements.

#### 1.08 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate work of this section with the work of other sections of work.
- B. Furnish hardware templates to each fabricator of doors, frames, and other work to be shop or factory prepared for the installation of hardware.
- C. Verify completeness and suitability of door hardware with the hardware supplier and the hardware installer.

#### 1.09 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

- A. Furnish to Owner a complete set of special wrenches and tools applicable to each different or special hardware component as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, removal, and replacement of door hardware.
- B. Tools and accessories shall be supplied by the hardware component manufacturer.

### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION

- A. General:
  - 1. Provide all door hardware for complete work, in accordance with the drawings and as specified herein.

2. Quantities listed, in any instance, are for the Contractor's convenience only and are not guaranteed.
  3. Provide items and quantities not specifically mentioned to ensure a proper and complete operational installation. Match the quality and finish of items specified.
  4. Provide miscellaneous hardware as listed in hardware groups.
- B. Hand of door: Drawings show direction of slide, swing or hand of each door leaf. Door schedule indicates door and frame sizes, materials, required fire ratings, and other pertinent information. Furnish each item of hardware for proper installation and operation of door movement as indicated.
- C. Manufacturer's Name Plate: Do not use manufacturer's products which have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location (omit removable name plates), except in conjunction with required UL or FM labels and as otherwise acceptable to the Architect. Manufacturer's identification will be permitted on rim of lock cylinders and latch faceplates only.
- D. Base Metals: Produce hardware units of basic metal and forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper and hardness, but in no case of lesser (commercially recognized) quality than specified for applicable hardware units by applicable ANSI A156 series standard for each type hardware item and with ANSI A156.18 for finish designations indicated. Do not furnish "optional" materials or forming methods for those indicated, except as otherwise specified.
- E. Fasteners: Provide hardware manufactured to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation. Do not provide hardware which has been prepared for self tapping sheet metal screws, except as specifically indicated.
1. Screws: Furnish screws for installation, with each hardware item. Provide Phillips flat head screws except as otherwise indicated. Finish exposed (exposed under any condition) screws to match hardware finish or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finishes of such other work as closely as possible, including "prepared for paint" in surfaces to receive painted finish.
  2. Concealed Fasteners: Provide concealed fasteners for hardware units which are exposed when door is closed, except to extent no standard units of type specified are available with concealed fasteners. Do not use thru-bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed in other work, except where it is not feasible to adequately reinforce the work. In such cases, provide sleeves for each thru-bolt or use sex screw fasteners.

## 2.02 HINGES

- A. Manufacturer:
1. Listed in Door Hardware Schedule: Stanley
  2. Substitutions: Hager, McKinney, Ives
- B. Templates: Except for hinges and pivots to be installed entirely (both leaves) into wood doors and frames, provide only template produced units.
- C. Screws: Furnish Phillips flat head or machine screws for installation of units, except furnish Phillips flat head or wood screws for installation of units into wood. Finish screw heads to match surface of hinges.
- D. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, provide hinge pins as follows:
1. Steel Hinges: Steel pins.
  2. Non-ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins.
  3. Exterior doors: Non removable pins.

- 4. Reverse bevel interior doors (lockable): Non removable pins.
- 5. Interior doors: Non rising pins.
- E. Pin Tips: Flat button and matching plug, finished to match leaves.
- F. Number of Hinges: Provide number of hinges indicated, but not less than 3 hinges per door leaf for doors 90" or less in height and one additional hinge for each 30" of additional height.
- G. Butt type hinges are to be warranted for a period of five years.

## 2.03 LOCK CYLINDERS

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Listed in Door Hardware Schedule: Sargent
  - 2. Substitutions: Best, Dorma
- B. All lock cylinders shall be equipped with 7-pin tumbler interchangeable core lock cylinders. The interchangeable core shall be removable by a special control key. The control key shall have no cuts in common with grandmaster keys which operate with a shear line completely independent from the shear line of the grandmaster, master, and operating keys. All cores shall have a special limited keyway and shall be removable without removing the cylinder, knob, or core housing of any type lock or lockset. The removable core shall be instantly interchangeable without modification for use in any lock throughout the system. Provide brass construction cores for the construction period. Plastic construction cores are not acceptable. Construction cores shall remain the property of the hardware supplier and will be returned upon incorporation of the permanent key system.
- C. Construct lock cylinder parts from brass/bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver.

## 2.04 KEYS, KEYING, AND KEY CONTROL

- A. Keys:
  - 1. Material: Provide keys of nickel silver only.
  - 2. Quantities: These quantities are to establish a maximum allowable quantity of cut keys to service the project and may not necessarily be assigned as noted. A lesser quantity of cut keys required will not result in any credits, nor a quantity of uncut keys to be issued unless noted otherwise.
    - a. 3 change keys per each cylinder unit.
    - b. 4 master keys per master.
    - d. 2 grandmaster keys.
    - e. 2 construction control keys.
    - f. 2 permanent control keys.
    - g. 20 construction keys.
  - 3. Deliver keys to the Owner's representative: Send masterkeys to the Owner via U.S. registered mail direct from hardware supplier or manufacturer.
- B. Keying:
  - 1. Comply with Owner's written instructions for masterkeying and, except as otherwise indicated, provide individual change keys for each lock which is not designated to be keyed alike with a group of related locks.
  - 2. Grandmaster key all cylinder items to coordinate with the Owner's instructions and the new patented masterkey system. Allow for expansion. Permanently inscribe each key with the notation "DO NOT DUPLICATE".
- C. Key Control:

1. Provide a key control system including envelopes, labels, tags with self-locking key clips, receipt forms, 3-way visible card index, temporary markers, permanent markers, and standard metal cabinet, all as recommended by the system manufacturer, with capacity for 150% of the number of locks required for the project.
2. Provide a hinged panel type cabinet, for wall mounting, Telkee AWC-150S or equal.
3. Provide cylinder units with concealed key control and keys with visual key control.

#### 2.05 LOCKSETS, LATCHSETS, AND PRIVACY SETS:

- A. Manufacturer:
  1. Listed in Door Hardware Schedule: Sargent
  2. Substitutions: Dorma, Sargent
- B. Types: Locksets, latchsets, and privacy sets as indicated in Door Hardware Schedule.
- C. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard wrought box strike for each latch or lock bolt. Provide dust-proof strikes for foot bolts, except where not available. At these locations, provide manufacturer's standard recessed strike. Provide roller type strikes where recommended by lock, latch or bolt manufacturer.
- D. Lock Throw: Provide 3/4" minimum throw of mortise type latches and deadbolts used. Comply with UL requirements for throw of bolts and latch bolts on rated fire openings.
- E. Locks and latches shall be warranted for a period of five years.

#### 2.06 EXIT DEVICES AND MULLIONS

- A. Manufacturer:
  1. Listed in Door Hardware Schedule: Sargent
  2. Substitutions: Precision, Von Duprin
- B. Provide risers, as needed, to prevent interference with door glazing kits.
- C. Provide spacers as needed for proper application of removable mullions on narrow stop type frames.
- D. Exit devices and related hardware shall be warranted for a period of five years.

#### 2.07 CLOSERS

- A. Manufacturer:
  1. Listed in Door Hardware Schedule: LCN 4041 XP
  2. Substitutions: Stanley QDC1, Norton 7500
- B. Size of Units: Except as otherwise specifically indicated, comply with the manufacturer's recommendations for size of door control unit, depending on the size of the door, exposure to weather and anticipated frequency of use.
- C. Provide manufacturer's standard through bolt attachment at all applications.
- D. Arms:
  1. Provide parallel arms for all overhead closers, except as otherwise indicated. Provide drop plates as needed to prevent glazing interference.
- E. Mount all closers to the maximum allowable degree of opening by the closer manufacturer's template. Where closer arms incorporate dead stop features, mount closers to the maximum degree of opening available before conflict with adjacent structures. If not apparent on the contract documents, verify the use of open space with the Architect or Owner's Representative to determine the maximum allowable degree of opening.

- F. Access Free Manual Closers: Where manual closers are indicated for doors required to be accessible to the physically handicapped, provide adjustable units complying with ANSI A117.1 provisions for door opening force. Fire protection has precedence over handicap compatibility, check with local jurisdiction.
- G. Door closers and related hardware shall be warranted for a period of ten years.

## 2.08 WALL, FLOOR AND OVERHEAD STOPS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Listed in Door Hardware Schedule: Trimco
  - 2. Substitutions: Rockwood, Hager
  - 3. Overhead stops will be as manufactured by ABH. Equal products by Rixson are acceptable.
- B. General: Except as otherwise indicated, provide stops (wall, floor or overhead) at each leaf of every swinging door leaf.
- C. Import products lesser in quality than the specified items are not acceptable.

## 2.09 PROTECTION PLATES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Listed in Door Hardware Schedule: Trimco
  - 2. Substitutions: Rockwood, Hager, Tice
- B. Types: Armor Plates, Kick Plates, Mop Plates
- C. Fasteners: Provide manufacturer's standard exposed Phillips head fasteners for door trim units; either machine screws or self tapping sheet metal type screws per manufacturer's recommendations for application to the specified door construction.
- D. Sizes: Fabricate protection plates (armor, kick or mop) not more than 2" less than door width on stop side and not more than 1" less than door width on pull side, x the height indicated.
- F. Metal Plates: Stainless Steel, 18 gauge (0.050) thick. Satin finish, US32D (630), beveled four edges (B4E).

## 2.10 GASKETS AND SWEEPS

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Listed in Door Hardware Schedule: Pemko
  - 2. Substitutions: National Guard, Reese
- B. General: Except as otherwise indicated, provide continuous weatherstripping at each edge of every exterior door leaf. Provide type, sizes and profiles indicated as drawn or scheduled.
- C. Fasteners: Provide non-corrosive fasteners as recommended by the manufacturer for applications indicated.
- D. Replaceable seal strips: Provide only those units where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by the manufacturer.
- E. Perimeter weatherstripping: Flexible, hollow neoprene bulb or loop insert, conforming to MIL R 6055, Class II, Grade 40. Where two types of perimeter gaskets are specified, apply them not to conflict and per gasket manufacturer's recommendations.
- F. Weatherstripping at Door Bottoms: Provide door bottoms consisting of contact type resilient insert and metal housing of design and size indicated.
- G. Hot smoke seal, if required by IBC and subsequent UL testing procedures, will be supplied as an integral part of the door assembly by the door manufacturer.



H. Gaskets and sweeps shall be warranted for a period of three years.

#### 2.11 THRESHOLDS

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Listed in Door Hardware Schedule: Pemko
  - 2. Substitutions: National Guard, Reese
- B. Except as otherwise indicated provide standard metal threshold unit of type, size and profile as detailed or scheduled. All thresholds will be supplied with the Pemkote abrasive finish unless noted otherwise.
- C. Where there is conflict between scheduled thresholds and details, details shall have precedence. Revise details only if necessary to comply with handicap accessibility requirements. Notify the Architect of such required modifications.
- D. Verify threshold details or conditions at all openings to ensure that the openings receive proper applications for weather seal or floor transition whether specified or not.
- E. Thresholds and related items shall be warranted for a period of three years, abrasive coatings shall be warranted for a period of ten years.

#### 2.12 SILENCERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Listed in Door Hardware Schedule: Trimco
  - 2. Substitutions: Rockwood, Ives

#### 2.13 FINISHES

- A. Exposed surfaces of hardware shall be Brushed Chrome (US26D, 626, 652), unless otherwise indicated. Items specified in Satin Stainless Steel (US32D, 630) shall be supplied in stainless steel with no exceptions.
- B. The designations used in the schedule and elsewhere to indicate hardware finishes are the industry recognized standard commercial finishes common to the product's manufacturer listed.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine and verify that substrates and project site conditions are ready to receive work of this section.
- B. Do not begin installation until finishes indicated to be field applied have been applied to doors, frames, and similar items requiring project site finishing and are thoroughly dry and cured.
- C. Do not begin installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected in a manner acceptable to the installer. Beginning installation means installer accepts project site conditions and substrates as ready to receive work of this section.

#### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. General: The types and approximate quantities of door hardware required for this project are indicated at the end of this section.
- B. Key Cabinet: Installation will be done by the owner.
- C. Heights: Mount hardware units at heights indicated in "Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames" by the Door and Hardware Institute, except as specifically indicated or required to comply with governing regulations, and except as may be otherwise directed by the Architect.
- D. Substrates: Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation of hardware.
- E. Installation:
  - 1. Install each hardware item in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions, as adopted by local jurisdiction, requirements of NFPA 80, NFPA 101, IBC, ADA, State and local Rules and Regulations for Barrier Free Facilities and recommendations of the DHI.
  - 2. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce the attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
  - 3. Drill and countersink units which are not factory prepared for fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors in accordance with industry standards.
  - 4. Where not factory machined, machine cut for hardware per template, as required.
  - 5. Cut and fit thresholds and floor covers to profile of door frames. Join units with concealed welds. Cut smooth openings for spindles, bolts, or similar items. Screw thresholds to substrate with the manufacturer's standard flat head sleeve anchor (FHSL), 1/4-20 x 2" unless noted otherwise. Fill cavities of thresholds at sound rated openings with 1 inch thick (uncompressed thickness) low density fiberglass sill sealer insulation full width and length of the threshold. In addition to fastening requirements, set thresholds for exterior doors in a full bed of butyl-rubber or polyisobutylene mastic sealant.
  - 6. Do not install hardware which is incomplete or apparently improper for application. Notify the hardware supplier immediately of any such deficiencies. Failure to comply with this requirement indicates the hardware installer's acceptance of responsibility for proper application and performance.
- F. Cutting and Patching:

Wherever cutting and fitting is required to install hardware onto or into surfaces which are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage and reinstallation or application of surface protections with finishing work specified in the Division-9 sections.
- G. Where electronics are specified for integration with the security access system, operation notes are for opening options that may or may not be utilized by the owner. Consult with the owner and security access subcontractor for final operation parameters.

### 3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment:
  - 1. Adjust and check each operating item of hardware and each door, to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Adjust resilient faced sound stops for continuous contact with door and threshold. Adjust weatherstripping and sweeps to completely seal doors with frames and to adjacent structures.
  - 2. Replace units which cannot be adjusted to operate freely and smoothly as intended for the application made.
- B. Final Adjustment: Wherever hardware installation is made more than one month prior to acceptance or occupancy of a space or area, return to the work during the week prior to acceptance or occupancy, and make final check and adjustment of all hardware items in

such space or area. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish of hardware and doors. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment.

### 3.04 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Instruct Owner's personnel in proper adjustment and maintenance of hardware and hardware finishes, during the final adjustment of hardware.

### 3.05 CLEANING AND DEBRIS

- A. Cleaning:
  1. Clean work upon installation.
  2. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by work of this section.
- B. Debris: Remove debris from project site and legally dispose of off-site.

### 3.06 MAINTENANCE

- A. Approximately six months after the acceptance of hardware in each area, the hardware installer shall:
  1. Return to the project and re-adjust every item of hardware to restore proper function of doors and hardware.
  2. Consult with and instruct Owner's personnel in recommended additions to the maintenance procedures.
  3. Replace hardware items which have deteriorated or failed due to faulty design, materials or installation of hardware units.
  4. Prepare a written report of current and predictable problems (of substantial nature) in the performance of the hardware and submit to the Architect.

### 3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Protect work of this section as required so that work will be without damage or deterioration at the time of completion and acceptance by the Owner.

### 3.08 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

#### Manufacturer's Abbreviations

BE	Best Access Systems	Mortise Locks, Latches, Privacy Sets
HS	HES	Electric Strikes
PE	Pemko	Gaskets, Weatherstrip, Thresholds
PR	Precision	Exit devices and Mullions
SN	Securitron	Power Supplies
LC	LCN	Closers, Hinges
TK	Telkee	Key Cabinet
TR	Trimco	Stops, Latch Guards, Flat Goods
DE	Delaney	Barn Door Hardware

## Finish Codes

626	Brushed Chrome
652	Brushed Chrome
630	Satin Stainless Steel
628	Clear Aluminum
689	Painted Aluminum
-	Black
-	GREY

Miscellaneous – supply in addition to the specified hardware

2	Door Closers	QDC111 Tri-packed	689	ST
6	Combinated Cores	1C-7 PATD	626	BE
1	Key Cabinet	AWC-150S		TK

## 3.09 DOOR HARDWARE GROUPS

## SET #01 101A (ENTRY 101), 101B (ENTRY 101) &amp; 110A (HALL 110):

1	Continuous Hinge	661HD	628	ST
1	Exit Device	2403 CD	630	PR
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
1	Door Pull	1191-4 Type N Mounting	630	TR
*1	Electric Strike	9500 x 2005M3 Smart Pac	630	HS
1	Closer/Stop	4041 XP	689	LC
1	Threshold	171 A FHSL14SS		PE
*1	Power Supply	BPS-24-1		SN
Perimeter gaskets by door manufacturer. Card reader by security access. Verify threshold per 2.11-C.				

## SET #02 109B (BREAK 109):

1	Continuous Hinge	661HD	628	ST
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
1	Door Pull	1191-4 Type N Mounting	630	TR
*1	Electric Strike	9500 x 2005M3 Smart Pac	630	HS
1	Closer/Stop	4041 XP	689	LC
1	Threshold	171 A FHSL14SS		PE
*1	Power Supply	BPS-24-1		SN
Perimeter gaskets by door manufacturer. Card reader by security access. Verify threshold per 2.11-C.				

## SET #03 107A (Fire Riser 107):

3	Hinges	FBB199 4 1/2 X 4 1/2 NRP	630	ST
1	Flush Bolt	3917-12	626	TR

1	Lockset	9K3-7D15D PATD	626	BE
1	Lock Guard	5002	630	TR
1	HD Wall Stops	1277/79	626	TR
1	Rain Drip	346 C FHW		PE
1	Perimeter Gasket	S44 D		PE
1	Perimeter Gasket	S773 D		PE
1	Door Bottoms	315 CN TKSP8		PE
1	Threshold	171 A FHSL14SS		PE

## SET #04 102A (MEN) &amp; 103A (WOMEN):

3	Hinges	FB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	652	ST
1	Privacy Set	9K3-0L15D	626	BE
1	Door Closer	4041 XP	689	LC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CS	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW B4E CS	630	TR
1	Wall Stop	1270WV	630	TR
1	Perimeter Gasket	S44 D		PE

## SET #05 106A (I.T. ROOM 106):

3	Hinges	FB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	652	ST
1	Lockset	9K3-7R15D PATD	626	BE
*1	Electric Strike	1006CS	630	HS
1	Wall Stop	1270WV	630	TR
3	Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR
1	Door Closure	4041 XP	689	LC
*1	Power Supply	BPS-24-1		SN

Card reader by security access. Verify threshold per 2.11-C.

## SET #06 112A (MECHANICAL 112):

3	Hinges	FB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	652	ST
1	Lockset	9K3-7D15D	626	BE
1	Wall Stop	1270WV	630	TR
3	Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR
1	Door Closure	4041 XP	689	LC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CS	630	TR

## SET #07 104A (SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS 104), 105A (TESTING ROOM 105), 108A (MICROBIOLOGY), 111A (CONFERENCE 111) &amp; 113A (OFFICE 113):

3	Hinges	FB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	652	ST
1	Lockset	9K3-7D15D	626	BE
1	Door Closer	4041 XP	689	LC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CS	630	TR
1	Wall Stop	1270WV	630	TR
1	Perimeter Gasket	S44 D		PE
3	Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

## SET #08 105B (TESTING 105) &amp; 109A (BREAK 109):

3	Hinges	FBB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	652	ST
1	Door Closer	4041 XP	689	LC
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CS	630	TR
1	Wall Stop	1270WV	630	TR
1	Perimeter Gasket	S44 D		PE
3	Door Silencers	1229A	GREY	TR

## SET #09 105C (TESTING ROOM 105), 2-Slab BARN DOOR:

2-Pair	Wagon Wheel	DE	Black
2	12" Round Flush-Mounted Handle	DE	Black
2	Flat Bar Steel Track	DE	Black
2-Pair	Door Stops	DE	Black
2	Flat Track Duel Soft Closer	DE	Black
2-Pair	Track Stops	DE	Black
2	Wall Mount Guide	DE	Black
Lag Bolts and Spacers			

**END OF SECTION 08 7100**

SECTION 08 8000 - GLAZING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:

- 1. Glass for windows, doors, interior borrowed lites, and storefront framing.
  - 2. Glazing sealants and accessories.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 05 7300 "Decorative Metal Railings" for glazing in railings.
  - 2. Section 08 8300 "Mirrors."

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

## 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

## 1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

2. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.

#### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; 12 inches square.
- C. Glazing Accessory Samples: For sealants and colored spacers, in 12-inch lengths.
- D. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturers of insulating-glass units with sputter-coated, low-E coatings.
- B. Product Certificates: For glass.
- C. Product Test Reports: For tinted glass, coated glass, insulating glass, and glazing sealants, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
  1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.
- D. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.
- E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.8 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: =Design glass, including comprehensive engineering analysis according to ASTM E 1300 by a qualified professional engineer, using the following design criteria:
  1. Design Wind Pressures: 2018 IBC 90 MPH Basic Wind Speed (40 MPH 3-Second Gust  $V_{fm}$  [Fastest Mile wind speed] equals 76 MPH) verify requirements with local jurisdiction.
  2. Vertical Glazing: For glass surfaces sloped 15 degrees or less from vertical, design glass to resist design wind pressure based on glass type factors for short-duration load.
  3. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.



## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved by coated-glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- D. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

## 1.10 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glass product, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.
  - 1. Testing is not required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.

## 1.11 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

## 1.12 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
  - 1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.

## 1.13 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period.

Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AGC Glass Company North America, Inc.
  2. Cardinal Glass Industries.
  3. Guardian Glass; SunGuard.
  4. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope™.
  5. Pilkington North America.
- B. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
1. Obtain tinted glass from single source from single manufacturer.
  2. Obtain reflective-coated glass from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined according to the IBC and ASTM E 1300.
  - 1. Design Wind Pressures: Determine design wind pressures applicable to Project according to ASCE/SEI 7, based on heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Wind Design Data: 2018 IBC 90 MPH Basic Wind Speed (40 MPH 3-Second Gust  $V_{fm}$  equals 76 MPH). Verify requirements with local jurisdiction.
    - b. Basic Wind Speed: 115 mph.
    - c. Importance Factor: 1.0.
    - d. Exposure Category: C.
  - 2. Thickness of Patterned Glass: Base design of patterned glass on thickness at thinnest part of the glass.
  - 3. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
  - 4. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.
- C. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Exterior glazing shall comply with basic-protection testing requirements in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 1 when tested according to ASTM E 1886. Test specimens shall be no smaller in width and length than glazing indicated for use on Project and shall be installed in same manner as glazing indicated for use on Project.
  - 1. Large-Missile Test: For glazing located within 30 feet of grade.
  - 2. Small-Missile Test: For glazing located more than 30 feet above grade.
- D. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- E. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
  - 1. For monolithic glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
  - 2. For laminated glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
  - 3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
  - 4. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
  - 5. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
  - 6. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

## 2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  - 1. GANA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "Glazing Manual."
  - 2. AAMA Publications: AAMA GDSG-1, "Glass Design for Sloped Glazing," and AAMA TIR A7, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
  - 3. IGMA Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, "Guidelines for Sloped Glazing."
  - 4. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or manufacturer. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.
- D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
  - 1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: 6 mm.
  - 2. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.
- E. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

## 2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
- B. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.

## 2.5 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190.

1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary sealants.
  2. Perimeter Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
  3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.
- B. Glass Type: Low-e-coated, clear insulating glass.
1. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
  2. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 1/4 inch glass pane – 1/2 inch air gap – 1/4 inch glass pane.
  3. Outdoor Lite: Heat-strengthened clear anneal TI-AC 40 glass or fully tempered glass.
  4. Interspace Content: Air.
  5. Indoor Lite: Clear Anneal glass panes or fully tempered glass panes. See drawings.
  6. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second surface or exterior insulated glass units.
  7. Visible Light Transmittance: 68 percent minimum.
  8. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: .29
  9. Summer Daytime U-Factor: .28
  10. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: .39
  11. Provide safety glazing labeling.
  12. Factors based upon TI-AC 40 Low-E Glass; 1-inch insulating glass units: 1/4inch glass pane – 1/2inch air gap – 1/4inch glass pane.
- C. Glass Type: Interior Lites.
1. 1/4 inch thick.
  2. Clear
  3. Tempered in locations indicated on drawings.

## 2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
  2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
  3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - b. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.

- c. Sika Corporation.
- d. [The Dow Chemical Company](#).

- 2. Applications: Perimeter glazing system.

## 2.7 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; non-staining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
  - 1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
  - 2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
  - 3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
  - 1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
  - 2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, with requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

## 2.9 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
    - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
  - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  - 2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
  - 3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
  - 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

### 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.

- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
  - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
- J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

### 3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.



- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

### 3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter-cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### 3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

### 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove non-permanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other

masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.

1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 08 8000**

SECTION 09 0561 - MOISTURE VAPOR EMISSION CONTROL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fluid-applied, resin-based, membrane-forming systems that control the moisture-vapor-emission rate of high-moisture, interior concrete to prepare it for floor covering installation.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MVE: Moisture vapor emission.
- B. MVER: Moisture vapor emission rate.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Employs factory-trained personnel who are available for consultation and Project-site inspection.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating directions for storage and mixing with other components.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with MVE-control system manufacturer's written instructions for substrate and ambient temperatures, humidity, ventilation, and other conditions affecting system installation.
  - 1. Store system components in a temperature-controlled environment and protected from weather and at ambient temperature of not less than 65 deg F and not more than 85 deg F at least 48 hours before use.
  - 2. Maintain ambient temperature and relative humidity in installation areas within range recommended in writing by MVE-control system manufacturer, but not less

than 65 deg F or more than 85 deg F and not less than 40 or more than 60 percent relative humidity, for 48 hours before installation, during installation, and for 48 hours after installation unless longer period is recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3. Install MVE-control systems where concrete surface temperatures will remain a minimum of 5 deg F higher than the dew point for ambient temperature and relative humidity conditions in installation areas for 48 hours before installation, during installation, and for 48 hours after installation unless longer period is recommended in writing by manufacturer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. MVE-Control System Capabilities: Capable of suppressing MVE without failure where installed on concrete that exhibits the following conditions:
  1. MVER: Maximum 15 lb. of water/1000 sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM F 1869.
  2. Relative Humidity: Maximum 90 percent when tested according to ASTM F 2170 using in situ probes.
- B. Water-Vapor Transmission: Through MVE-control system, maximum 0.10 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M.
- C. Tensile Bond Strength: For MVE-control system, greater than 200 psi with failure in the concrete according to ASTM D 7234.

### 2.2 MVE-CONTROL SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. [Advanced Moisture Control, Inc.](#)
  2. [BASF Corporation.](#)
  3. [KOSTER American Corporation.](#)
  4. [LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.](#)
  5. [MAPEI Corporation.](#)
  6. [Schönox; HPS North America, Inc.](#)
- B. MVE-Control System: ASTM F 3010-qualified, fluid-applied, two-component, epoxy-resin, membrane-forming system; formulated for application on concrete substrates to reduce MVER to level required for installation of floor coverings indicated and acceptable to manufacturers of floor covering products indicated, including adhesives.
  1. Substrate Primer: Provide MVE-control system manufacturer's concrete-substrate primer if required for system indicated by substrate conditions.
  2. Cementitious Underlayment Primer: If required for subsequent installation of cementitious underlayment products, provide MVE-control system manufacturer's primer to ensure adhesion of products to MVE-control system.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Patching and Leveling Material: Moisture-, mildew-, and alkali-resistant product recommended in writing by MVE-control system manufacturer and with minimum of 3000-psi compressive strength after 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
- B. Crack-Filling Material: Resin-based material recommended in writing by MVE-control system manufacturer for sealing concrete substrate crack repair.
- C. Cementitious Underlayment: If required to maintain manufacturer's warranty, provide MVE-control system manufacturer's cement-based underlayment.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Installation of system indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Preinstallation Testing:
  - 1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests.
  - 2. Alkalinity Testing: Perform pH testing according to ASTM F 710. Install MVE-control system in areas where pH readings are less than 7.0 and in areas where pH readings are greater than 8.5.
  - 3. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 1000 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Install MVE-control system in locations where concrete substrate MVER exceeds 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
    - b. Internal Relative Humidity Test: Using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Install MVE-control system in locations where concrete substrates exhibit relative humidity level greater than 75 percent.
  - 4. Tensile-Bond-Strength Testing: For typical locations indicated to receive installation of MVE-control system, install minimum 100-sq. ft. area of MVE-control system to prepare concrete substrate and test according to ASTM D 7234.
    - a. Proceed with installation only where tensile bond strength is greater than 200 psi with failure in the concrete.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare and clean substrates according to MVE-control system manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of system to concrete.
  - 1. Remove coatings and other substances that are incompatible with MVE-control system and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods

- recommended in writing by MVE-control system manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  2. Provide concrete surface profile complying with ICRI 310.2R CSP 3 by shot blasting using apparatus that abrades the concrete surface with shot, contains the dispensed shot within the apparatus, and recirculates the shot by vacuum pickup.
  3. After shot blasting, repair damaged and deteriorated concrete according to MVE-control system manufacturer's written instructions.
  4. Protect substrate voids and joints to prevent resins from flowing into or leaking through them.
  5. Fill surface depressions and irregularities with patching and leveling material.
  6. Fill surface cracks, grooves, control joints, and other nonmoving joints with crack-filling material.
  7. Allow concrete to dry, undisturbed, for period recommended in writing by MVE-control system manufacturer after surface preparation, but not less than 24 hours.
  8. Before installing MVE-control systems, broom sweep and vacuum prepared concrete.
- C. Protect walls, floor openings, electrical openings, door frames, and other obstructions during installation.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install MVE-control system according to ASTM F 3010 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform, monolithic surface free of surface deficiencies such as pin holes, fish-eyes, and voids.
1. Install primers as required to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not apply MVE-control system across substrate expansion, isolation, and other moving joints.
- C. Cure MVE-control system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination or other damage during installation and curing processes.
- D. After curing, examine MVE-control system for surface deficiencies. Repair surface deficiencies according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Install cementitious underlayment over cured membrane if required to maintain manufacturer's warranty and in thickness required to maintain the warranty.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform installation inspections.
- B. Installation Inspections: Inspect substrate preparation and installation of system components to ensure compliance with manufacturer's written instructions and to ensure that a complete MVE-control system is installed without deficiencies.
1. Verify that surface preparation meets requirements.
  2. Verify that component coats and complete MVE-control-system film thicknesses comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

3. Verify that MVE-control-system components and installation areas that evidence deficiencies are repaired according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. MVE-control system will be considered defective if it does not pass inspections.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect MVE-control system from damage, wear, dirt, dust, and other contaminants before floor covering installation. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary coverings, recommended in writing by MVE-control system manufacturer.
- B. Do not allow subsequent preinstallation examination and testing for floor covering installation to damage, puncture, or otherwise compromise the MVE-control system membrane.

**END OF SECTION 09 0561**

## SECTION 092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes non-load-bearing steel framing members for the following applications:

- 1. Interior suspension systems (e.g., supports for ceilings, suspended soffits, etc.).

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Provide information sufficient to show compliance for the suspended ceiling:
  - 1. Comply with requirements of seismic design category 'D'.
  - 2. Provide submittal showing compliance with ASTM C636, CISA guidelines and ASCE7 section 13.5.6

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. Sound Transmission Characteristics: For STC-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Coordination of Trades: It is the responsibility of both the General Contractor and/or the Finish-Subcontractor to verify that the framing is straight, plumb, and square, if that is the intent of the design of the surface of each space, prior to the installation of the wall and ceiling materials.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 NON-LOAD-BEARING STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products such that postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.



- B. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Protective Coating: manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant zinc coating, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 SUSPENSION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.0625-inch- diameter wire, or double strand of 0.0475-inch- diameter wire.
- B. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.162-inch diameter.
- C. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet.
- D. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.0538 inch and minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: 2-1/2 inches or as per manufacturers recommendation for this layout.
- E. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
  - 1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.0538-inch bare-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
  - 2. Steel Studs: ASTM C 645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0179 inch
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings
  - 3. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch deep.
    - a. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 0.0179 inch
- F. Grid Suspension System for Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Drywall Grid Systems.
    - b. Chicago Metallic Corporation; 640-C Drywall Furring System.
    - c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspension System.
    - d. Or equal

## 2.3 STEEL FRAMING FOR FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Steel Studs and Runners: Meet or exceeds ASTM C645 & C754. AISI-NASPEC 2001. ASTM E119, E72 & E90. ICC\_ES1977. Architectural Testing, Inc. ATI CCRR-0109. NYC MEA 300-05-

M. UL Listed V450- Unless noted otherwise on the Construction Drawings provide as follows:

1. 362 UDS-20EQ:
  - a. Web depth 3.625 in.
  - b. Thickness 25 mils. (20 gauge) EQ
2. 250 UDS-20EQ:
  - a. Web depth 2.500 in.
  - b. Thickness 25 mils. (20 gauge) EQ
3. 162 UDS-25EQ:
  - a. Web depth 1.625 in.
  - b. Thickness 15 mils (25 gauge) EQ

B. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:

1. Single Long-Leg Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runner with 2-inch- deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top runner and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
2. Double-Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runners, inside runner with 2-inch- deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer runner sized to friction fit inside runner.
3. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
  - a. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Steel Network Inc. (The); VertiClip SLD Series.
    - 2) Superior Metal Trim; Superior Flex Track System (SFT).
    - 3) ClarkDietrich; Furring Channel / Hat Channel
    - 4) Or equal

C. Firestop Track: As specified in Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems."

D. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0179 inch Retain first paragraph and subparagraphs below for channel bridging for fixture attachment or lateral bracing. Indicate locations and details of installation on Drawings.

E. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: 0.0538-inch bare-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.

1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings or inches
2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch- thick, galvanized steel.

F. Hat-Shaped Channel, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.

1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 16 gauge
  2. Depth: 1-1/2 inch.
  3. Reference drawings for Wall Types and Locations of Wall Types.
- G. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2 inch deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
1. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- H. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.0538-inch bare-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with minimum bare-steel thickness of 0.0312 inch.
  3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.0625-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.0475-inch-diameter wire.
- I. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or non-slotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, minimum bare-metal thickness of 0.0179 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

## 2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:
1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.
  2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.

### 3.2 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.

- B. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
    - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, counters-playing, or other equally effective means.
  2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
    - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within As defined in the deferred submittal requirements.
  3. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
  4. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
  5. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
  6. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- C. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- D. Seismic Bracing: Sway-brace suspension systems with hangers used for support for seismic category 'D'. Grid suspension systems are suitable for use with gypsum board. They might not be acceptable for gypsum veneer plaster; consult gypsum veneer plaster and grid suspension system manufacturers before specifying them.
- E. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- F. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

### 3.3 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against new or existing walls assuming the design of the exterior masonry walls are not intentionally sloped and corners are not angled, apply studs against the exterior masonry wall, only if, masonry wall will allow studs to be plumb and corners square otherwise shim and/or layout furring as needed to provide plumb and straight walls and square corners.
- C. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings, except where partitions are

indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.

1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
  2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
    - a. Install two studs at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
    - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
  3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings, unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
  4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
    - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
  5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
- D. Direct Furring:
1. Screw to wood framing.
  2. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
- E. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

#### **END OF SECTION 09 2216**

SECTION 09 2900 - GYPSUM BOARD

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Interior gypsum board.
- 2. Exterior gypsum board for ceilings and soffits.
- 3. Tile backing panels.
- 4. Texture finishes.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Division 06 Section "Sheathing" for gypsum sheathing for exterior walls.
- 2. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies" for metal shaft-wall framing, gypsum shaft liners, and other components of shaft-wall assemblies.
- 3. Division 09 Section "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural steel framing
- 4. Division 09 Section "Ceramic Tiling" for cementitious backer units installed as substrates for ceramic tile.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

- 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch-long length for each trim accessory indicated.
- 2. Textured Finishes: 12" x 12" for each textured finish indicated and on same backing indicated for Work.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

- 1. Build mockups for the following:

- a. Each level of gypsum board finish indicated for use in exposed locations.
- b. Each texture finish indicated.

2. Apply or install final decoration indicated, including painting and wallcoverings, on exposed surfaces for review of mockups.
3. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

#### 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

## 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

### A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Gypsum.
  - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  - d. National Gypsum Company.
  - e. USG Corporation.
2. Thickness: 5/8 inch unless noted otherwise on the drawings.
3. Long Edges: Tapered.

### B. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Gypsum.
  - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  - d. National Gypsum Company.
  - e. USG Corporation.
2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
3. Long Edges: Tapered.

### C. Flexible Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. Manufactured to bend to fit radii and to be more flexible than standard regular-type gypsum board of same thickness.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  - c. National Gypsum Company.
  - d. USG Corporation.
2. Thickness: As Indicated on Drawings.
3. Long Edges: Tapered.

### D. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Gypsum.
  - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  - d. National Gypsum Company.
  - e. USG Corporation.



2. Thickness: As Indicated on Drawings.
  3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- E. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - d. National Gypsum Company.
    - e. USG Corporation.
  2. Core: As indicated.
  3. Long Edges: Tapered.
  4. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

## 2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - d. USG Corporation.
  2. Core: As indicated on Drawings.
- B. USG Products for UL Design Designations:
1. Use products listed below based on the products listed in the UL Designs- see Drawings for UL Design Numbers.
  2. For comparable products by other Manufacturers, allowed in the UL Designs, consult website for comparable listing of products as listed in the UL Assembly.

UL Type	Product	UL Type	Product
Designation	System	Designation	Systems
Gypsum Board and Related Products		Acoustical Suspension Products	
SCX	SHEETROCK FIRECODE Core gypsum panels	CM	CELEBRATION™ Metal ceiling panels(metallic)
SCX	SHEETROCK MOLD TOUGH FIRECODE Core gypsum panels	CP	CELEBRATION™ Metal ceiling panels(painted)
C	SHEETROCK FIRECODE C Core gypsum panels	DXL	DONN DXL suspension system (15/16" wide)
C	SHEETROCK MOLD TOUGH FIRECODE C Core gypsum panels	DXL (15/16" wide)	DONN DXL concealed suspension system

AR	SHEETROCK abuse-resistant gypsum panels	DXLA	DON DXLA suspension system
AR	SHEETROCK MOLD TOUGH FIRECODE AR	ZXLA	DONN ZXLA suspension system (15/16", environmental)
SLX	SHEETROCK gypsum liner panels	DXLT	CENTRICITEE suspension system (9/16" wide)
SLX	SHEETROCK MOLD TOUGH gypsum liner panels	DXLTA	<b>USG Fire-Resistant Assemblies</b> CENTRICITEE® suspension system (9/16" wide aluminum cap) FINELINE® suspension system (9/16")
SLX	SHEETROCK glass-mat gypsum liner panels		
ULTRACODE	SHEETROCK ULTRACODE Core gypsum panels	DXLF	
SHX	SHEETROCK FIRECODE Core gypsum sheathing	SDXL	SIMPLICITEE suspension system (15/16" wide, retail)
USGX	SECUREROCK™ glass-mat sheathing FIRECODE Core	SDXL	SIMPLICITEE suspension system (15/16" wide, retail)
SGMRX	SECUREROCK glass mat roof board	SDXLA	SIMPLICITEE suspension system (15/16" wide, retail, aluminum cap)
GMIP	5/8" SHEETROCK Glass-Mat panels Mold Tough FIRECODE X	DGL	USG Drywall Suspension System (15/16" wide)
FC30	SHEETROCK UltraLight Panels FIRECODE 30	DGLW	USG Drywall Suspension System (1-1/2" wide)
ULX	SHEETROCK UltraLight Panels FIRECODE X	DXLP	PARALINE® linear metal ceiling system
FRX-G	FIREROCK Panels	PAR, PARP	PARALINE linear metal ceiling system (linear metal panels)
IP-X1	IMPERIAL FIRECODE Core plaster base	PAS, PASP	PARALINE linear metal ceiling system (linear metal panels)
IP-X2	IMPERIAL FIRECODE C Core plaster base	PSR, PSRP	PARALINE linear metal ceiling system (linear metal panels)
DCB	DUROCK cement board Next Gen	PSS, PSSP	PARALINE linear metal ceiling system (linear metal panels)
UC	ULTRAWALL gypsum panel		
RLX	ROCKLATH FIRECODE gypsum Lath		
LEVELROCK	LEVELROCK floor underlayment mixtures		
AS	SHEETROCK acoustical sealant		
FC	FIRECODE compound		
RFC	FIRECODE ready mixed compound		
A	FIRECODE acrylic firestop spray		
IA	FIRECODE intumescent acrylic firestop sealant		
SA	FIRECODE acrylic firestop sealant		
SA	FIRECODE smoke-sound sealant		
<b>Acoustical Tile and Panel Products</b>			
AP	SANDRIFT™, FROST™, GLACIER™ ceiling panels		
AP-1	SANDRIFT, FROST, GLACIER ceiling panels		
AP-2	FROST, GLACIER, SANDRIFT ceiling panels		
AP-3	FROST, GLACIER, SANDRIFT		
FC-CB	SHEETROCK lay-in ceiling panels CLIMAPLUS™		

## 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

### A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.

1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized-steel sheet.
2. Shapes:
  - a. Cornerbead.

- b. Bullnose bead.
  - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
  - d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
  - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
  - f. Expansion (control) joint.
  - g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
- B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
  - 1. Material: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, plastic, or rolled zinc.
  - 2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - c. Expansion (Control) Joint: One-piece, rolled zinc with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.
- C. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Fry Reglet Corporation.
  - 2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5.
  - 3. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with joint compound and finish materials specified.

## 2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
  - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
  - 2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
  - 3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
  - 4. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
  - 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound.
    - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
  - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sand-able topping compound.

4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sand-able topping compound.
5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use setting-type, sand-able topping compound.

D. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:

1. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sand-able topping compound.
2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: As recommended by sheathing board manufacturer.

E. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:

1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.
2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.
3. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sand-able topping compound.

## 2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002 unless otherwise indicated.
1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
  2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- E. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard non-sag, paintable, non-staining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Products effectively reduce airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hilti, Inc.
    - b. USG Corporation.

- F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation."
- G. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 07 2600 "Vapor Retarders."

## 2.8 TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Primer: As recommended by textured finish manufacturer.
- B. Aggregate Finish: Water-based, job-mixed, aggregated, drying-type texture finish for spray application.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - c. National Gypsum Company.
    - d. USG Corporation.
  - 2. Texture: As Indicated on Drawings.
- C. Non-Aggregate Finish: Premixed, vinyl texture finish for spray application.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. National Gypsum Company.
    - c. USG Corporation.
  - 2. Texture: As Indicated on Drawings.
- D. General Texture(s) for all Rooms unless indicated otherwise:
  - a. Janitor, Mechanical, Electrical, and Storage Rooms
    - 1) Ceiling: "Light Texture" over Level 4.
    - 2) Walls: "Smooth" over Level 5.
  - b. Toilet room
    - 1) Ceiling: "Light Texture" over Level 4.
    - 2) Walls: "Smooth" over Level 5.
  - c. All areas not indicated:
    - 1) Ceiling: "Light Texture" over Level 4.
    - 2) Walls: "Smooth" over Level 5.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
  - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch-wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch-wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. Wood Framing: Install gypsum panels over wood framing, with floating internal corner construction. Do not attach gypsum panels across the flat grain of wide-dimension lumber, including floor joists and headers. Float gypsum panels over these members or provide control joints to counteract wood shrinkage.
- J. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- K. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

### 3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
  - 1. Wallboard Type: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Type X: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Flexible Type: As indicated on Drawings and apply in double layer at curved assemblies.
  - 4. Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
  - 5. Foil-Backed Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 6. Abuse-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 7. Impact-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 8. Mold-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 9. Type C: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 10. Glass-Mat Interior Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 11. Acoustically Enhanced Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 12. Skim-Coated Type: As indicated on Drawings.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
  - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally (perpendicular to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
    - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
    - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
  - 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

## C. Multilayer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

## D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

## E. Curved Surfaces:

1. Install panels horizontally (perpendicular to supports) and unbroken, to extent possible, across curved surface plus 12-inch-long straight sections at ends of curves and tangent to them.
2. For double-layer construction, fasten base layer to studs with screws 16 inches o.c. Center gypsum board face layer over joints in base layer, and fasten to studs with screws spaced 12 inches o.c.

## 3.4 APPLYING EXTERIOR GYPSUM PANELS FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

- A. Apply panels perpendicular to supports, with end joints staggered and located over supports.
1. Install with 1/4-inch open space where panels abut other construction or structural penetrations.
  2. Fasten with corrosion-resistant screws.

## 3.5 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and install at showers, tubs, and where indicated. Install with 1/4-inch gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, where indicated on drawings.



- C. Water-Resistant Backing Board: Install where indicated with 1/4-inch gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- D. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

### 3.6 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Bullnose Bead: Use where indicated.
  - 3. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
  - 4. L-Bead: Use where indicated.
  - 5. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges where indicated.
  - 6. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.
- D. Exterior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
  - 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
- E. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

### 3.7 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
  - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
  - 3. Level 3: Where indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
- 5. Level 5: Where indicated on Drawings and finish areas to receive smooth finish, semi-gloss or gloss painted finishes.
  - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
- E. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for use as exposed soffit board.
- F. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.8 APPLYING TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation and Primer: Prepare and apply primer to gypsum panels and other surfaces receiving texture finishes. Apply primer to surfaces that are clean, dry, and smooth.
- B. Texture Finish Application: Mix and apply finish using powered spray equipment, to produce a uniform texture matching approved mockup and free of starved spots or other evidence of thin application or of application patterns.
- C. Prevent texture finishes from coming into contact with surfaces not indicated to receive texture finish by covering them with masking agents, polyethylene film, or other means. If, despite these precautions, texture finishes contact these surfaces, immediately remove droppings and overspray to prevent damage according to texture-finish manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.9 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## END OF SECTION 09 2900

SECTION 09 3013 - CERAMIC TILING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Ceramic mosaic tile.
- 2. Stone thresholds.
- 3. Tile backing panels.
- 4. Crack isolation membrane.
- 5. Metal edge strips.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
- 2. Section 09 2900 "Gypsum Board" for glass-mat, water-resistant backer board.
- 3. Section 09 3023 "Glass Mosaic Tiling."
- 4. Section 09 3033 "Stone Tiling."

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. ANSI A108 Series: ANSI A108.01, ANSI A108.02, ANSI A108.1A, ANSI A108.1B, ANSI A108.1C, ANSI A108.4, ANSI A108.5, ANSI A108.6, ANSI A108.8, ANSI A108.9, ANSI A108.10, ANSI A108.11, ANSI A108.12, ANSI A108.13, ANSI A108.14, ANSI A108.15, ANSI A108.16, and ANSI A108.17, which are contained in its "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile."
- C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.
- D. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.

## 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required. For ceramic mosaic tile in color blend patterns, provide full sheets of each color blend.
  - 2. Stone thresholds in 6-inch lengths.
  - 3. Metal edge strips in 6-inch lengths.

### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- D. Product Test Reports: For tile-setting and -grouting products.

### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer employs Ceramic Tile Education Foundation Certified Installers or installers recognized by the U.S. Department of Labor as Journeyman Tile Layers.

### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals un-broken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

### 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from single source or producer.
  - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
  - 1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Obtain waterproof membrane and crack isolation membrane, except for sheet products, from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
  - 1. Marble thresholds.
  - 2. Waterproof membrane.
  - 3. Crack isolation membrane.
  - 4. Cementitious backer units.
  - 5. Metal edge strips.

## 2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
  - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- D. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Where tile is indicated for installation in swimming pools, on exteriors, or in wet areas, do not use back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer

specifies in writing that this type of mounting is suitable for installation indicated and has a record of successful in-service performance.

## 2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Ceramic Tile Type **TILE-1**: Factory-mounted glazed ceramic tile unit - Toilet/Janitor/Testing Room Walls and other scheduled spaces. Reference drawings for locations.
1. Manufacturers: Bases of Design, Daltile KONCRETE Wall tile or to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Marazzi Tile, Inc.
    - b. American Olean; a division of Dal-Tile Corporation.
  2. Composition: Vitreous or impervious natural clay or porcelain.
  3. Module Size: 8inch x 24inch unit
  4. Thickness: 5/16 inch for unit.
  5. Mortar thick-set application, slope to floor drain.
  6. Face: Pattern of design indicated, with cushion edges.
  7. Surface: As indicated.
  8. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
  9. Finish: As indicated.
  10. Tile Color and Pattern: KONCRETE Grey KC04.
  11. Grout Color: Match Architect's sample.
  12. Trim Units: As indicated.
  13. Reference drawings for installation details.
- B. Ceramic Tile Type **TILE-2**: Factory-mounted glazed ceramic mosaic tile - Testing Room emergency shower floor. Reference drawings for locations.
1. Manufacturers: Bases of Design, Daltile KONCRETE Floor or to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Marazzi Tile, Inc.
    - b. American Olean; a division of Dal-Tile Corporation.
  2. Composition: Vitreous or impervious natural clay or porcelain.
  3. Module Size: 2inch x 2inch on a 12inch x 24inch sheet.
  4. Thickness: 1/4 inch for Mosaic.
  5. Mortar thick-set application, slope to floor drain.
  6. Face: Pattern of design indicated, with cushion edges.
  7. Surface: As indicated.
  8. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
  9. Finish: As indicated.
  10. Tile Color and Pattern: KONCRETE Grey KC04.
  11. Grout Color: Match Architect's sample.
  12. Trim Units: As indicated.
  13. Reference drawings for installation details.
- C. Ceramic Tile Floor Base: Reference Finish Legend – Base and Finish Legend – Room for location.

1. Manufacturers: Bases of Design, Daltile KONCRETE Floor/Wall tile or to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Marazzi Tile, Inc.
  - b. American Olean; a division of Dal-Tile Corporation.
2. Face Size Variation: 8inch x 24inch.
3. Thickness: 5/16 inch for walls.
4. Face: As indicated.
5. Finish: As indicated glaze.
6. Tile Color and Pattern: KONCRETE White KC04.
7. Grout Color: Match Architect's sample.
8. Trim Units: As indicated.
9. Reference drawings for installation details.

**D. Tile Accessory Trim Types:**

1. Wall Edge Protection Trim, Schluter – QUADDEC; Brushed Stainless Steel 304, Height = 3/8inch (10mm); Profile, Q 100 EB; Connector, V/RO 100 E; Inside/Outside Corner, EV/Q 100 EB. Located at all vertical tile edges and horizontal tile tops.
  - a. Schluter Systems – (888) 472-4588.
2. Floor Transition Ramp, Schluter – RENO-RAMP/-K; Satin Anodized Aluminum (AE), Height = 1/4inch (6mm), Base = 2inch (50mm); AERP 60 B50.
  - a. Schluter Systems – (888) 472-4588.
3. Submit actual product sample of each trim type listed for final approval prior to order or installation.

## 2.4 THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
  1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch or less above adjacent floor surface.
- B. Marble Thresholds: ASTM C 503/C 503M, with a minimum abrasion resistance of [10] [12], according to ASTM C 1353 or ASTM C 241/C 241M and with honed finish.
  1. Description: Match Architect's sample.
  2. See detail on drawings.

## 2.5 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.

## 2.6 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, that complies with ANSI A118.12 for standard performance and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.

## 2.7 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement Mortar (Thickset) Installation Materials: ANSI A108.02.
  - 1. Cleavage Membrane: Asphalt felt, ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type I (No. 15); or polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D 4397, 4.0 mils thick.
- B. Standard Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.1.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Boiardi Products Corporation; a QEP company.
    - b. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
    - c. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.
    - d. MAPEI Corporation.
  - 2. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.1.
- C. Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.
    - c. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.
    - d. MAPEI Corporation.
  - 2. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for non-sagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.
- D. Medium-Bed, Modified Dry-Set Mortar: Comply with requirements in ANSI A118.4. Provide product that are approved by manufacturer for application thickness of 5/8 inch.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.
    - c. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.
    - d. MAPEI Corporation.
- E. Improved Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thin-set): ANSI A118.15.



1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
    - b. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.
    - c. MAPEI Corporation.
  2. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for non-sagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.15.
- F. EGP (Exterior Glue Plywood) Latex-Portland Cement Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.11.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.
    - c. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.
    - d. MAPEI Corporation.
- G. Water-Cleanable, Tile-Setting Epoxy: ANSI A118.3.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.
    - c. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.
    - d. MAPEI Corporation.
  2. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 140 and 212 deg F, respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.
- H. Organic Adhesive: ANSI A136.1, Type I.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.
    - c. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.
    - d. MAPEI Corporation.
- 2.8 GROUT MATERIALS
- A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.
- B. Standard Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.](#)
    - b. [Bostik, Inc.](#)
    - c. [LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.](#)
    - d. [MAPEI Corporation.](#)
  - C. High-Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.
    1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. [Boiard Products Corporation; a QEP company.](#)
      - b. [Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.](#)
      - c. [LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.](#)
      - d. [MAPEI Corporation.](#)
  - D. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less.
    1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. [Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.](#)
      - b. [Bostik, Inc.](#)
      - c. [LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.](#)
      - d. [MAPEI Corporation.](#)
  - E. Grout for Pre-grouted Tile Sheets: Same product used in factory to pre-grout tile sheets.
  - F. **Grout Joint Color:** 5002 Pewter (Mapei Corporation).
    1. Applies to Floor, Wall and Base Ceramic Tile.
- 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Trowel-able Under-layment and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, Portland-cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
  - B. Vapor-Retarder Membrane: Polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D 4397, 4.0 mils thick.
  - C. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shaped, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring applications; nickel silver, ASTM A 666, 300 Series exposed-edge material.
    1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
      - a. [Schluter Systems L.P.](#)
      - b. Reference Tile Accessory Trim Types in this section.
  - D. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

- E. Floor Sealer: Manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints and that does not change color or appearance of grout.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.

## 2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
  - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with adhesives, bonded mortar bed, or thin-set mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
    - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
    - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
  - 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
  - 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with adhesives or thin-set mortar with trowel-able leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproofing by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

### 3.3 CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
  - 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
    - a. Emergency Shower tile floor located in Testing Room 105.
    - b. Tile Walls consisting of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger located in Toilet Rooms, Janitor Room and Testing Room 105.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- E. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
- F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.

2. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
  3. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
1. Ceramic Mosaic Tile: As indicated.
  2. Quarry Tile: As indicated.
  3. Pressed Floor Tile: As indicated.
  4. Glazed Wall Tile: As indicated.
  5. Porcelain Tile: As indicated.
- H. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- I. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
- J. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.
1. At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent floor finishes, set thresholds in modified dry-set mortar (thin-set).
  2. Do not extend cleavage membrane, waterproofing, or crack isolation membrane under thresholds set in standard dry-set, modified dry-set, or improved modified dry-set mortar. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining tile set on cleavage membrane, waterproofing, or crack isolation membrane with elastomeric sealant.
- K. Metal Edge Strips: Install at:
1. All vertical locations indicated.
  2. Where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with top of tile.
  3. where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated.
- L. Floor Sealer: Apply floor sealer to cementitious grout joints according to floor-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as the floor sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.
- 3.4 TILE BACKING PANEL INSTALLATION
- A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated. Use modified dry-set mortar for bonding material unless otherwise directed in manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 WATERPROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow waterproofing to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

### 3.6 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
  - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
  - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

## END OF SECTION 09 3013

SECTION 09 5113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes acoustical lay-in tile panels and exposed suspension systems for ceilings.

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Coordination Drawings: Drawn to scale and coordinating acoustical lay-in tile panel ceiling installation with hanger attachment to building structure and ceiling mounted items:
- C. Samples: For each exposed finish.
- D. Product test reports.
- E. Research/evaluation reports.
- F. Maintenance data.
- G. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data: For recycled content, indicating postconsumer and pre-consumer recycled content and cost.
  - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For ceiling products, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Ceiling products shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Acoustical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing laboratory or an NVLAP-accredited laboratory.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
  - 1. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Where indicated, provide acoustical panel ceilings identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- a. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
- 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Acoustical panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials, when tested per ASTM E 84.
  - a. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
  - b. Flame Spread: 25 or less.
- D. Seismic Standard: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Standard for Ceiling Suspension Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with ASTM E 580.
  - 2. UBC Standard 25-2, "Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and for Lay-in Panel Ceilings."
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Full-size panels equal to 2.0 percent of quantity installed.
  - 2. Suspension System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 2.0 percent of quantity installed.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS, GENERAL

- A. Acoustical Panel Standard: Comply with ASTM E 1264.
- B. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- C. Metal Suspension System Standard: Comply with ASTM C 635.
- D. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635 suspended grid system for acoustical tile and lay-in panel ceilings.
- E. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Zinc-coated carbon-steel wire; ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  - 1. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at 3 times hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire but, provide not less than 0.106-inch-diameter wire.



- F. Seismic perimeter stabilizer bars, seismic struts, and seismic clips.
- G. Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension system runners.
- H. For additional information, reference drawings for details.

## 2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS FOR ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING (CEILING TYPE CT-2)

### A. Basis-of-Design Product:

- 1. Rockfon Tropic #SLN1020: Light Reflectance of 0.85, Low VOC, NRC value range: 0.85 to 0.90, CAC 22, 24inch x 24inch x 5/8inche, Class "A" fire performance, Smooth white surface, Stone wool base material with 9/16inch Suspension Systems SLN – 4500 – ULTRALINE 1/4inch reveal.

Or a comparable product by one of the following:

- 2. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
- 3. Ecophon CertainTeed, Inc.
- 4. Tectum Inc.
- 5. USG Interiors, Inc.

## 2.3 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM FOR ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING (CEILING TYPE CT-2):

### A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or equal:

- 1. 4500 – Ultraline-9/16inch Suspension System with 1/4inch reveal"

### B. Components: All main beams and cross tees shall be commercial quality hot-dipped galvanized (galvanized steel, aluminum, or stainless steel) as per ASTM A 653. Main beams and cross tees are double-web steel construction with type exposed flange design. Exposed surfaces chemically cleansed, capping pre-finished galvanized steel (aluminum or stainless steel) in baked polyester paint. Main beams and cross tees shall have rotary stitching (exception: extruded aluminum or stainless steel).

- 1. Structural Classification: ASTM C 635 Heavy Duty
- 2. Attachment Devices: In accordance with the IBC, Section for Category D.
- 3. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) or butt-edge type.
- 4. Cap Material: Steel or aluminum cold-rolled sheet.
- 5. Cap Finish: (WH) White.

### C. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content no less than 35 percent.

### D. 30-Year Tile Warranty.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with ASTM C 636 and seismic design requirements indicated, per manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
- B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders.
- C. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members, plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum. Splay hangers only where required and, if permitted with fire-resistance-rated ceilings, to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, counters-playing, or other equally effective means. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers, use trapezes or equivalent devices. When steel frame does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  - 1. **DO NOT** support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck; anchor into concrete slabs.
  - 2. **DO NOT** attach hangers to steel deck tabs or to steel roof deck.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
- E. Install suspension system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.

**END OF SECTION 09 5113**

SECTION 09 6513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Vinyl base.
  - 2. Vinyl molding accessories.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, not less than 12 inches long.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 12 inches long.
- E. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products.

## 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 **VINYL WALL BASE: (BF-01, Rubber-ONE listed in schedule)**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: Bases of Design – Roppe Corporation, USA.
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
  - 3. Roppe Corporation, USA.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TV (vinyl, thermoplastic).
  - 1. Group: I, Butt Toe Base with 5/8inch toe base (solid, homogeneous).
- C. Minimum Thickness: 1/8 inch.
- D. Height: 4-inch Coved Base.
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Vinyl Base Corner accessories.
- G. Inside Corners: Vinyl Base Corner accessories.
- H. Colors and Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
- I. Reference drawings for Rubber-ONE Vinyl Wall Base locations. See FINISH SCHEDULE.

### 2.2 **RUBBER WALL BASE: (BF-02, Rubber-TWO listed in schedule)**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: Bases of Design – Roppe Corporation, USA.

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  2. Johnsonite; a Tarkett Company.
  3. Roppe Corporation, USA
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TPR (Thermoplastic Rubber)
1. Group: Wall Base product 700 series Wall Base and Contours Profiled Wall Base System (solid, homogeneous).
  2. Model: Candid #60, PV4060, 3/8inch thickness x 4-1/4inch height.
- C. Minimum Thickness: 1/4inch.
- D. Height: 4-1/4inch.
- E. Length: 8 feet.
- F. Outside Corners – As selected from Rubber Corner Blocks and Micro Corners by Architect.
- G. Inside Corners - As selected from Rubber Corner Blocks and Micro Corners by Architect.
- H. Colors and Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations and selected by Architect.
- I. Reference drawings for Rubber-TWO Rubber Wall Base locations. See FINISH SCHEDULE.

## 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowel-able Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, Portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Metal Edge Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish, nominal 2 inches wide, of height required to protect exposed edges of flooring, and in maximum available lengths to minimize running joints.
- D. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by resilient stair-tread manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges,

depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates for Resilient Stair Accessories: Prepare horizontal surfaces according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
  - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
    - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowel-able leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

### 3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.

- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Job-Formed Corners:
  - 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
    - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
  - 2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
    - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

### 3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Stair Accessories:
  - 1. Use stair-tread-nose filler to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.
  - 2. Tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece.
  - 3. For treads installed as separate, equal-length units, install to produce a flush joint between units.
- C. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.

2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
  3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from resilient stair treads before applying liquid floor polish.
1. Apply one coat(s).
- E. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 09 6513**



SECTION 09 6813 - TILE CARPETING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes:
  - 1. Modular carpet tile.
  - 2. Entryway system.

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
  - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
  - 3. Laboratory Test Reports: For flooring products, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show the following:
  - 1. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
  - 2. Pattern of installation.
  - 3. Edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
  - 4. Transition details to other flooring materials.
- D. Samples: For each color and texture required.
  - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
  - 2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and other Accessory Stripping: 12-inch-long Samples.
- E. Product Schedule: For carpet tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- F. Maintenance data.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the Floor Covering Installation Board or who can demonstrate compliance with its certification program requirements.

## 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with CRI 104, Section 5, "Storage and Handling."

### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with CRI 104, Section 7.2, "Site Conditions; Temperature and Humidity" and Section 7.12, "Ventilation."
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not install carpet tiles until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet tiles, install carpet tiles before installing these items.

### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to, more than 10 percent loss of face fiber, edge raveling, snags, runs, loss of tuft bind strength, dimensional stability, excess static discharge, and delamination.

- 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### 1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below, before installation begins, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10 sq. yd.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: The design is based on the product named in the basis-of-design and within the Construction Drawings. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the other suppliers specified and based on substitution request approval.
- B. See Division 01 Section 01 2500 for "Substitution Procedures".
- C. Provide all products from a single source.

## 2.2 CARPET TILE

- A. CARPET TILE - Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements provide the product supplied from the following manufacturers:
1. Basis-Of-Design shall be Mohawk Group: Modular-Quickship; "Seismic wave",
    - a. Carpet Tile: Seismic Wave / 739 Glacie.
  2. Installation Method: "Brick Ashlar".
  3. Carpet flammability
    - a. Pill Test (ASTM D2859 or CPSC FF-1-70): Passes
    - b. Radiant Panel Test (ASTM E648): >.45 watts/cm2, Class I
  4. Smoke Density (ASTM E662): < 450 Flaming Mode
  5. Yarn Weight 28 oz/yd<sup>2</sup>
  6. Total Thickness 0.271 inches
  7. Size 12 in. x 36 in.
  8. Base Color Method Solution Dyed
- B. Trowel-able Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- C. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, non-staining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile and is recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.
1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 65 g/L or less.
  2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- D. Transition strip at room changes with transition strip centered under the door when door is in the closed position.
1. Aluminum transition strip for Carpet-to-Carpet transition or Carpet-to-Concrete transition
    - a. Slip resistant surface.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 14, "Carpet Modules," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Installation Method: Glue down; install every tile with full-spread, releasable, pressure-sensitive adhesive.

- C. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- D. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.

**END OF SECTION 09 6813**

SECTION 09 9113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.
  - 1. Concrete.
  - 2. Steel and iron.
  - 3. Galvanized metal.
  - 4. Wood Timbers
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 1200 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming of metal substrates.
  - 2. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming metal fabrications.
  - 3. Section 05 5213 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for shop priming pipe and tube railings.
  - 4. Section 09 9300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for surface preparation and the application of wood stains and transparent finishes on exterior wood substrates.
  - 5. Section 06 1325 "Timber Construction" on exterior wood.
  - 6. Section 09 9600 "High-Performance Coatings" for tile-like coatings.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
  - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint: 2 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  2. PPG Paints.
  3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products listed in the Exterior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. VOC Content: Utah Administrative Code R307-361: Products shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction and, for interior and exterior paints and coatings applied at Project site, the following VOC limits, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. Colors: Match Architect's samples.
1. Twenty percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
  2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove

rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
  - 2. Wood: 15 percent.
  - 3. Portland Cement Plaster: 12 percent.
- C. Portland Cement Plaster Substrates: Verify that plaster is fully cured.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and re-prime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.



- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 11.
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.
- J. Wood Substrates:
  - 1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use in paint system indicated.
  - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view and dust off.
  - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
  - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
- K. Plastic Trim Fabrication Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
  - 4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
  - 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.

- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat but, tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
  - 1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
    - a. Equipment, but do not paint pre-painted electrical panelboards and switch gear unless noted otherwise.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

#### A. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:

- 1. Latex System MPI EXT 3.1A:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based, MPI #3.
  - b. Prime Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.

#### B. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:

- 1. Latex Deck Coating System MPI EXT 3.2B:
  - a. Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
  - c. Topcoat: Deck coating, latex, MPI #127.
- 2. Clear Water-Based Sealer System MPI EXT 3.2H:
  - a. Prime Coat: Sealer, water based, matching topcoat.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Sealer, water based, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, MPI #99.

#### C. Steel and Iron Substrates:

- 1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System MPI EXT 5.1M:
  - a. Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6), MPI #164.
- 2. Quick-Dry Enamel System MPI EXT 5.1A:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, quick dry, for metal, MPI #76.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Alkyd, quick dry, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, quick dry, gloss (MPI Gloss Level 7)[, MPI #96].

#### D. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

- 1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System MPI EXT 5.3J:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6), MPI #164.
- E. Aluminum Substrates:
  - 1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System MPI EXT 5.4G:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for aluminum, MPI #95.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6), MPI #164.
- F. Wood Substrates: Glued-laminated construction.
  - 1. Latex over Latex Primer System MPI EXT 6.1L:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex for exterior wood, MPI #6.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
- G. Wood Substrates: Exposed framing.
  - 1. Latex over Latex Primer System MPI EXT 6.2M:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex for exterior wood, MPI #6.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
- H. Wood Substrates: Wood trim and Architectural woodwork.
  - 1. Latex over Latex Primer System MPI EXT 6.3L:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex for exterior wood, MPI #6.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
- I. Wood Substrates: Wood-based panel products.
  - 1. Latex over Latex Primer System MPI EXT 6.4K:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex for exterior wood, MPI #6.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.

**END OF SECTION 09 9113**

SECTION 09 9123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.

- 1. Concrete.
- 2. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
- 3. Steel and iron.
- 4. Galvanized metal.
- 5. Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).
- 6. Wood.
- 7. Gypsum board.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 05 1200 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming structural steel.
- 2. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming metal fabrications.
- 3. Section 05 5213 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for shop priming pipe and tube railings.
- 4. Section 09 9600 "High-Performance Coatings" for tile-like coatings.
- 5. Section 09 9300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for surface preparation and the application of wood stains and transparent finishes on interior wood substrates.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

- F. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
  - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint: 2 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  2. PPG Paints.
  3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products listed in the Interior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. VOC Content: Utah Administrative Code R307-361: Products shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction and, for interior and exterior paints and coatings applied at Project site, the following VOC limits, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. Colors: Match Architect's samples.
1. Twenty percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
  2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove



rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
  - 2. Wood: 15 percent.
  - 3. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
  - 4. Plaster: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Plaster Substrates: Verify that plaster is fully cured.
- E. Spray-Textured Ceiling Substrates: Verify that surfaces are dry.
- F. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- G. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.

1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
  1. SSPC-SP 11.
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.
- I. Wood Substrates:
  1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
  2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
  3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
  4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
  1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
  4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
  - 1. Paint the following work where exposed in equipment rooms:
    - a. Equipment, but do not paint pre-painted electrical panelboards and switch gear unless noted otherwise.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
    - h. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
  - 2. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
    - a. Equipment, but do not paint pre-painted electrical panelboards unless noted otherwise.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
    - h. Other items as directed by Architect.
  - 3. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:
  - 1. Latex System MPI EXT 3.1A:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based, MPI #3.
    - b. Prime Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
- B. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:
  - 1. Latex Deck Coating System MPI EXT 3.2B:
    - a. Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - c. Topcoat: Deck coating, latex, MPI #127.
  - 2. Clear Water-Based Sealer System MPI EXT 3.2H:
    - a. Prime Coat: Sealer, water based, matching topcoat.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Sealer, water based, matching topcoat.
      - 1) Topcoat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, MPI #99>.
- C. Steel Substrates:
  - 1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System MPI INT 5.1B:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust-inhibitive, water based MPI #107.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, interior, water based, matching topcoat.

- c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, interior, water based, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #153.
- 2. Quick-Dry Enamel System MPI INT 5.1A:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, quick dry, for metal, MPI #76.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Alkyd, quick dry, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, quick dry, gloss (MPI Gloss Level 7), MPI #96.
- D. Wood Substrates: Wood trim, Architectural woodwork, Doors, & Wood Paneling.
  - 1. Latex over Latex Primer System MPI INT 6.3T:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex, for interior wood, MPI #39.
    - b. Topcoat: Latex, interior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #54.
- E. Wood Substrates: Casework.
  - 1. Latex over Latex Primer System MPI INT 6.4R:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, latex, for interior wood, MPI #39.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6, except minimum gloss of 65 units at 60 degrees), MPI #114.
- F. Gypsum Board Substrates (walls):
  - 1. Latex over Latex Sealer System MPI INT 9.2A:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
    - b. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 3), MPI #52.
- G. Gypsum Board Substrates (Ceilings):
  - 1. Latex over Latex Sealer System MPI INT 9.2A:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
    - b. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2), MPI #44.

**END OF SECTION 09 9123**

SECTION 09 9600 - HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of high-performance coating systems on the following substrates:
  - 1. Exterior Substrates:
    - a. Exposed Structural Steel.
    - b. Exposed Galvanized metal.
  - 2. Interior Substrates:
    - a. Exposed Structural Steel and Fabrications.
    - b. Exposed Pipe and Tube Railings.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 1200 "Structural Steel Framing" Section 05 1213 "Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming of structural steel with primers specified in this Section.
  - 2. Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting" for general field painting.
  - 3. Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting" for general field painting.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.

- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of coating system and each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
  - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product List: Cross-reference to coating system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply coatings when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Do not apply exterior coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  - 2. PPG Paints.
  - 3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products listed in the Exterior High-Performance Coating Schedule or Interior High-Performance Coating Schedule for the coating category indicated.

### 2.2 HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."

B. Material Compatibility:

1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
3. Products shall be of same manufacturer for each coat in a coating system.

C. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Coating Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:

1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample coating materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If coating materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying coatings if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying coating materials from Project site, pay for testing, and recoat surfaces coated with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously coated surfaces if, on recoating with complying materials, the two coatings are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- C. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.



### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and coating systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce coating systems indicated.
- D. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 11.
- E. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied coatings.
- F. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply high-performance coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, coat surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - 3. Coat backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
  - 4. Do not apply coatings over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of the same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of finish coat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.

- D. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp glass lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test coatings for dry film thickness.
  - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore coated surfaces damaged by testing.
  - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied coating does not comply with coating manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with coating manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

- A. Steel Substrates:
  - 1. Epoxy System MPI EXT 5.1F:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, epoxy, anti-corrosive, for metal, MPI #101.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, high build, low gloss, MPI #108.
    - c. Topcoat: Epoxy, gloss, MPI #77.
- B. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
  - 1. Epoxy System MPI EXT 5.3C:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, epoxy, anti-corrosive, for metal, MPI #101.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, matching topcoat.

- c. Topcoat: Epoxy, gloss, MPI #77.

C. Aluminum (Not Anodized or Otherwise Coated) Substrates:

1. Epoxy System MPI EXT 5.4E:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, vinyl wash, MPI #80.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Epoxy, gloss, MPI #77.

3.7 INTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

A. Steel Substrates:

1. Epoxy System MPI INT 5.1L:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, epoxy, anti-corrosive, for metal, MPI #101.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Epoxy, gloss, MPI #77.

**END OF SECTION 09 9600**

SECTION 099656 – EPOXY FLOOR COATINGS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes: Provide a complete epoxy floor system for concrete surfaces located in the areas listed in this specification section - 09 0656 that meet the requirements for specific use indicated in the contract documents. Include all applicable substrate testing, surface preparation, and detail work.

## 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 03 3000 – Cast-In-Place Concrete
- B. Section 09 0000 - Finishes

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 013300.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data sheets on each product and system to be used including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements.
  - 3. Installation methods.
  - 4. Maintenance requirements.
- C. Selection Samples: For each system specified, provide two sets of samples and color charts, representing manufacturer's full range of colors and patterns.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All materials used in the epoxy floor system shall be manufactured and provided by a single manufacturer to ensure compatibility and proper bonding.
- B. Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and completely familiar with the specified requirements and methods needed for proper performance of the work of this section.
- C. Contractor shall have a minimum of 3 years experience installing epoxy floor coatings similar to that which is required for this project and who is acceptable to the manufacturer.
  - 1. Applicator shall designate a single individual as project foreman who shall be on site at all times during installation.

2. Contractor must show and have QCA Qualified Contractor/Applicator paperwork from the manufacturer of the coating system, as required to obtain a long-term jobsite specific warranty.
- D. Convene a pre-application meeting before the start of application of coating system. Require attendance of parties directly affecting work of this section, including: Architect, contractor, applicator, and authorized representative of the coating system manufacturer and interfacing trades. Review the following:
  1. Drawings and specifications affecting work of this section.
  2. Protection of adjacent surfaces.
  3. Surface preparation and substrate conditions.
  4. Application.
  5. Field quality control.
  6. Protection of coating system.
  7. Repair of coating system.
  8. Coordination with other work.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery: Materials shall be delivered to the job site in sealed, undamaged containers. Each container shall be clearly marked with manufacturer's label showing type of material, color, and lot number.
- B. Storage: Store all materials in a clean, dry place with a temperature range in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Handling: Handle products carefully to avoid damage to the containers. Read all labels and Material Safety Data Sheets prior to use.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within the limits recommended by the manufacturer.
- B. Concrete shall be tested for moisture before applying seamless coating. Water vapor transmission upwards through on-grade concrete slabs may result in loosening of epoxy floors or improper curing of epoxy materials. If moisture emissions exceed 5 pounds per 1,000 square feet contact the manufacturer before application.
- C. Concrete must be at least 2500 psi and feel like 30 or 50 grit sandpaper.
- D. Concrete must be cured for a minimum of 28 days before coating is applied.
- E. Schedule coating work to avoid excessive dust and airborne contaminants. Protect work areas from excessive dust and airborne contaminants during coating application.
- F. Before any work is started, the applicator shall examine all surfaces for any deficiencies. Should any deficiencies exist, the architect, owner and general contractor shall be notified in writing and any corrections necessary shall be made.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Upon completion of the work in this section provide a written warranty from the manufacturer against defects or materials for a period of 1 (one) year. To obtain project specific warranty the coating system applicator must be a Westcoat Qualified Contractor/Applicator and apply for warranty.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. BASIS OF DESIGN: Acceptable manufacturer: Dur-A-Flex, 95 Goodwin Street, East Hartford, CT 06108, (800) 253-3539, [www.dur-a-flex.com](http://www.dur-a-flex.com).
  - 1. Product: SHOP FLOOR MR.
  - 2. Or approved Equal by Architect. Submit product data for Architect's review prior to bid opening. Approval must be issued by Architect prior to Bid Opening in order to validate submittal's acceptance.
- B. Submit Epoxy Floor Coating substitutions for review by Architect prior to bid opening.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. As basis of design Dur-A-Flex SHOP FLOOR MR Floor System over Concrete Sub-Floor Slab.

### 2.3 COMPONENTS: Dur-A-Flex SHOP FLOOR MR Floor System

- A. PREPARE SUBSTRATE Concrete surface preparation per Concrete Surface Profile (CSP) of CSP 3, (light shotblast) or CSP 4, (light scarification) per Moh's Hardness Scale .
  - 1. Installation per Manufacturer's recommendations and application instructions.
- B. PRIMER / MOISTURE BARRIER Dur-A-Flex; Dur-A-Glaze MVP (16 mils) 2-component, 100% solids moisture mitigation system.
  - 1. Installation per Manufacturer's recommendations and application instructions.
- C. WATERPROOF MEMBRANE Dur-A-Flex; Elast-O-Coat (20 mils) is a two part, elastomer-modified epoxy coating.
  - 1. Installation per Manufacturer's recommendations and application instructions.
- D. FIRST BROADCAST: Dur-A-Flex; Dur-A-Quartz Flintshot (16 mils) with broadcast of Flintshot aggregate with hardness 6.5 – 7.0 on Moh's Mineral Scale.
  - 1. Installation per Manufacturer's recommendations and application instructions.
- E. SECOND BROADCAST: Dur-A-Flex; Dur-A-Quartz Flintshot (16 mils) with broadcast of Flintshot aggregate with hardness 6.5 – 7.0 on Moh's hardness scale.
  - 1. Installation per Manufacturer's recommendations and application instructions.
- F. GROUT COAT: Dur-A-Flex; Pigmented Shop Floor (16 mils).

1. Installation per Manufacturer's recommendations and application instructions.
- G. TOPCOAT: Dur-A-Flex, Pigment Armor Top (4mils) aliphatic urethane protective coating with satin finish and with high wear resistant aluminum oxide (grit).
  1. Installation per Manufacturer's recommendations and application instructions.
  2. Color: As selected by Architect from Manufacturer's full range of color options.
- H. Locations: For Additional information reference '**FINISH LEGEND – ROOM**' and '**FINISH LEGEND – FLOOR**'.
  - a. Rooms or spaces: Floor System indicated by FINISH LEGEND-ROOM callout **FL-01**.
  - b. Installation per Manufacturer's recommendations and application instructions.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Supplemental Materials:
  1. Patching materials as per manufacturer's recommendations.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions.
  1. Inspect all surfaces to receive epoxy flooring. Verify that surfaces are dry, clean, and free of contaminants that would prevent epoxy flooring from properly adhering to the surface.
  2. Conduct calcium chloride testing according to ASTM F1869.
  3. Conduct surface profile inspection according to ICRI Technical Guideline No. 03732.
  4. Before starting work, report in writing to the authority having jurisdiction any unsatisfactory conditions.

### 3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surfaces using methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- B. Create a surface profile by light shotblast or surface grinding to achieve CSP 2-3 or light scarification to achieve CSP 4 of the surface.
- C. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation per product manufacturer's SURFACE PREPARATION instructions.
- D. Rout and clean moving cracks and joints: fill with manufacturer's recommended flexible epoxy filler material.

- E. Repair any non-moving surface deviations with manufacturer's recommended patching material.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install coatings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Mix multi-component materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Use application equipment, tools, and techniques in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Uniformly apply coatings at spread rates and in number of coats to achieve specified mil thickness recommended by the manufacturer.
  - 1. Install integral cove base where indicated on the contract drawings and according to manufacturer's instructions.
  - 2. Key in all drains, edges, and transition points according to manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Broadcast aggregates to all limitations, instructions, and cautions for epoxy coating as stated in the manufacturer's published literature.
- F. Adhere to all limitations, instructions, and cautions for epoxy coating as stated in the manufacturer's published literature.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify coatings and other materials are as specified.
- B. Verify coverages of the system as work progresses. Areas found not to meet the required thickness shall receive additional material until specified thickness is attained.
- C. Manufacturer's representative shall provide technical assistance and guidance for surface preparation and application of coating systems.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Installation areas must be kept free from traffic and other trades during the application procedure and cure time.
- B. Protect finished surfaces of coating system from damage during construction.
- C. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged flooring system after substantial completion.
- D. Clean area and remove all debris upon completion of work. Dispose of empty containers properly according to current Local, State and Federal regulations.
- E. Contractor shall provide to owner, maintenance and cleaning instruction for the floor system upon completion of work. Owner is required to clean and maintain the surfaces to maintain manufacturer's warranty.



**END OF SECTION 09 6566**

SECTION 10 1423 - ROOM-IDENTIFICATION PANEL SIGNAGE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes room-identification signs that are directly attached to the building.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 10 1416 "Plaques" for one-piece, solid metal signs, with or without frames, that are used for high-end room-identification.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible: In accordance with the accessibility standard.

## 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish templates for placement of sign-anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers.
- B. Furnish templates for placement of electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For room-identification signs.
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
  - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
  - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.

- D. Product Schedule: For room-identification signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
    - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.

- 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1.

### 2.2 ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

- A. Room-Identification Sign: Sign with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. Allotech Signage Co.

2300 South 3600 West

- Salt Lake City, Utah 84119.
          - b. Or equal as submitted and approved by the Architect.
    - 2. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Photopolymer face sheet with raised graphics laminated over subsurface graphics to acrylic backing sheet to produce composite sheet.
      - a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for size of sign.
      - b. Surface-Applied Graphics: Applied paint.
      - c. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - 3. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.
      - a. Edge Condition: Square cut.
      - b. Corner Condition in Elevation: Radius cut.
    - 4. Mounting: Manufacturer's standard method for substrates indicated with.
    - 5. Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille typeface as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range and variable content as scheduled. Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.
    - 6. Colors: Sign background color and font/symbol/graphic color shall be contrasting.
  - B. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).
  - C. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.
  - D. Locations as indicated on drawing. Coordinate exact placement with Architect and Owner.
  - E. Rooms Signs and Names: MEN-102, WOMEN-103 and MECHANICAL-112 (Room numbers shown in brackets are for clarification and location only).
  - F. Room Occupant Load Signs: BREAK-109 and CONFERENCE-111.
    - 1. Occupant load is noted in the Room Sign Locator symbol on the drawings.
  - G. Drop Sign: Entry-101
    - 1. Coordinate with Owner for verbiage on this sign.
  - H. Provide 20 percent increase in addition to signs listed for additional signage as requested by the Owner.
- 2.3 ACCESSORIES
- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:

1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
  2. For exterior exposure, furnish stainless-steel devices unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Exposed Metal-Fastener Components, General:
    - a. Fabricated from same basic metal and finish of fastened sign unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Fastener Heads: Use flathead screws and bolts with tamper-resistant Allen-head slots unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Sign Mounting Fasteners:
    - a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of sign material or screwed into back of sign assembly unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Through Fasteners: Exposed metal fasteners matching sign finish, with type of head indicated, and installed in predrilled holes.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by sign manufacturer.
- C. Two-Face Tape: Manufacturer's standard high-bond, foam-core tape, 0.045 inch thick, with adhesive on both sides.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
  2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
  3. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
  4. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
- B. Subsurface-Etched Graphics: Reverse etch back face of clear face-sheet material. Fill resulting copy with manufacturer's standard enamel. Apply opaque manufacturer's standard background color coating over enamel-filled copy.

## 2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if

they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
  - 3. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
- B. Accessibility: Install signs in locations on walls as indicated on Drawings and according to the accessibility standard.
  - 1. Where a sign containing raised characters and braille is provided at a door, the sign shall be alongside the door at the latched side.
  - 2. Adhesive: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply linear beads or spots of adhesive symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign after cure without slippage. Keep adhesive away from edges to prevent adhesive extrusion as sign is applied and to prevent visibility of cured adhesive at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage adhesive. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
  - 3. Two-Face Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage. Keep strips away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage tape adhesive.

#### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

**END OF SECTION 10 1423**

SECTION 10 2800 - TOILET, BATH, AND JANITORIAL ACCESSORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Public-use washroom accessories.
  - 2. Under-lavatory guards.
  - 3. Custodial accessories.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 08 8300 "Mirrors" for frameless mirrors.
  - 2. Section 09 3013 "Ceramic Tiling" for ceramic toilet and bath accessories.

## 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
  - 3. Include electrical characteristics.

- B. Samples: Full size, for each exposed product and for each finish specified.

- 1. Approved full-size Samples will be returned and may be used in the Work.

- C. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.

1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
2. Identify accessories using designations indicated.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
  2. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### 2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser:
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick-B-2888 stainless steel finish, Surface-Mounted.
- B. Combination Towel (Folded) Dispenser/Waste Receptacle, Recessed:
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick-B-3944 stainless steel finish.
- C. Foam-Soap Dispenser (Lavatories) Surface-Mounted:
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick-B-26627 stainless steel with Satin finish.
- D. Mirror with Stainless Steel Angle Frame Surface-Mounted:
  1. Basis-of Design Product: Bobrick-B-2908 2436
- E. Grab Bar:
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick-B-5806 stainless steel with satin-finish 18", 36", and 42" long bars as per ADA requirements as noted in the drawings. Slip-resistant surface. Surface-mounted.
- F. Utility Shelf w/. Mop/Broom Holders & Rag Hooks:



1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick-B-239 Stainless Steel w/. Satin finish. Surface-mounted

G. Robe Hooks:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick-B-682 Stainless Steel with Satin Finish. Surface-mounted.
2. Install at locations shown on the drawings.

## 2.3 UNDER-LAVATORY GUARDS

A. Under-lavatory Guard:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bradley
2. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping and valves assemblies that prevents direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
3. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B 19, flat products; ASTM B 16/B 16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B 30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install all units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to ASTM F 446.
- C. Provide concealed block for positive attachment of Accessories

## 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION 10 2800**

SECTION 10 4413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:

- a. Portable fire extinguisher.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 10 4416 "Fire Extinguishers" for portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers accommodated by fire-protection cabinets

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semi-recessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.

- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish required.

- C. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed, semi-recessed, or surface mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

## 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Fire-Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

## 2.3 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET – See Fire Protection Cabinets shown on the Drawings

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Babcock-Davis.
    - b. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
    - c. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
- B. ADA Compliant Semi-Recessed (S-R) Cabinet: Cabinet box Semi-Recessed with Rolled-Edge trim.
- C. Cabinet Trim Material: 2-1/2inch Rolled Edge trim projection.
- D. Door Material: Steel sheet.
- E. Door Style: Full Panel Glass with frame.
- F. Door Glazing: Clear float glass.
  - 1. Clear Tempered Safety Glass
- G. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
  - 1. Provide recessed door pull and friction latch.
  - 2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- H. Accessories:
  - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
  - 2. Lettered Door Handle: One-piece, cast-iron door handle with the word "FIRE" embossed into face.

3. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.
  - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
    - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet door.
    - 2) Application Process: Silk-screened.
    - 3) Lettering Color: Red.
    - 4) Orientation: Vertical.

I. Materials:

1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
  - a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
  - b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Aluminum: ASTM B 221 for extruded shapes and aluminum sheet, with strength and durability characteristics of not less than Alloy 6063-T5 for aluminum sheet.
  - a. Finish: Clear anodic.
  - b. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
3. Clear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3, **[3] [6]** mm thick.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
  1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
  2. Miter corners and grind smooth.
  3. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
  4. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
  5. Install door locks at factory.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
  1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
  2. Miter and weld perimeter door frames and grind smooth.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

## 2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed and semi-recessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for recessed and semi-recessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semi-recessed fire-protection cabinets.
  - 2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
  - 3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.
- C. Identification:
  - 1. Apply vinyl lettering at locations indicated.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 10 4413**

SECTION 10 4416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 10 4413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

## 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

## 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
    - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet mounting bracket indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Babcock-Davis.
    - b. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
    - c. Kidde Residential and Commercial Division.
    - d. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
    - e. Pyro-Chem; Tyco Fire Suppression & Building Products.
  - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers, fire-protection cabinets, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 3. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 4. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 5. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B.
- B. Regular Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container FC-1: UL-rated 60-B:C, 10-lb nominal capacity, with sodium bicarbonate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.

### 2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or red baked-enamel finish.
  - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain mounting brackets and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.
    - a. Orientation: Vertical.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.

1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Mounting Brackets: Top of fire extinguisher to be at 42 inches above finished floor.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

**END OF SECTION 10 4416**

SECTION 11 3013 - RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes Unit appliances:
  - Equipment including:
    - a. Refrigerator/freezers: One (1) with ice and water dispensers.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - Section 22 4100 "Residential Plumbing Fixtures" for kitchen sinks, dishwasher air-gap fittings, waste (garbage) disposers, and instant hot-water dispensers.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - Include installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, and finishes for each appliance.
  - Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
- B. Product Schedule: For appliances.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For appliances in contract.
- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturers' special warranties.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each residential appliance to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Maintains, within 50 miles of Project site, a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs.

- B. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain residential appliances from single source and each type of residential appliance from single manufacturer.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with the following:
  - NFPA: Provide electrical appliances listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Accessibility: Where residential appliances are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- F. AHAM Standards: Provide appliances that comply with the following AHAM standards: (Minimum of Energy Star Rated)

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace residential appliances or components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS: Basis-of-Design is Whirlpool, 600 West Main Street, Benton Harbor, MI 49022. Phone Number (866) 698-2538

- A. REFRIGERATOR: One (1).

- 1. Manufacturer: Whirlpool 36-inch wide French Door Refrigerator – 27 cu.ft. with Black Stainless Steel finish.
  - a. Fingerprint Resistant - Textured.
  - b. In-Door-Ice Storage.
  - c. Exterior Ice and Water Dispenser with EveryDrop Filtration.
  - d. ENERGY STAR Certified.
  - e. Humidity-Controlled Crispers.
  - f. Size: 70-inch(H) x 36-inch(W) x 36-inch(D) nominal.
  - g. Three (3)-door
  - h. Door Style: Contour
- 2. Model Number: WRF757SDHV by Whirlpool.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Appliances: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. Accessibility: Where residential appliances are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with applicable provisions in the DOJ's 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design and ICC A117.1.  
ENERGY STAR: Provide appliances that qualify for the EPA/DOE ENERGY STAR product-labeling program.
- C. Food Waste Disposer: Verify with Plumbing drawings.

## 2.3 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, power connections, and other conditions affecting installation and performance of residential appliances.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before appliance installation.
- C. Examine walls, ceilings, and roofs for suitable conditions where will be installed.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install appliances according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Built-in Equipment: Securely anchor units to supporting cabinets or countertops with concealed fasteners. Verify that clearances are adequate for proper functioning and that rough openings are completely concealed.
- C. Freestanding Equipment: Place units in final locations after finishes have been completed in each area. Verify that clearances are adequate to properly operate equipment.

- D. Range Anti-Tip Device: Install at each range according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - Perform visual, mechanical, and electrical inspection and testing for each appliance according to manufacturers' written recommendations. Certify compliance with each manufacturer's appliance-performance parameters.
  - Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - Operational Test: After installation, start units to confirm proper operation. Test and adjust controls to set to manufacturer's recommendations and requirement of operation. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and components.
- B. An appliance will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain residential appliances.

**END OF SECTION 11 3013**

SECTION 12 3653 LABORATORY WORK SURFACES (SOLID PHENOLIC COMPACT)

## Part 1 - General

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - Solid Phenolic Compact (SPC) Laboratory Work Surfaces suitable for use on laboratory grade casework and as shelving, backsplashes, wall cladding, drawer fronts, cabinet doors, partitions and other structural components.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01: Administrative, procedural, and temporary work requirements.
  - 2. Section 06 4113 – Plastic Laminate Clad – Architectural Cabinets – Base cabinets and Wall Hung cabinets.

## 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association (SEFA):
  - 1. SEFA 3 Work Surfaces
- B. ASTM International (ASTM):
  - 1. EN 438-2:25 – Standard Test Method for Resistance to Scratch.
  - 2. EN 438-2:16 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Dry Heat.
  - 3. EN 12721 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Wet Heat
  - 4. EN 438-2:17 - Standard Test Method for Dimensional Stability in Elevated Temperature.
  - 5. EN ISO 178/ASTM 790-08 - Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength
  - 6. EN ISO 1183/ASTM 792-08 - Standard Test Method for Density
  - 7. ASTM E-84/UL 723 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics
- C. UL/GREENGUARD Environmental Institute:
  - 1. Indoor Air Quality Certification Program.
  - 2. Children and Schools Certification Program.
- D. International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 9001 – Quality Management Systems.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals for Review:
  - 1. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Submit plan, section, elevation and perspective drawings necessary to describe and convey layout, profiles, and product components, including edge conditions, joints, fitting and fixture locations, anchorage, accessories, and finish colors.

- b. Verify actual measurements/openings by field measurements before fabrication; show recorded measurements on Shop Drawings.
    - c. Coordinate field measurements and fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction delays.
  - 2. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
    - a. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
    - b. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
    - c. Installation methods.
  - 3. Samples:
    - a. Selection samples: For each finish product specified, submit complete set of color chips representing manufacturer's full range of standard colors.
    - b. Verification samples: For each finish product specific, submit samples representing actual product color; supplied product color and gloss may vary slightly from supplied samples.
- B. Quality Control Submittals:
  - 1. Test Reports: Certified test reports or recognized evaluation reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics and physical properties.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Maintenance Data:
    - a. Provide maintenance, cleaning, and life cycle information.
    - b. Include recommended cleaning materials and procedures, and list of materials detrimental to Solid Phenolic Compact.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications:
  - 1. Primary products furnished by single manufacturer with minimum [10] years [documented] experience in work of this Section.
  - 2. Products manufactured in ISO 9001 certified facility.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Minimum 5-year experience in work of this Section.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery:
  - 1. Use pallets larger than sheets during transportation.
  - 2. Package materials to prevent damage during shipping and handling.
- B. Storage:
  - 1. Store products in enclosed area protected from ultraviolet.
  - 2. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
  - 3. Store panels using protective dividers to avoid damage to surfaces.
  - 4. For horizontal storage, store sheets on pallets of equal or greater size than sheets with protective layer between pallet and sheet and on top of uppermost sheet.
  - 5. Do not store sheets or fabricated panels vertically.
- C. Handling:



1. If protective film is provided, do not remove until panel has been installed.
2. Handle sheets to prevent damage.
3. Remove stickers immediately after installation.

## 1.6 COORDINATION AND PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's limits.
- B. Avoid direct exposure of products to sunlight.
- C. Do not use work surfaces as bench, ladder, or seating.

## Part 2 – Products

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Solid Phenolic Compact (SPC) Laboratory Work Surfaces:  
Chemical Resistant SPC is a self-supporting flat panel based on thermosetting resins, homogeneously reinforced with cellulose fibers and manufactured under high pressure. The panels have a pigmented resin core with a decorative surface that is electron-beam cured.
- B. Basis of Design: Drawings and specifications are based on OnePointe Solutions DBA Chemtops SPC work surfaces.
- C. Manufacturer: ONEPOINTE SOLUTIONS LLC DBA CHEMTOPS LLC – 1112 Swenson Blvd, Elgin, TX. 78621  
Fabricated by: ONEPOINTE SOLUTIONS LLC DBA CHEMTOPS LLC – 1112 Swenson Blvd, Elgin, TX. 78621

### 2.2 MATERIAL PROPERTIES

- A. Work surfaces shall be constructed of solid phenolic composite, Chemical Resistant panels with black core.
- B. Thickness shall be as specified on drawings and shall be 1-inch (25mm).
- C. Actual Color Samples of Carbon Black, Durcon Gray, Durcon Graphite, Glacier White, Steel Grey (OnePointe Solutions) shall be submitted for architect's selection.
- D. Finish: Matte sheen.
- E. Physical Properties:

Test	Test Method	Unit	Chemical Resistant SPC
Resistance to Surface Wear	EN 438-2:10	Revolutions (Initial Point)	≥150

Resistance to Impact	EN 438-2:21	Indentation Diameter (mm)		0.4
		Cracks or Scoring		No
Resistance to Scratch	EN 438-2:25	Ra ng (Based on Load)		5
Resistance to Dry Heat (160°C/320°F)	EN 438-2:16	Appearance (Ra ng)		5
Resistance to Wet Heat (100°C/212°F)	EN 12721	Appearance (Ra ng)		5
Resistance to Immersion in Boiling Water	EN 438-2:12	Appearance (Ra ng)		5
		Percentage	Mass Increase	0.4
			Thickness Increase	1.9
Dimensional Stability in Elevated Temperature	EN 438-2:17	Percentage	Longitudinal (parallel)	0.05
			Transversal (perpendicular)	0.05
Resistance to Staining	EN 438-2:26	Appearance (Ra ng)	Acetone	5
			NaOH	5
			Hydrogen Peroxide (H <sub>2</sub> O <sub>2</sub> 3%)	5
Resistance to Color Change	ASTM G53/EN 4382:27	Ra ng (Grey Wool Scale)		5
		Ra ng (Blue Wool Scale)		>6
Resistance to Crazing	EN 438-2:24	Appearance (Ra ng)		5
Porosity	N/A	Appearance		Nonporous Surface and Edges
Modulus of Elasticity	ASTM 638-08/EN ISO 178	psi		≥1.85e6
Flexural Strength	ASTM 790-08 / EN ISO 178	psi		≥2.87e4
Tensile Strength	ASTM 638-8 / EN ISO 527-2	psi		≥2.71e4
Density	ASTM 792-08 / EN ISO 1183	lbs/ft <sup>3</sup>		≥86.15

F. Chemical Resistance (in accordance with chemical resistance test per SEFA 3).

Chemical Resistant SPC by OnePointe Solutions DBA ChemTops	Method	Chemical Resistant SPC Black
--	--------	---------------------------------

Laboratory Worksurfaces

Solid Phenolic Compact (SPC)

Amyl Acetone	A	0
Ethyl Acetate	A	0

Acetic Acid 98%	B	0
Acetone	A	0
Acid Dichromate 5%	B	1
Butyl Alcohol	A	0
Ethyl Alcohol	A	0
Methyl Alcohol	A	0
Ammonium Hydroxide, 28%	B	1
Benzene	A	0
Carbon Tetrachloride	A	0
Chloroform	A	0
Chromic Acid 60%	B	1
Cresol	A	1
Dichloro Acetic Acid	A	1
Dimethylformamide	A	0
Dioxane	A	0
Ethyl Ether	A	0
Formaldehyde 37%	A	0
Formic Acid 90%	B	1
Furfural	A	0
Gasoline	A	0
Hydrochloric Acid 37%	B	0
Hydrofluoric Acid 48%	B	1
Hydrogen Peroxide 28%	B	0
Tincture of Iodine	B	1
Methyl Ethyl Ketone	A	1
Methylene Chloride	A	0
Mono Chlorobenzene	A	1
Napthalene	A	0
Nitric Acid 20%	B	0
Nitric Acid 30%	B	0
Nitric Acid 70%	B	0
Phenol 90%	A	1
Phosphoric Acid 85%	B	0
Silver Nitrate, Saturated	B	0
Sodium Hydroxide 10%	B	0
Sodium Hydroxide 20%	B	0
Sodium Hydroxide 40%	B	0
Sodium Hydroxide Flake	B	0
Sodium Sulfide, Saturated	B	0

Sulfuric Acid 25%	B	0
Sulfuric Acid 85%	B	0
Sulfuric Acid 96%	B	0
Sulfuric Acid 85% and Nitric Acid 70%, equal parts	B	0
Toluene	A	0
Trichlorethylene	A	0
Xylene	A	0
Zinc Chloride, Saturated	B	0

### 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. **Window Sills:** Provide Solid Phenolic Compact windowsills as indicated. Window sills shall be Chemical Resistant SPC in 3/4-inches (19mm) thickness. Sealant all around edges and seams.
- B. Installation Materials: Provide joint adhesive as required to suit project conditions.

### 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricated tops and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, approved Shop Drawings, and SEFA 8.
- B. Solid Phenolic Compact Worksurfaces:
  - 1. Thickness:
    - a. 1" (25mm) countertops
    - b. ¾" (19mm) Windowsills
    - c. Check each sheet at factory for required thickness.
    - d. Maximum variation in thickness: Plus or minus 1/16" (1.6 mm) from corner to corner.
  - 2. Warpage:
    - a. Inspect tops for warpage prior to fabrication by placing on true flat surface.
    - b. Maximum allowable warpage: 1/16" (1.5 mm) in 36" (900 mm) span or 3/16" (4.5 mm) in 96" (2400 mm) span.
  - 3. Fabrication:
    - a. Shop fabricate in longest practical lengths.
    - b. Bond joints with highly chemical resistant cement with properties and color similar to base material.
    - c. Provide 1/8" (3 mm) drip groove of underside of exposed edges, set back ½" (13 mm) from face.
    - d. Finish exposed edges.
  - 4. Edge treatment: Standard 1/8" (2 mm) chamfered edge.
  - 5. Fabricate tops flat with ¼" (6 mm) raised epoxy resin marine edge at sink locations.
  - 6. Corner treatment: exposed corners shall be eased slightly for safety.
  - 7. Back and end splashes:
    - a. Supplied loose for field installation.

- b. Same material and thickness as worksurfaces.
  - c. 4" (100 mm) high unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Back and end splashes: Furnish loose end splashes where worksurfaces abut adjacent construction and locations indicated on Drawings.
- 8. Joints: Maximum 1/8" (2 mm), bonded with epoxy grout.
- 9. Locate joints away from sinks and over or near supports.
- 10. Sink cutouts: Routed for undermount sink.
- 11. Allowable tolerances:
  - a. Square: Plus or minus 1/64" (0.4 mm) for each 12" (300 mm) of length.
  - b. Location of cutouts and drilled openings: Plus or minus 1/8" (3 mm) of design dimension.
  - c. Size of cutouts and drilled openings: Plus 1/8" (3 mm) or minus 0" (0 mm).
- C. Epoxy Resin Sinks:
  - 1. Mold interior corners to radius. Slope sink base to drain outlet.
  - 2. Provide 1-1/2" (38 mm) outlet with open ended standpipe; standpipe overflow 2" (50 mm) shorter than depth of sink.
  - 3. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate sinks of undermount design supported per manufacturer requirements and recommendations.
    - a. (5) – SINGLE COMPARTMENT: 26"L x 15"W x 10"D Clear inside bowl size.
    - b. (1) – DOUBLE COMPARTMENT: 36"L x 15"W x 10"D Clear inside bowl size.
  - 4. Color: To match adjacent worksurface.

### Part 3 – Execution

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until cabinets have been installed.
- B. Confirm that surfaces to receive tops are plumb and level, with maximum deflection of 1/4" (6 mm) in 20 ft (6 m).

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surfaces using methods recommended by manufacturer.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved Shop Drawings.
- B. Install tops plumb and level.
- C. Adhere to adjacent surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- D. Fasten tops to supporting construction with adhesives appropriate for use with adjoining construction and as recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Form field joints using manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Form joints to be inconspicuous and nonporous.

- F. Install [laboratory shelving] [pegboards] [reagent racks] using fasteners and adhesive appropriate for use with adjoining construction and as recommended by manufacturer.

#### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of Project.
- B. Touch up, repair, or replace damaged products.

**END OF SECTION 12 3653**